

# DOCTRINE <sup>of</sup> Christ



*J'ai décidé d'être heureux  
parce que c'est bon pour la  
santé.*

*Voltaire*

---

# THE DOCTRINE OF CHRIST

## THE DOCTRINAL FOUNDATION



*"The Son of God willingly destroyed Himself on the Cross"*

---

Compiled by:

*El-Azar*

Published by:

*Berashith Ministry*

© 2021

November 2021 – Version 3.0

Cover designed by Utilisoft Kallie du Plessis

All Scripture quotations from E-Sword

There is no copyright on our material.

Please feel free to make as many copies as needed for free  
distribution. Not for resale.

PDF - Format

A complete YouTube teaching is also available on our website.

[www.berashithministry.co.za](http://www.berashithministry.co.za)

email: berashithministry@gmail.com

---

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>THE DOCTRINE OF CHRIST .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>FOREWORD.....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>BACKGROUND.....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>THE DOCTRINE OF CHRIST .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>THE DOCTRINE OF DEMONS .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>WARNING AGAINST APOSTASY .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>PART 1: PERSONAL FOUNDATION .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION: A PERSONAL FOUNDATION.....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>LAYING DOWN THE FOUNDATION.....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>FIVE-FOLD MINISTRY .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>THE PERSONAL FOUNDATION - JESUS CHRIST.....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>EAT THE WORD OF GOD .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>HOW TO BUILD UPON THIS FOUNDATION.....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>WHO IS THIS MESSIAH? .....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>MY NAMES.....</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>MY SON IN THE OLD &amp; NEW TESTAMENT .....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>MY FEASTS .....</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>MY TABERNACLE .....</b>	<b>48</b>

THE OUTER COURT .....	64
HOLY PLACE .....	67
HOLY OF HOLIES .....	68
<b>MY ATTRIBUTES .....</b>	<b>75</b>
<b>DIG DEEP.....</b>	<b>90</b>
<b>THE WORD OF GOD.....</b>	<b>98</b>
USING THE SCRIPTURES .....	102
THE NATURE OF GOD’S WORD.....	104
SOME OF GOD’S PROMISES TO HEAL US:.....	115
<b>PART 2: DOCTRINAL FOUNDATION.....</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION: A DOCTRINAL FOUNDATION .....</b>	<b>119</b>
MATURITY .....	120
ON A ROCK.....	122
<b>REPENTANCE.....</b>	<b>127</b>
FAITH & REPENTANCE .....	128
THE SNARE OF SATAN.....	131
SICKNESS AND DISEASE .....	132
CHANGE YOUR MIND .....	136
BEING DOUBLE-MINDED .....	136
GRACE & MERCY.....	138
LIVING STONES .....	139
FALSE REPENTANCE.....	140
<b>THE NATURE OF REPENTANCE.....</b>	<b>144</b>

---

WHAT THEN IS FAITH? .....	148
YOUR FAITH WILL BE TESTED.....	150
FAITH RELATES US WITH OUR HIGH PRIEST.....	151
WHAT IF MY PRAYERS SEEM TO BE UNANSWERED? .....	151
WHAT DID YOU DECLARE? .....	154
PERSONAL RELATIONSHIP .....	156
PRAY IN THE NAME OF JESUS .....	157
CHRIST OUR ADVOCATE.....	158
IN JESUS WE CAN CLAIM EVERYTHING.....	159
FAITH AND WORKS .....	161
FRUIT .....	165
BORN FROM FREE- AND SLAVE WOMAN .....	167
WHAT IS PAUL TALKING ABOUT? .....	171
PAUL’S PERSONAL APPEAL .....	177
AN OLD TESTAMENT ALLEGORY .....	177
MINISTERS OF THE NEW COVENANT.....	179
LAW .....	185
FAITH WITHOUT WORKS IS DEAD.....	193
SOMEONE, IN & INTO .....	197
ONE BAPTISM.....	199
IN THE NAME OF JESUS .....	208
<b>GOD’S ORIGINAL PLAN .....</b>	<b>208</b>
CREATED FOR A PURPOSE.....	209
CREATOR GOD IS MAN'S SOURCE.....	211
THE PACKAGE DEAL .....	218

---

<b>BORN-AGAIN BAPTISM .....</b>	<b>223</b>
OUR NEW BIRTH .....	224
SAUL OF TARSUS .....	228
<b>THE SIGNIFICANCE OF OUR BAPTISM .....</b>	<b>235</b>
WE NEED A BORN-AGAIN EXPERIENCE .....	235
PETER’S TEACHING AFTER HE HAD RECEIVED THE HOLY SPIRIT.....	239
RELEASED FROM SINS .....	239
<b>THE BELIEVER’S BAPTISM .....</b>	<b>244</b>
JOHN THE BAPTIST .....	244
WATER BAPTISM.....	245
BLOOD OF JESUS .....	248
UNTO RIGHTEOUSNESS .....	249
TO FULFIL ALL RIGHTEOUSNESS.....	251
<b>BAPTISM BY JESUS .....</b>	<b>262</b>
A SYMBOL OF GOD’S APPROVAL.....	264
IN ONE ACCORD.....	267
HOLY SPIRIT .....	268
QUENCHING THE SPIRIT .....	269
THE SEAL .....	269
PURPOSE .....	272
UNITY .....	273
MY PERSONAL WARNING TO THE READER.....	275
<b>REQUIREMENTS FOR BAPTISM.....</b>	<b>283</b>

<b>THE ESSENCE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT BAPTISM .....</b>	<b>283</b>
<b>CIRCUMCISION OF THE HEART .....</b>	<b>293</b>
INHERIT GOD’S KINGDOM .....	296
<b>BAPTISM OF FIRE .....</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>VICTORY.....</b>	<b>304</b>
<b>THE SHULAMITE BRIDE.....</b>	<b>305</b>
<b>BAPTISM OF SUFFERING.....</b>	<b>307</b>
OLD TESTAMENT .....	326
NEW TESTAMENT .....	329
THE LAYING ON OF HANDS FOR HEALING .....	330
<b>CHRIST’S RESURRECTION CONFIRMED IN THE OLD TESTAMENT .....</b>	<b>338</b>
THE WITNESSES .....	344
BEGOTTEN AGAIN / BORN AGAIN .....	345
JUSTIFICATION .....	349
COMMITMENT .....	350
SEATED IN RULERSHIP .....	355
OVERCOMERS.....	356
TO BE A WITNESS .....	356
OUR HOPE .....	358
THE DIFFERENT HARVESTS.....	361
JUDGMENT FOLLOWS RESURRECTION .....	365
BLESSING OR PUNISHMENT.....	366
ETERNAL JUDGMENT .....	367



PRINCIPLES.....	368
THE RIGHTEOUS JUDGE.....	370
<b>PATTERNS OF JUDGMENTS.....</b>	<b>372</b>
THE PARABLE OF THE MINA’S .....	372
THE PARABLE ABOUT STEWARDSHIP .....	374
SUMMARY .....	376
<b>JUDGMENTS.....</b>	<b>377</b>
<b>THE BEMA SEAT .....</b>	<b>377</b>
WE WILL ALL STAND.....	380
EVALUATION.....	381
REVEALED BY FIRE.....	381
WE HAVE TO GIVE ACCOUNT .....	382
PASS THE TEST .....	383
COUNTED WORTHY .....	388
PURIFICATION.....	390
<b>REWARDS .....</b>	<b>392</b>
<b>JUDGMENT OF THE EARTH .....</b>	<b>393</b>
JUDGMENT OF ISRAEL.....	394
BLESSING AND JUDGMENT.....	396
SATAN BOUND FOR A THOUSAND YEARS .....	397
ANTICHRIST AND THE FALSE PROPHET.....	398
SHEEP AND GOATS.....	398
THE LORD WILL JUDGE THE NATIONS .....	400

---

<b>GREAT WHITE THRONE.....</b>	<b>400</b>
PAUSE .....	404
<b>WHEN WILL THIS HAPPEN? .....</b>	<b>407</b>

## THE DOCTRINE OF CHRIST

### FOREWORD

The Apostle Paul writes that he has much to say to us, although it is difficult to explain, because we have become too dull and sluggish to understand. For by now we should already have been “**professors instructing others**”. We should already have been rabbis ourselves, but instead, we need to be taught the basics of God’s prophetic oracles! We are like children still needing milk and not yet ready to digest solid food (Hebrews 5:11-14).

In Chapter 6 Paul mentions the foundational doctrine of Christ, needed by the body of Christ, in order to reach maturity:

*“Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of **repentance** from dead works, and of **faith** toward God, <sup>2</sup> Of the doctrine of **baptisms**, and of **laying on of hands**, and of **resurrection** of the dead, and of eternal **judgment**. <sup>3</sup> And this will we do, if God **permit** (Hebrews 6:1-3 KJV).*

The purpose of this book, which will consist of two parts, is to focus on the laying down of a solid foundation for the believer, so that, when the storm comes, the house will stand and not collapse, as Jesus explains:

*“They are like a person building a house, who dug a deep hole to lay the foundation on rock. When a flood came, the floodwaters pushed against that house but couldn’t shake it, because it had been founded on the rock”. Luke 6:48*  
ISV

The following scripture gives us a clear indication of the necessity of such a solid foundation in our lives:



***"Then you will be God's servant - fully mature and perfectly prepared to fulfill any assignment".***

*2 Timothy 3:17 TPT*

The Lord is busy restoring His children to their original state, before the fall. He is busy raising an army for Himself, which will be fully mature in the image and likeness of Adonai, ready to fulfill any assignment on His command. It is like military training, where only the best-of-the-best is eventually chosen for the battle. Remember Gideon's army! Only 300 men of the original 32 000 soldiers remained! (*Read Judges 7 for the complete story of how Adonai sent back those who did not belong to the battle*).

**Part 1** will lay down the foundation of Yahshua, which is a personal foundation.

***For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ. 1 Corinthians 3:11***

**Part 2** will continue with the doctrinal foundation and will predominately focus on the six basic elements as explained to us in Hebrews 6:1-3.

## **Background**

In the year 2000 I committed myself to the Lord for full-time ministry. God spent 14 years to prepare me for this ministry and another 7 years to intensely train and educate me through the Holy Spirit for a healing ministry. For many years I had searched for the doctrine of Christ, without success. Over this seven-year period of training, the Lord revealed it to me, little by little, piece by piece, precept upon precept. What God revealed to me over this entire period will basically, *inter alia*, be the content of this book.



Since the beginning of this year, 2021, I have been sensing that the time for a new season has arrived! Over months this new approaching season has been confirmed also by several international ministries (e.g. *Paul Davis, from White Dove Ministries, who released several announcements in this regard*). I have eagerly been waiting for God to reveal to me exactly what this new season would require of His children.

Quite unexpectedly, on the 13<sup>th</sup> of April 2021, a Word of God came to me through a friend:

*"My **servant**, I will make you **My signet ring**; for I have **chosen** you (Haggai 2:23) to **lay the foundation of this house**; your hands shall also complete it" (Zechariah 4).*

In my own meditation time on this word, the Lord continued:

*"This is the word of the Lord to Zerubbabel: 'Not by might nor by power, but by My Spirit,' says the Lord of hosts. **'Who are you, O great mountain?** Before Zerubbabel you shall become a plain! And he shall bring forth the capstone with shouts of "Grace, grace to it!" (Zechariah 4:6-7)*

*"The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also complete it. What are these two olive trees upon the right side of the candlestick and upon the left side thereof? And I answered again, and said unto him, What be these two olive branches which through the two golden pipes empty the golden oil out of themselves? And he answered me and said, Knowest thou not what these be? And I said, No, my lord. Then said he, These are the two anointed ones, that stand by the Lord of the whole earth." (Zechariah 4:9-14)*



**The message was clear!** We have to lay down the foundation to restore His temple. But we will not accomplish this by might, nor by power, but through His Holy Spirit, says the Lord. Therefore, the emphasis is on the two olive branches, which provide the oil (the Holy Spirit) through two golden pipes. It would be a constant flow of oil (Holy Spirit) that will level any great mountain that will stand in the way of accomplishing this assignment, says the Lord. **NO** other foundation can be laid down, but Yahshua HaMashiach – this is our personal foundation.

***For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid,  
which is Jesus Christ. 1 Corinthians 3:11 KJV***

Paul mentioned the doctrine of Christ, in the Book of Hebrews, Chapter 6, which says:

*"Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of **repentance** from dead works, and of **faith** toward God, <sup>2</sup> Of the doctrine of **baptisms**, and of **laying on of hands**, and of **resurrection** of the dead, and of eternal **judgment**. <sup>3</sup> And this will we do, if God **permit** (Hebrews 6:1-3 KJV).*

Here we find seven very important principles of the doctrine of Christ to enable the believer to lay down the foundation, namely:

Repentance of dead works.

Faith toward God.

Doctrine of Baptisms.

Laying on of hands.

Resurrection of the dead.

Eternal Judgment.

And last, but not the least – "If God Permit!"

Any foundation must first be inspected and approved, before the structure of the building can be erected. If the Building Inspector is



satisfied, he approves of it using a stamp of authority. Similarly, Adonai first needs to **permit** (to approve) the restoration of the foundation by using this signet ring as His stamp of approval! This is our doctrinal foundation which is deemed necessary to ensure that our house will stand when the storm comes. Paul gave Timothy the reason why we need a solid foundation:

**Then you will be God's servant - fully mature and perfectly prepared to fulfill any assignment.**

**2 Timothy 3:17 TPT**

We have confidence that this "**temple**" will stand and last when the storm comes, because of Jesus' promise that: "*He who comes to me and hears my words and does it (acts upon them) is like a person building a house, who digs a deep hole to lay the foundation on rock. When the storm comes, it pushes against that house but cannot shake it, because it has been founded on the rock* (Luke 6:47-48). The opposite is therefore also true. He who does not **HEAR** and does not **DO** and does not **Dig Deep**, when the storm comes, his house will surely collapse.

-- 000 --



## The Doctrine of Christ

For quite a while now the Lord has been teaching me from Hebrews 6. For many years in the past, I had been seeking to discover what exactly the “doctrine of Christ” was. The Holy Spirit has lately been revealing it to me on a daily basis and I now better understand it {*By saying this, I do not at all pretend to know everything!*}. It is like building a house. When you do not lay down a good foundation, the building will be unstable, and cracks will appear. I have seen buildings collapse, because of poor foundations. Likewise, because of inappropriate and insignificant foundations laid down in the body of Christ, the building, God’s Temple, is unstable and cannot effectively withstand the daily storms in our lives. Although there is some doubt about who the author of Hebrews was, I am convinced it was Paul. He wrote:

*Therefore, leaving behind the elementary teachings about the Messiah, let us continue to be carried along to maturity, not laying again a foundation of repentance from dead actions, faith toward God, instruction about baptisms, the laying on of hands, the resurrection of the dead, and eternal judgment. And this we will do, if God permits. Hebrews 6:1-3 ISV*

It is a pity that so many members in the body of Christ are still so very immature. Here, in the 6<sup>th</sup> chapter of the epistle of Hebrews, Paul indicates six basic elements that must be laid down, before we can proceed to restore the temple (Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and *that* the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? – 1 Corinthians 3:16 KJV). We are His temple, where God the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit dwell.





*What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own? 1 Corinthians 6:19 KJV*

### **The Temple of the Living God**

*"Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness? <sup>15</sup> And what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel? <sup>16</sup> And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people". 2 Corinthians 6:14-16 KJV*

We cannot accommodate any darkness, unrighteousness or any doctrine of demons in our lives, and still think that the Holy Spirit can and will abide in us. The Passion Bible translated the above-mentioned verses as:

*"What harmony can there be between Christ and Satan? And also what does a believer have in common with an unbeliever? <sup>16</sup> What friendship does God's temple have with demons? For indeed, we are the temple of the living God, just as God has said: I will make my home in them and walk among them. I will be their God, and they will be my people."*



*<sup>17</sup> For this reason, "**Come out from among them and be separate,**" says the Lord. "Touch nothing that is unclean, and I will embrace you. <sup>18</sup> I will be a true Father to you, and you will be my beloved sons and daughters," says the Lord Yahweh Almighty" 2 Corinthians 6:17-18 TPT.*

Yehôvâh Elohim wants sons and daughters for Himself. We are all born from a corruptible seed and need a born-again experience. This time from an incorruptible seed. He adopted us, and when the Holy Spirit abides in us, we cry out – ABBA FATHER, that is Daddy! (Romans 8:15; Galatians 4:6). To enable us to grow into full maturity we need a strong, deep foundation. This can only be done when we preach Christ and bring every person into full understanding of the truth.

*<sup>28-29</sup> Christ is our message! We preach to awaken hearts and bring every person into the full understanding of truth. It has become my inspiration and passion in ministry to labor with a tireless intensity, with his power flowing through me, to present to every believer the revelation of being his perfect one in Jesus Christ. Colossians 1:28 TPT*

Only then can the entire building be erected and continually grow until it rises up unto completion. What an amazing statement Paul makes in his epistle to the Ephesians, when he indicates that the Holy Spirit is transforming each and every one of us into the Holy of Holies – His dwelling place!

*<sup>21</sup> **This entire building is under construction and is continually growing under his supervision until it rises up completed as the holy temple of the Lord himself.** <sup>22</sup> **This means that God is transforming each one of you into the Holy of Holies, his dwelling place, through the power of the Holy Spirit living in you!** Ephesians 2:21-22 TPT*



I trust that you now understand the assignment each of us has to fulfill and also the purpose of this book. Before we can be transformed into the Holy of Holies, we need to lay down the foundation. Only then can the building be under construction until it reaches full completion – the Holy of Holies where Christ Jesus, the Anointed One, with the Holy Spirit and our Abba Father can dwell permanently.

## The Doctrine of Demons

I have asked myself the question: If there is a doctrine of Christ, there must surely also be a doctrine of demons! A doctrine of demons is a set of beliefs or a teaching that demons try to propagate throughout the church for the purpose of deceiving the believers. Since demons are not visible (*and if they were, we would hardly invite them to speak in church!*), they must take a deceptive route to get their false message heard. They are just like their leader, Satan, the "father of lies" (John 8:44). Isn't this precisely what Paul tries to tell us in 1 Corinthians 6:16 "*What harmony can there be between Christ and Satan?*"

Paul explains this in his epistle to Timothy and indicates that there will be some who will depart from the faith. Notice "**the faith**", not any faith, but THE faith in Christ Jesus.

### Some Will Depart from the Faith

*Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; <sup>2</sup> Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron; <sup>3</sup> Forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with*



*thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth. <sup>4</sup>  
For every creature of God is good, and nothing to be  
refused, if it be received with thanksgiving: <sup>5</sup> For it is  
sanctified by the word of God and prayer. 1 Timothy 4:1- 4  
TPT*

The King James Version uses the words "consciences are seared" in verse one.

*"Now the Spirit expressly says that in later times some will depart from the faith by devoting themselves to deceitful spirits and teachings of demons, through the insincerity of liars whose consciences are seared."*

**The word "sear" means:**

To distress, grieve, sadden, make miserable/wretched, upset, trouble, harrow, cause anguish to, afflict, perturb, disturb; hurt, wound, pain, cut to the quick; affect, move, sting, mortify, torment, torture, gnaw at, vex, gall.

So, how do they promote their message? Through false teachers, "through the insincerity of liars whose consciences are seared.". Jesus warned us to "Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly are ravenous wolves" (Matthew 7:15). We can explain this by using the following example: "If you touch a hot stove and burn your hand, your hand is seared".

It can be further explained as follows:

Often a hard bump forms on the skin and there is a lack of sensitivity in the nerves in that area.

Having a seared conscience means that it has been scorched or burned, indicating a lack of sensitivity or care.

False teachers have a seared conscience. Instead of remaining sensitive to the Spirit, they live lives that are hypocritical.

Whether knowingly or unknowingly, their spiritual gauge is "off."



They lack the discernment they need to keep in step with Christ and instead are susceptible to the doctrines of demons, both hearing it and teaching it to others.

They do not know how to differentiate between the voice of the Holy Spirit and the voice of evil spirits.

They may seem to be holy, but they are living in sin and leading others to do the same.

Paul warns us that there are many kinds of voices in the world, and none of them *is* without significance (1 Corinthians 14:10 KJV). That means, saints, that these voices have meaning in our lives. The Living Bible states it as follows:

*<sup>10</sup> I suppose that there are hundreds of different languages in the world, and all are excellent for those who understand them, <sup>11</sup> but to me they mean nothing. A person talking to me in one of these languages will be a stranger to me and I will be a stranger to him.*

Why is it that you understand these voices? Why does it have meaning to you? When we listen to the wrong voices, we embrace the doctrine of demons! To Paul these voices meant nothing!

Some examples of these voices could be:

I am useless! I am ugly! Nobody loves me!"

I feel guilty of my past.

I am rejected by everyone.

I hate my spouse, my children.

I hate the person who did me wrong.

I hate myself.

I reject myself.

The above-mentioned examples are an illustration of voices coming to all of us. Over time, we come into agreement with them, and these voices have meaning in our lives. The hypothalamus gland in our brain



senses the conflict in the soul and spirit, which causes the imbalances of hormones in our bodies. These imbalances create the perfect environment for sickness and disease, and they manifest in our bodies and keep us in bondage. Confusion enters and we start blaming God. How can He allow these bad things to happen? All because we gave ear to the wrong voices!

I am so glad that Paul did not stop there, because he also gave us the weapon to overcome these voices. Carefully read 2 Corinthians 10:3. Meditate on this scripture and apply it to your life.

***Weapon against them***

***For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh: <sup>4</sup> (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;) <sup>5</sup> Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ; 2 Corinthians 10:3-5 KJV***

When these thoughts, which are voices, come to you, you should immediately take hold of it by saying: "*Lord, this is not from You and this is not from me. Hence, it must be from the devil. I now bring this thought, this imagination, to You! I submit it to You*". I guarantee you that every evil thought, imagination and voice will leave immediately. You have 20 seconds to take such thoughts captive. When delaying to do so, after 20 minutes, that thought, or imagination will take root. When you do not deal with it, it will sprout, grow, and bear fruit. By then you will find yourself in a situation where works of the flesh are manifest, which are: "Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, <sup>20</sup> Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife,



seditions, heresies, <sup>21</sup> envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God (Galatians 5:19-21 KJV).

Deceitful spirits brought the doctrine of demons into this world. It was these deceitful spirits that deceived Eve and brought sin into the world. Satan is a master manipulator, which is why doctrines of demons are so rampant - they have been his proven strategy since the beginning. Throughout His Word, God has given us everything we need to resist the temptations of the enemy and discern true doctrine from false doctrine (Ephesians 6:8-10).

We should all pay attention to any red flags we discern in teachings we read or listen to and take them to the Lord. Search the Word and ask God for wisdom and discernment (see James 1:5; 1 John 4:1-3). When we know what the Bible says, we will also be able to recognize the teachings that are contrary to it.

For a complete discussion on the Doctrine of Demons, please download the Book "The Doctrine of Demons" from our website: [www.berashithministry.co.za](http://www.berashithministry.co.za)

## WARNING AGAINST APOSTASY

Even before Paul instructed us to lay down the foundation, he warned us about apostasy. The word **apostasy** in Greek means: a departure from "the faith".

### Hebrews 5:11-14

*Of whom we have many things to say, and hard to be uttered, seeing ye are **dull of hearing**.<sup>12</sup> For when for the*



*time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. <sup>13</sup> For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. <sup>14</sup> But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.*

Remember 1 Timothy 4:1, where Paul warns Timothy that some will depart from the faith. Paul uses the word "seared". Having a seared conscience means that it has been scorched or burned, indicating a lack of sensitivity or care. This is exactly what false teachers are doing. Satan is using these many voices to come against our minds. In time, our consciences become seared, instead of remaining sensitive to the Spirit. The result of this, Paul wrote in Hebrews, is that we become dull of hearing. We then are no longer sensitive for the Word of God. Paul continues that we were supposed to already have been spiritual rabbi's, but it seems we first need to go back to the first oracles, before we can move on to deeper and profound truths. We come to wrong conclusions because we do not have the right foundation and principles laid down in our lives.

We need the correct foundation, which will offer us effective tools and fundamental truths to come to the correct conclusions. Because of our seared consciences, we have a distorted image of Christ Jesus, the Anointed One. The moment we have a distorted image of Yahshua, we walk in doubt, unbelief, and flutter like a stray crow in the sky, without direction!





In the ancient Biblical scrolls, there were no capitals, nor chapters. So directly after Hebrews 5, Paul continues with these words:

Hebrews 6:1-2 KJV

*Therefore, leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation*

- of repentance from dead works, and
- of faith toward God,
- of the doctrine of baptisms, and
- of laying on of hands, and
- of resurrection of the dead, and
- of eternal judgment.

God never intends for us to stay in First Grade. We have to move on and graduate. In the secular world each and everyone starts in Grade One. Before we can write, we need to learn the letters of the alphabet. Only then will we be ready to start writing words, then sentences and then we are ready to formulate paragraphs and thoughts. We need to apply this same principle to our daily walk with Christ Jesus. We need the basics and the fundamentals before we can move on. Notice that Paul mentioned "**repentance**" as the very first aspect to deal with in laying down the foundation. Few truly understand the meaning of the word "*repentance*" (*A full discussion of the true meaning of repentance will be done in Part 2*). It is impossible to be saved without repentance.

- Faith toward God (*not toward anything else*) is essential for salvation.
- Baptisms – plural, multiple baptisms, are foundational.
- Laying on of hands - it is a doctrine.
- Resurrection of the dead – is the heart of our faith.



- Eternal judgment – many think to be in Christ means there is no judgment.

**If we do not meet Christ in repentance, we will meet Him in judgment!**

Paul gave us a very important verse in Hebrews: "And this will we do, if God permit" (Hebrews 6:3 KJV).

As already stated previously when you erect a building, the inspector must first give you permission to build, after he had inspected the foundation. Paul is saying that Christ will not permit you to build your house, before the right and correct foundation has been laid down. So many try to complete the building, where the Holy Spirit should abide, but the building is unstable.

Not only are these basic principles fundamental to the laying down of the foundation, but there is also a specific sequence of events needed to complete the structure. It is just impossible to install the window frames, before there are any walls. You cannot call the carpenter nor the tiler to install your cabinets and lay the tiles, before the floor and the walls are completed. Likewise, it is impossible for your spiritual building to be erected and transformed into the Holy of Holies, before your foundation has been inspected by the Anointed One. Only then will He give permission to start with the construction works.

--- oOo ---



## **PART 1: PERSONAL FOUNDATION**



---

## INTRODUCTION: A PERSONAL FOUNDATION

### Laying Down the Foundation

Jesus told his disciples a parable on how to build our houses.

#### **Build Your House on the Rock**

*And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say? <sup>47</sup> Whosoever cometh to me, and **heareth my sayings, and doeth them**, I will shew you to whom he is like: <sup>48</sup> He is like a man which built an house, **and digged deep**, and laid the foundation on a rock: and when the flood arose, the stream beat vehemently upon that house, and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock. <sup>49</sup> But he that heareth, and doeth not, is like a man that without a foundation built an house upon the earth; against which the stream did beat vehemently, and immediately it fell; and the ruin of that house was great.*

*Luke 4:46-49*

Jesus was clear that there WILL be a storm, guaranteed! Irrespectively of the surface on which your house is standing, the storms will come. But only those who HEARETH and DOETH my Word, the Lord says, those who dug deep and laid down the foundation on the ROCK, will withstand and survive the storm. Those who do not listen and do, their houses will immediately collapse.

My dear beloved, you cannot continue reading before you make a decision! Are you willing to HEAR and DO? If not, you are wasting your time to continue reading or even seeking any further truths for that matter. The foundation of the doctrine of Christ is based on HEARING and DOING.

**Your hearing and doing is the foundation that sets the limits for your building.**



Paul gave us further instructions for laying down the foundation in his epistle to the Corinthians.

*For we are God's co-workers. You are God's farmland and God's building. <sup>10</sup> According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder (architect), **I have laid the foundation**, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon.*

**<sup>11</sup> For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.** 1 Corinthians 3:9-11 TPT

Paul gives us additional information in his epistle to the Ephesians, when he wrote:

### **Christ Our Cornerstone**

<sup>19</sup> Now, therefore, you are no longer strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints and members of the household of God, <sup>20</sup> **having been built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ Himself being the chief cornerstone.**

Ephesians 2:19-20 TPT

There can be no other way to lay down the foundation. The foundation of any believer's building is Christ Jesus, the Anointed One, Yahshua HaMashiach. If you do have a desire to transform your building into the Holy of Holies, then you need the CORNERSTONE. Christ Himself said: "*Didn't you ever read this in the Scriptures? 'The stone that the builders rejected has now become the cornerstone. This is the Lord's doing, and it is wonderful to see'*" (Matthew 21:42 NLT). Carefully read again Ephesians 2:20: "*Having been built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ Himself being the chief cornerstone*". The erection of a building starts in a corner – that cornerstone is Christ Jesus. Paul continues in Ephesians 4 to explain the five-fold ministry, also referred to as "Ministry Gifts" or "Grace Ministry".



<sup>11</sup> *And he has appointed some with grace to be **apostles**, and some with grace to be **prophets**, and some with grace to be **evangelists**, and some with grace to be **pastors**, and some with grace to be **teachers**.* <sup>12</sup> *And their calling is to nurture and prepare all the holy believers **to do their own works of ministry**, and as they do this they will **enlarge and build up the body of Christ**.* <sup>13</sup> *These grace ministries will function until we all attain oneness into the faith, until we all experience the fullness of what it means to know the Son of God, and finally we become one into a **perfect man** with the full dimensions of spiritual maturity and fully developed into the abundance of Christ.*  
*Ephesians 4:11-13 TPT*

Adonai gave us apostles, prophets, teachers, pastors, and evangelists to equip the body of Christ, so that each one can grow unto full maturity to be ready for their own works of ministry – that is to be ready for any assignment (*Then you will be God’s servant, fully mature and perfectly prepared to fulfill any assignment God gives you – 2 Timothy 3:17*).

The Hebrew and Aramaic word for “**perfect**” is “**gamar**”, and the word implies that perfection cannot come to the body of Christ, without the example and teaching of these five ministries—apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors, and teachers. To ignore these five ministry gifts of the ascended Christ, is to despise the gifts that God has given to the church.

In my book, “The Gift of Giving”, which can be downloaded from our website for free, a complete discussion is available on this topic. In a nutshell this five-fold ministry entails the following:



## Five-Fold Ministry

The ministry gifts serve to reveal the plan of God. They are characteristic of a full-time office or calling, rather than a gift that can function in and through any believer. The ministry gifts were once presented to me through a five-finger illustration that I've never forgotten:

- **Apostle** - An apostle establishes and builds churches. He is a church planter. An apostle may function in many or all of the ministry gifts. He is the "**thumb**," the strongest of all of the fingers, able to touch every finger.
- **Prophet** - Prophet in Greek means to "**forth tell**," in the sense of speaking for another. A prophet functions as God's mouth piece, speaking forth God's Word. The prophet is the "**index finger**," or pointer finger. He points to the future and points out sin.
- **Evangelist** - An evangelist is called to be a witness for Jesus Christ. He works for the local church to bring people into the body of Christ, where they can be discipled. He may evangelize through music, drama, preaching, and other creative ways. He is the "**middle finger**," the tallest one, who stands out in the crowd. Evangelists draw a lot of attention, but they are called to serve the local body.
- **Pastor** - The pastor is the shepherd of the people. A true shepherd lays down his life for the sheep. The pastor is the "**ring finger**." He is married to the church, called to stay, oversee, nurture and guide.
- **Teacher** - The teacher and the pastor are often a shared office, but not always. The teacher lays the foundation and is concerned with detail and accuracy. He delights in research to validate truth. The teacher is the "**pinkie**



**finger."** Though seemingly small and insignificant, he is designed specifically for digging into tight, dark places, shining a light and picking apart the word of truth.

It is clear from the above-mentioned descriptions that the main reason why so many buildings are collapsing in the body of Christ today, is because the apostles and prophets do not lay down the foundation. It is impossible for a teacher or a shepherd to lay down the foundation. What a pity that self-appointed "Pastors" or Shepherds or Evangelists do not acknowledge today the office of the apostle and the prophets anymore. Neglecting to acknowledge the five-fold ministry in the body of Christ, is the inability to discern the Lord's body and is the reason why so many are weak and sick.

The five-fold ministry is ordained by Adonai for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ (Ephesians 4:11-12).

There is no suggestion anywhere in scripture that an "institution" should appoint a pastor to gather "*congregation members*" and keep them in spiritual immaturity. Notice throughout the scriptures it is Adonai who appoints, and no one was elected. God's word is clear that these ministry gifts are given by Adonai to nurture and prepare all the holy believers **to do their own works of ministry**, and as they do this they will **enlarge and build up the body of Christ** (Ephesians 4:12 TPT).

Congregations normally do not acknowledge these ministry gifts in the members of the body of Christ, who has a calling on their lives, to do their own works of ministry. This explains why the building is not being enlarged, as Paul mentions.

--- oOo ---





## THE PERSONAL FOUNDATION - JESUS CHRIST

There is a personal foundation and a doctrinal foundation that the reader must take note of. The personal foundation of Yahshua HaMashiach is to see Him throughout the Bible, from Genesis to Revelation. At first the Old Testament might seem to merely be a historical book, but as you study the written Word of God, Yahshua, who is the Living Word of God, will be revealed to you.

What a wonderful experience it is to see the revealed Yahshua in Genesis as the "seed", as the Passover lamb in Exodus, the high priest in Leviticus, His presence made manifest in the Book of Numbers, etc. Likewise, in the New Testament, we see Him as the King in the Book of Matthew, the Servant in Mark, the Son of Man in Luke, the Son of God in the Book of John, etc. We need to first meet our First Love, before we can erect our house, or the temple, where He can abide and dwell permanently. Having a twisted perception (as many have of Him) will easily mislead you and blind you to not receive the truth. The result being that you will be kept in bondage by Satan's keep net.

**Yahshua asked his disciples: "*but whom say ye that I am?*"  
(Matthew 16:15).**

**Today I ask the reader the same question:  
"Who do you say Yahshua is?"**

Simon Peter answered that question divinely: "Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God".

***17 AND JESUS ANSWERED AND SAID UNTO HIM, BLESSED ART THOU, SIMON BARJONA: FOR FLESH AND BLOOD HATH NOT REVEALED IT UNTO THEE, BUT MY FATHER WHICH IS IN HEAVEN. 18 AND I SAY ALSO UNTO THEE, THAT THOU ART PETER, AND UPON THIS ROCK I WILL***



***BUILD MY CHURCH; AND THE GATES OF HELL SHALL NOT  
PREVAIL AGAINST IT. MATTHEW 16:17-18***

We are all familiar with this scripture, but few truly understand what Yahshua meant here. The name Peter, in Greek, is "**Petros**" and it refers to a rock, a small stone (like the small stones used to stone people to death), or a builder. But when Yahshua used the term "**upon this rock**", He used a different Greek word, namely "**Petra**". This word, *petra*, refers to a cliff, something on that scale, which is part of the bedrock. The bedrock is the recognition of who He (Yahshua) is, revealed by the Holy Spirit! It is therefore upon this "petra" that Christian faith must be based - not on the carpenter's son, but on the Son of GOD.

A life changing encounter with Yahshua HaMashiach is the only experience that can change your life. This encounter that Peter had, revealed to Him exactly who Yahshua really is.

Jesus said: "**I am the door**" (John 10:9). Jesus is the only way into the kingdom. There was no other way to enter the tabernacle, but through the entrance. That was why the Jewish people wanted to crucify Him when He said: "I am the door". They could not grasp it with their human brains, when He said that He is the only way to enter the kingdom of God. This conversation between Yahshua and his disciples discloses a very important lesson to learn, when laying down the foundation of the Christian faith.

- Firstly, Peter experienced a **confrontation** about who Jesus really was.
- Then there was a **revelation** through the Holy Spirit.
- Peter then responded to this revelation of the Holy Spirit with an **acknowledgment** of who Jesus was.
- Lastly, Peter made this revelation a public **confession**.



**“What about you?”**

Have you had any confrontations in your life about who Yahshua is, after which the Holy Spirit revealed a deep truth to you? Did you respond, or did you ignore the revelation? If you chose to acknowledge the revelation, did you share it with others and made a public confession?

The disciples knew Yahshua as the carpenter’s son, but in Peter’s confrontation with this very important question of who Yahshua really is, the Holy Spirit revealed a much deeper truth to Peter, namely that **“He is indeed the true Son of God”**.

John was the beloved disciple, the only one who laid his head on Yahshua’s chest, but when John had a confrontation with the Holy Spirit on the island of Patmos, the realization of who He was, made him fall down, as if he was dead. As humans, we will never be able to completely understand who this Messiah really is! With our own defective perceptions and inadequate understanding, we tend to limit Him to a box. There will, however, until eternity, always be something new to be discovered about our incomprehensible God. It does not matter how closely we walk with Him (*as in the case of John*), when the Holy Spirit reveals another aspect of the Messiah, we will fall down to our knees, because of the greatness of the revelation!

Jesus revealed to John a picture of four animals, each with six wings, in front of the throne of God. They discovered the greatness and holiness of Yehôvâh Elohim day and night! Without any rest, they constantly fell down, crying out: HOLY, HOLY, HOLY, LORD ALMIGHTY!

*And the four beasts had each of them six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come. Revelation 4:8 KJV*



The beloved apostle, John, knew Yahshua as the carpenter's son and as the Son of Man and had first-hand experience of Him as the Son of God, but he never before had an encounter with Him as appearing with hair white as wool and glistening like snow, eyes like flames of fire, feet like bright metal and a voice like the roar of many rushing waters! That experience, that encounter with the Messiah, caused John to fall down like a dead person!

*<sup>9</sup> I, John, am your brother and companion in tribulation, the kingdom, and the patience that are found in Jesus. I was exiled on the island of Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony of Jesus. <sup>10</sup> I was in the spirit realm on the Lord's day, and I heard behind me a loud voice sounding like a trumpet, <sup>11</sup> saying to me: Write in a book what you see and send it to the seven churches: to Ephesus, to Smyrna, to Pergamum, to Thyatira, to Sardis, to Philadelphia, and to Laodicea.*

*<sup>12</sup> When I turned to see the voice that was speaking to me, I saw seven golden lampstands. <sup>13</sup> And walking among the lampstands, **I saw someone like a son of man, wearing a full-length robe with a golden sash over his chest. <sup>14</sup> His head and his hair were white like wool — white as glistening snow. And his eyes were like flames of fire! <sup>15</sup> His feet were gleaming like bright metal, as though they were glowing in a fire, and his voice was like the roar of many rushing waters. <sup>16</sup> In his right hand he held seven stars, and out of his mouth was a sharp, double-edged sword. And his face was shining like the brightness of the blinding sun! <sup>17</sup> When I saw him, I fell down at his feet as good as dead, but he laid his right hand on me and I heard his reassuring***



*voice saying: Don't yield to fear. I am the Beginning and I am the End, <sup>18</sup> the Living One! I was dead, but now look— I am alive forever and ever. And I hold the keys that unlock death and the unseen world. Revelation 1:9-18 TPT*

## **Eat the Word of God**

If we really want to know Him and desire to have a similar encounter with the Messiah to what John had, we must devour the written word so that the living Word can be manifested in us, as the Holy Spirit manifested it through Peter and John on the Island of Patmos. We will realize then that the Messiah is the same: yesterday, today, and forever!

*Jesus Christ the same yesterday and today and for the ages. Hebrews 13:8 JUB*

The prophet Jeremiah experienced during his own trials and persecutions that the only single thing that kept him going, was the sweet Word of God, when he ate it.

*<sup>15</sup> [Jeremiah said] O Lord, You know and understand; [earnestly] remember me and visit me and avenge me on my persecutors. Take me not away [from joy or from life itself] in Your longsuffering [to my enemies]; know that for Your sake I suffer and bear reproach.*

*<sup>16</sup> Your words were found, and I ate them; and Your words were to me a joy and the rejoicing of my heart, for I am called by Your name, O Lord God of hosts. Jeremiah 15:15- 16 AMPC*

So also did John on the Island of Patmos, when the voice came again from heaven to instruct him to eat the little book.



<sup>8</sup> Then the voice that I heard from heaven spoke again to me, saying, Go and take the little book (scroll) which is open on the hand of the angel who is standing on the sea and on the land.

<sup>9</sup> So I went up to the angel and asked him to give me the little book. And he said to me, Take it and eat it. It will embitter your stomach, though in your mouth it will be as sweet as honey.

<sup>10</sup> So I took the little book from the angel's hand and ate and swallowed it; it was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but once I had swallowed it, my stomach was embittered.

<sup>11</sup> Then they said to me, You are to make a fresh prophecy concerning many peoples and races and nations and languages and kings. Revelation 10:9-11 AMPC

Not only is the Word of God there to carry you through tribulation, suffering and trials, but it also gives fresh revelation to prophesize into the future (Revelation 10:8-11).

Let us read Ezekiel, Chapter 2. The Spirit entered Ezekiel and commanded him to go to the nation of Israel to bring them the Word of the Lord, for they were rebellious.

<sup>8</sup> As for you, son of man, hear what I say to you; **be not rebellious like that rebellious house; open your mouth and eat what I give you.**

<sup>9</sup> And when I looked, behold, a hand was stretched out to me and behold, a scroll of a book was in it.

<sup>10</sup> And He spread it before me and it was written within and on the back, and written on it were words of lamentation and mourning and woe. Ezekiel 2:8-10 AMPC



The Word of God will break the bondage of rebellion in your life, and you will receive boldness from the Holy Spirit to share this word to the nations.

*"<sup>1</sup> He said to me, Son of man, eat what you find [in this book]; **eat this scroll**; then go and speak to the house of Israel. <sup>2</sup> So I opened my mouth, and He caused me to eat the scroll. <sup>3</sup> And He said to me, Son of man, **eat this scroll that I give you and fill your stomach** with it. Then I ate it, and it was as **sweet as honey** in my mouth. <sup>4</sup> And He said to me, Son of man, go, get you to the house of Israel and speak to them with My words". Ezekiel 3:1-4 AMPC*

**IN A BIBLICAL SENSE "SWEET AS HONEY"**

**REPRESENTS**

**REVELATION KNOWLEDGE!**

We will find a word of **discernment**, when we study scriptures and we will start to hate all that is unclean and evil. David confirmed this when he wrote Psalms 119:

*I refused to bend my morals when temptation was before me so that I could become obedient to your Word. <sup>102</sup> **I refuse to turn away from difficult truths, for you yourself have taught me to love your words.** <sup>103</sup> How sweet are your living promises to me; than honey is your revelation-light. Psalms 119:101-103 TPT*

The Amplified Classic translated the phrase "I could become obedient to your Word" as "keep your word", explaining it in brackets as "**hearing, receiving, loving and obeying it**". This is exactly what our Messiah meant, when he told the parable to his disciples in Luke 6:46. When the storm comes, only the house that has been built by **hearing** and **doing**, will last!



We need to start loving the written Word of God as did David. He proclaimed in Psalm 119: **"72***The words you speak to me are worth more than all the riches and wealth in the whole world!* And also: **"97***O how I love and treasure your law; throughout the day I fill my heart with its light"*!

There is no treasure in this world, nothing that can replace the sweet words of the Lord:

*"The rarest treasures of life are found in his truth. That's why God's Word is prized like others prize the finest gold. Sweeter also than honey are his living words— sweet words dripping from the honeycomb"*! *Psalms 19:10 TPT*

Job first-handedly experienced the purification and sanctification of the Word of God in his life. He testified:

***10*** *But He knows the way that I take [He has concern for it, appreciates, and pays attention to it]. When He has tried me, I shall come forth as refined gold [pure and luminous].*  
***11*** ***My foot has held fast to His steps; His ways have I kept and not turned aside. 12 I have not gone back from the commandment of His lips; I have esteemed and treasured the words of His mouth more than my necessary food. 13*** *But He is unchangeable, and who can turn Him? And what He wants to do, that He does.*

Job 23:10-13 AMPC

What a testimony! He treasured the Word of God more than his daily food! Oh, how easily we get distracted by the flesh, which constantly wars against the spirit. The moment we sit down to study the Word of God, the appetites of the flesh withhold us to do so. Just as Job did, we too need an encounter with God to discover who He really is. Paul made it very clear in all of his epistles: **"11** ***For no one is empowered to lay***





---

***an alternative foundation other than the good foundation that exists, which is Jesus Christ!*** (1 Corinthians 3:11 TPT).

**Jesus Christ, Yahshua HaMashiach, our Messiah,  
is the only foundation!**

This is our personal foundation and has to be laid down first, before we can lay down the doctrinal foundation, as Paul explains in Hebrews, Chapter 6.

## **How to Build Upon This Foundation**

A logic question is indeed: "How do I build on this foundation?" Yahshua Himself made it very clear in the parable He told his disciples in Luke 6.

*And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say? <sup>47</sup> Whosoever cometh to me, and **heareth my sayings, and doeth** them, I will shew you to whom he is like: <sup>48</sup> He is like a man which built an house, **and digged deep**, and laid the foundation on a rock: and when the flood arose, the **stream beat** vehemently upon that house, and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock {Petra}. <sup>49</sup> But he that heareth, and doeth not, is like a man that without a foundation built an house upon the earth; against which the stream did beat vehemently, and immediately it fell; and the ruin of that house was great.*  
*Luke 6:45-49 TPT*

In this parable we find four Biblical principles that Yahshua laid down for us:

- Hearing and doing.
- Digging deep.
- Building upon a rock – Petra.
- The Storm will surely hit.



Many believers hear, but few DO! Scripture guarantees that the storm will come, but only he who hears **and** does, will last. If you do not DO what the Lord tells you to do in His scriptures, your house will eventually perish! Yahshua Himself confirms that, even if you hear and do, but your house is not built on this rock, Petra, the cliff, which is Yahshua HaMashiach, your house will collapse when the storm comes.

Let the reader take note that each and every house is subjected to a test. The way into the kingdom is through these tests, trials and persecutions, as Paul confirms in his epistle to the Thessalonians:

*<sup>4</sup> We point to you as an example of unwavering faith for all the churches of God. We boast about how you continue to **demonstrate unflinching endurance** through all the **persecutions and painful trials** you are experiencing.*

*<sup>5</sup> All of this proves that God's judgment is always perfect and is intended to make you **worthy of inheriting the kingdom of God, which is why you are going through these troubles.** **2 Thessalonians 1:4-5 TPT***

These Thessalonians demonstrated their endurance through all their trials and persecutions. They proofed that they did not only hear the Word of God, but they also demonstrated it! As for them, "doing" will also make us worthy to inherit the kingdom of God.

No matter what your circumstances are – don't give up! Persevere to the end! It is all laid out for you to inherit the kingdom. Glory to God! Hearing and doing is the key. No wonder Paul explains that our faith is coming by hearing and hearing by the Word of God (Romans 10:17).

Let us eat the scroll in order to overcome our sufferings and to receive back our joy and peace. Let us devour the Word of God, as John did on



the island of Patmos, to empower us to declare a fresh prophecy. Let the Word of God penetrate deeply into our innermost beings to deal with our rebellious spirit and to receive boldness to expose sin, and to love one another. His radiant light will expose all uncleanness, as explained by king David. It will quicken our spirit and bring us freedom, as experienced by Job. But if, and only if, you treasure the Word of God more than your necessary food!

**The Word of God will bring Revelation Knowledge,  
which will be like sweet honey in our mouths!**

Let the reader take note that this building is under construction and is continually growing under Adonai's supervision, until it rises up, completed, as the dwelling place of Yehôvâh Elohim.

*<sup>20</sup>You are rising like the perfectly fitted stones of the temple; and your lives have been built up together upon the foundation laid by the apostles and prophets, and best of all, you are connected to the Head Cornerstone of the building, the Anointed One, Jesus Christ himself!*

*<sup>21</sup>This entire building is under construction and is continually growing under his supervision until it rises up completed as the holy temple of the Lord himself. <sup>22</sup>This means that God is transforming each one of you into the Holy of Holies, his dwelling place, through the power of the Holy Spirit living in you! Ephesians 2:20-22 TPT*

## **WHO IS THIS MESSIAH?**

Discovering prophecies and symbolisms in the Old Testament can be like an intricate game of "Where is Jesus?". The richness of God's Word is in the fact that it often reveals a deeper truth, if you know where to look! Jesus often pointed to the "beginning" (Genesis), the law of Moses (first



five books) and the prophets (Jeremiah to Malachi) to reveal God's plan for mankind, and thus gave us clues to recognize the Savior. For the Jews of His time, understanding the Old Testament was key to discovering that Jesus is their promised Messiah. If you have heard the good news from the New Testament and received Jesus as your Savior, Old Testament prophecies and symbolisms provide further proof and assurance that Jesus is the Christ, the son of the living God.

As I meditated on this truth, the Holy Spirit revealed to me five ways to learn who our Messiah really is.

He said:

"Search for **My Names** in the scriptures." God revealed Himself in many forms when He said:

"I am who I am and What I am, and I will be what I will be. This is My Name forever (Exodus 3:14, 15).

"Study the Word of God and **look for My Son, the Messiah**, in all the scriptures, both in the Old and in the New Testament."

"You will find me in **My feasts.**"

"The feasts of the Lord, which you shall proclaim to be holy convocations, these are My feasts". (Leviticus 23:2)

"You will also find me in **My tabernacle.**"

"The feasts of the Lord, which you shall proclaim to be holy convocations, these are My feasts". (Leviticus 23:2)

"Look at **My Attributes** and you will know Me better."



## My Names

“You will find My Characteristics and My Attributes in My Names”, says Yehôvâh Elohim.

In his book, “The 72 Names of God”, Baal Kadmon wrote:

“In the Jewish Mystical traditions, the backbone of EVERYTHING is the Name of God. Whole books such as the Sepher Yezirah are dedicated to the power of letters and words and how God used them to create the universe. A select group of Mystics used God’s name and the letters of God’s name to change events in time and to pierce the very fabric of the universe. It is said that if anyone could decipher the true name of God, they would have the power to re-set the entire universe back to its Primordial state of being. No one knows the true name of God. However, this does not mean we cannot decipher the other names of God through his spiritual traditions.”.

*Kadmon, Baal. The 72 Names of God: The 72 Keys to Transformation (Sacred Names Book 1). Kindle Edition.*

Most of us are familiar with the following Names of Yehôvâh Elohim:

Elohim – The Sovereign, Mighty Creator  
Jehovah – The Unchangeable, intimate God  
El Shaddai – The All-Sufficient One  
Adonai – Lord and Master  
Jehovah Jireh – The Lord My Provider  
Jehovah M’Kaddesh – The Lord My Sanctifier  
Jehovah Nissi – The Lord My Banner of Victory  
Jehovah Rapha – The Lord My Health  
Jehovah Shalom – The Lord My Peace and Wholeness  
Jehovah Tsidkenu – The Lord My Righteousness  
Jehovah Rohi – The Lord My shepherd  
Jehovah Shammah – God Is there  
El Elyon – God Most High



Jehovah Tsebaoth – The Lord of Hosts  
Jehovah Makkeh – The Lord Who Molds Me  
Jehovah Gmolah – The Lord Who Rewards  
Jehovah Elohay – The Lord My God  
El-Elohe-Israel – The Personal God of Israel  
Jehovah Eloheenu – The Lord our God

I invite you to search for many other names of God, to discover yet hundreds of names to add to this list!

In the Book of Baal Kadmon, the 72 names of God are derived from Exodus 14:19-21. We read in Exodus 14 how Moses came to the Red Sea. According to Jewish tradition, Moses used these 72 Names of the Lord to open up the Red Sea, so they could walk to the other side on dry land. In reality, the 72 Names of God are essentially one name comprised of 216 letters. So, in that sense it is a name with 72 parts. The name is divided into triads which means that every name is comprised of 3 letters. To create the first name, you combine the first letter of verse 14:19, the last letter of verse 14:20 and the first letter of verse 14:21. You could continue this until all the letters in these verses have been used.

#### **Exodus 14**

19: And the angel of God, who went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of cloud removed from before them, and stood behind them;

20: and it came between the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel; and there was the cloud, and darkness here, yet gave it light by the night there; and the one came not near the other all the night.

21: And Moses stretched out his hand over the sea; and the Lord caused the sea to go back by a strong east wind all the night, and made the sea dry land, and the waters were divided.



I have summarized these 72 names and meditated on some of these names for several months. I even started to learn to write it in Hebrew. I can testify that this is indeed a very deep level of knowing and experiencing Yehôvâh Elohim. There are many literatures with text references to illustrate and to discuss the meaning of these names. I seriously encourage you to study these names and get a better understanding of who the Messiah really is. The more we discover who He is, the more we can walk in faith and boldness to overcome all our trials and persecutions in life. Satan is the one who deceives us with a distorted picture of Yehôvâh Elohim. In this way he steals, kills and destroys our faith, leaving us with much unbelief.

### **MY SON IN THE OLD & NEW TESTAMENT**

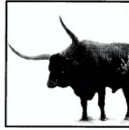
Another way to discover who Yehôvâh Elohim really is, is to look for and discover the Messiah in both the Old Testament and the New Testament. Marilyn Hickey wrote a book entitled "Seeing Jesus". She gives scripture references from throughout the Bible, from Genesis to Revelation, to reveal the Messiah in the scriptures. What an amazing experience it is when we pursue the Messiah in each verse when reading the Bible. Look for Him, seek for His character and look for His attributes. The following summary from Hickey's book may help motivate you to start reading the Bible with much more enthusiasm.



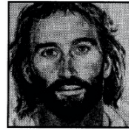
## SEEING JESUS IN THE NEW TESTAMENT



**MATTHEW:**  
KING



**MARK:**  
SERVANT



**LUKE:**  
SON OF MAN



**JOHN:**  
SON OF GOD



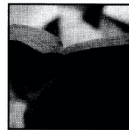
**ACTS:**  
TONGUES OF FIRE



**ROMANS:**  
SALVATION



**I CORINTHIANS:**  
SANCTIFIER



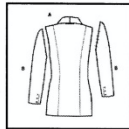
**II CORINTHIANS:**  
APOSTLE



**GALATIANS:**  
LIBERTY



**EPHESIANS:**  
INHERITANCE



**PHILIPPIANS:**  
CHRIST OUR PATTERN



**COLOSSIANS:**  
HEAD OF THE BODY



**I & II THESSALONIANS:**  
GLORY



**I TIMOTHY:**  
COUNSELOR



**II TIMOTHY:**  
TEACHER



**TITUS:**  
PASTOR / SHEPHERD

MARILYNANDSARAH.ORG





SEEING JESUS IN THE NEW TESTAMENT (CONTINUED)



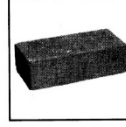
**PHILEMON:**  
COMPASSIONATE FRIEND



**HEBREWS:**  
MEDIATOR



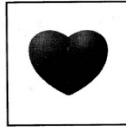
**JAMES:**  
PERFECT GIFT



**I PETER:**  
CORNERSTONE



**II PETER:**  
THE WAY



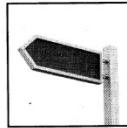
**I JOHN:**  
LOVE



**II JOHN:**  
THE LIGHT



**III JOHN:**  
PROSPERITY



**JUDE:**  
GUIDE



**REVELATION:**  
KING OF KINGS



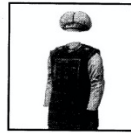
## SEEING JESUS IN THE OLD TESTAMENT



**GENESIS:**  
THE SEED



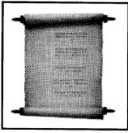
**EXODUS:**  
PASSOVER LAMB



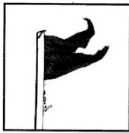
**LEVITICUS:**  
THE HIGH PRIEST



**NUMBERS:**  
PRESENCE OF GOD



**DEUTERONOMY:**  
THE LAW



**JOSHUA:**  
VICTORY



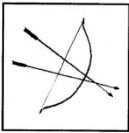
**JUDGES:**  
RIGHTEOUS JUDGE



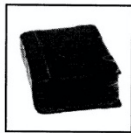
**RUTH:**  
KINSMAN REDEEMER



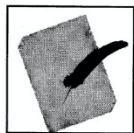
**I SAMUEL:**  
THE PROPHET



**II SAMUEL:**  
THE DELIVERER



**KINGS & CHRONICLES:**  
RECORD BOOKS



**EZRA:**  
FAITHFUL SCRIBE



**NEHEMIAH:**  
RESTORER & REBUILDER



**ESTHER:**  
INTERCESSOR



**JOB:**  
REVELATION OF RIGHTEOUSNESS



**PSALMS:**  
PRAISE

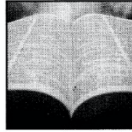
MARILYNANDSARAH.ORG



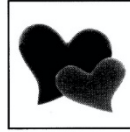
SEEING JESUS IN THE OLD TESTAMENT (CONTINUED)



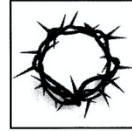
**PROVERBS:**  
WISDOM



**ECCLESIASTES:**  
PREACHER



**SONG OF SOLOMON:**  
LOVER & BRIDEGROOM



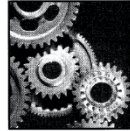
**ISAIAH:**  
STRICKEN MESSIAH



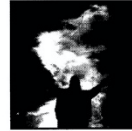
**JEREMIAH:**  
COMPASSION



**LAMENTATIONS:**  
FAITHFULNESS



**EZEKIEL:**  
GOD ALMIGHTY



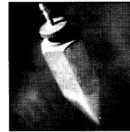
**DANIEL:**  
FOURTH MAN IN THE FIRE



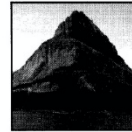
**HOSEA:**  
FAITHFUL HUSBAND



**JOEL:**  
RESTORATION



**AMOS:**  
PLUMB LINE



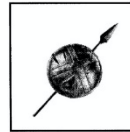
**OBADIAH:**  
DELIVERER/MOUNTAIN TOP



**JONAH:**  
MESSENGER MISSIONARY



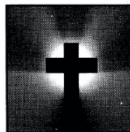
**MICAH:**  
EVERLASTING RULER



**NAHUM:**  
AVENGER



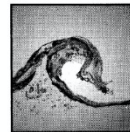
**HABAKKUK:**  
VISION, HOPE



**ZEPHANIAH:**  
SAVIOR



**HAGGAI:**  
STRENGTH



**ZECHARIAH:**  
FOUNTAIN OF CLEANSING



**MALACHI:**  
HEALER



## My Feasts

We find rich revelation knowledge by studying the feasts of the Lord. Many Bible scholars wrongly refer to these feasts as the Jewish Feasts. Leviticus 23:1-2 clearly states that they are the Lord's Feasts:

*And the Lord spoke to Moses, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Speak to the children of Israel, and say to them: '**The feasts of the Lord, which you shall proclaim to be holy convocations, these are My feasts.***

In these feasts we get a better understanding of the foreshadowing of events in the Old Testament that points as to future events, which the Messiah will come to fulfill. A full discussion of the Names of the Lord, of finding Yahshua in the Old Testament and elaborating on these feasts unfortunately fall outside the scope of this teaching and I encourage each reader to spend adequate time to discover and study them. Please read Leviticus 23 to see what Adonai commanded Moses to tell the people. Four out of the seven feasts have already been fulfilled by Yahshua and the last three still need to be fulfilled.

Basic information on the feasts are provided here:



**1. PASSOVER — LEVITICUS 23:4-8**

This feast represents the last plague in Egypt, when the angel of death “passed over” the children of Israel, who applied the blood of the lamb to their doorposts. The Israelites took a bundle of hyssop and dipped it into the blood in the basin at the threshold. They applied it first to the lintel, then onto the two sides of the frame (Exodus 12). Can you see the imagery? Movement from the bottom to get the hyssop to the top, then from side to side - the motion formed a cross.

When John the Baptist said: “Look! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!” (John 1:29, NLT), he understood the Old Testament reference. In the New Testament we see that Jesus, born in a stable, visited by shepherds and years later led to the slaughter, is that Lamb sent for us. His death allows the judgment we deserve to pass over us. When we accept Christ, we accept the loving gift of a second chance. Because of His death on the cross, we receive a clean slate!

**2. UNLEAVENED BREAD — LEVITICUS 23:6**

This seven-day feast begins on the day following the start of Passover. In the haste of the Israelites to leave Egypt, there was no time to add leaven (yeast) to their bread and wait for it to rise. During this feast, while remembering the hardships in Egypt and how God freed them from captivity, the Jews eat nothing that is leavened.

Leaven often represents sin and decay in the Bible. Once incorporated, yeast becomes an inseparable part of the bread; the same is true for sin’s effect on our lives. The Jews were constantly sacrificing unblemished animals to temporarily atone for sin. Only the Messiah, the perfect sinless sacrifice, could offer a permanent solution.

The unleavened bread represents Jesus’ sinless life. He is the only perfect sacrifice for our sins. In John 6:35, Jesus boldly states that He



is the Bread of Life. Not only does He remove our sins, He also nourishes our souls!

### **3. FIRST FRUITS — LEVITICUS 23:10**

The Feast of First Fruits is one of three Jewish harvest feasts to thank and honor God for all He provided. Although they didn't know it at the time, the children of Israel were celebrating what would become a very important day.

The priests sacrificed Passover lambs on the 14th day of the month of Nisan. The first day of Passover was the 15th. The Feast of First Fruits was celebrated on the third day, the 16th of Nisan. This "third day" celebration was the same day Jesus was resurrected from the dead. In 1 Corinthians 15:20 Paul refers to Jesus as the first fruits of the dead. He represents the first of the great harvest of souls, including you and me! We will be resurrected to eternal life, because of the new covenant in His blood (Luke 22:20).

### **4. FEAST OF WEEKS OR PENTECOST — LEVITICUS 23:16**

This feast is the second of the three harvest feasts. It occurs exactly seven weeks after the Feast of First Fruits. It is also called Pentecost which means "50 days". Traditionally, people were expected to bring the first harvest of grain to the Lord, including two leavened loaves of bread. God's plan to save souls included more than the Jews. Through Jesus, this plan was revealed. In Matthew 9:37 Jesus tells his disciples that "the harvest is great, but the workers are few." Then he put the plan into place. In Acts 1:4 he tells them to wait in Jerusalem on the Holy Spirit. The arrival of the Holy Spirit was the day the church was born – Pentecost! The harvest began with 3,000 souls. The message spread to both Jews and Gentiles (the two leavened loaves of bread), extending the harvest to us!



## **5. FEAST OF TRUMPETS — LEVITICUS 23:24**

In a beautiful declaration God commanded His people to rest. During this time all regular work is prohibited, and men and women present a food offering to God. In Leviticus 23:24 God commanded his people to gather and to commemorate the decree with trumpet blasts. On the same front, the sound of a trumpet is also associated with the rapture, or the time Jesus will return for His Bride (1 Corinthians 15:52). Once He returns, there will be a wedding feast of celebration. Revelation 19:9 says: "Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding feast of the lamb" (NLT). He is preparing us to celebrate!

*Many Bible scholars believe that the Messiah will come for His Bride on the Feast of Trumpets.*

## **6. DAY OF ATONEMENT — LEVITICUS 16, 23:26-32**

To make "atonement" is to make restitution for wrongs committed. As a day of humility and repentance to God, it was a time for the Jews to get their hearts, consciences and lives right before him. The observance involved the sacrifice of animals as the high priest entered the Holy of Holies. What the high priest did merely offered an annual payment for their sins. However, hiding in plain sight was the promise of One who would atone for their sins permanently (Hebrews 9:12).

Where is Jesus in this sacrifice of animals? The bull and one of the goats were an offering of thanks, but the "scapegoat" took on their sins (Leviticus 16:10). The scapegoat was to be burdened with all the sins of Israel and sent into the wilderness. The Jewish leaders condemned Jesus, and He, burdened with the sins of all mankind, was led out of the city to be crucified.

"He himself is the sacrifice that atones for our sins — and not only our sins but the sins of the world" (1 John 2:2, NLT). The necessity of the



Day of Atonement was rendered void by Jesus' death on the cross. Our debt has been paid!

*After the Bride of Christ will have been raptured (harpazo), the Messiah will return to make final atonement for the Nation of Israel, who is still awaiting the coming of their Messiah.*

### **7. FEAST OF TABERNACLES OR BOOTHS — LEVITICUS 23:34**

Celebration always follows the Day of Atonement. The Feast of Tabernacles celebrates God's provision and protection for the people of Israel during their 40 years of wandering in the wilderness. For the duration of the seven days of the feast, people live in temporary structures, like they did in the wilderness. The Lord Himself was with the Israelites in the desert, in a tented temple called the tabernacle, so the feast also celebrates His presence as He tabernacles (dwells) with us.

What a prospect to know that when Christ returns with His Bride to rule and to reign on earth for a thousand years, this Feast of Tabernacles will take place on earth, while Christ will be with us during this Millennium Reign!

"And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God Himself shall be with them, and be their God." Revelation 21:3

Jesus is called Emmanuel, meaning "God is with us" (Matthew 1:23, NLT). He put on a temporary tabernacle, a human body, to dwell on this earth and to offer Himself as a sacrifice. This feast also points to the promise that God will return and rally with His people in the person of Jesus. When He does, He has promised that there will be no more death and suffering, that He Himself will wipe away every tear from our eyes





(Revelation 21:4). His return is the final answer to the hope we've been carrying our entire lives. What a day that will be!

As we read and study these Feasts of Adonai, we can pray for God's wisdom to see the Messiah. Even with this small glimpse into these feasts, we see that His intentional love for humanity has endured for centuries. He has left us clues that foreshadow the beauty that is to come. The Old Testament has many hidden truths that, in light of the New Testament, bring a richer understanding to our life in Jesus Christ

--- o0o ---



## My Tabernacle

There are literally endless Biblical truths to be discovered, when we study the Tabernacle of Yehôvâh Elohim. Please commit yourself to making an in-depth study of the tabernacle of God in your own time and in the process look for Jesus! God's nature is to hide! He is hiding from us, His kings, and we must search for Him!

***It is the glory of God to conceal things, but the glory of kings is to search things out*** (Proverbs 25:2 ESV).

What a revelation to find that God **tabernacles with human beings**, as written by John in Revelation 21:3. Remember the different Feasts of Yehôvâh, of which four feasts have already been fulfilled and three feasts are still to be fulfilled. The last feast, Feast of Tabernacles, **will be fulfilled when Christ tabernacles with His people on the earth during the Millennium Reign.**

God commanded Moses on Mount Sinai to build Him a dwelling place on earth, according to the pattern in heaven, which God showed to Moses in Exodus 25:40:

***And see to it that you make them according to the pattern which was shown you on the mountain.***

Paul confirmed this in the Book of Hebrews:

*Who serve the copy and shadow of the heavenly things, as Moses was divinely instructed when he was about to make the tabernacle. For He said, "See that you make all things according to the pattern shown you on the mountain."*

**Hebrews 8:5**

### Why did God require this?

He required the tabernacle to be built as the place of communication, the "place of intimacy", God's dwelling place.



It is important to know that there was a protocol to follow for entering the tabernacle. Protocol means that there is an official system of rules that should be followed. Not just anybody could enter the tabernacle, neither the Holy Place, nor certainly the Holy of Holies. This will be clearly explained as you read on. Everything in the Old Testament is concealed and then revealed in the New Testament. Everything in the Old Testament is a foreshadowing of better things still to come in the New Testament. So, let us not embrace the shadow of things, but the true One - the Messiah, who is now the substance of the types and shadows. He is the true tabernacle, as we now have a better covenant, which is the new covenant as instituted before His death, burial and resurrection. The tabernacle is the "Masterpiece" of all shadows or types hidden in the Bible. If the shadow contained so much power, how much more would the substance!

If we want to receive the fullness of His power in our lives, we need to make ready to ENTER! Let us define what it means for us "to enter".

### **BUILD ME A SANCTUARY – A DWELLING PLACE**

When God told Moses to build Him a sanctuary, it implied that, in future, it would not be necessary for anyone to go up to Him, but that He would dwell among us!

*And let them make me a sanctuary; that I may dwell among them.<sup>9</sup> According to all that I shew thee, after the pattern of the tabernacle, and the pattern of all the instruments thereof, even so shall ye make it. Exodus 25:8- 9*

God is a God of detail and He gave Moses all the details that shadowed and hid His Son, Christ Jesus, in the tabernacle. What a mighty GOD we serve! Elements in the tabernacle point to:



The Four Gospels in the New Testament.

The end of the world, when GOD will dwell among his people.

Please read Exodus 25 on your own and see how God specifically instructed Moses and the people to firstly bring an offering of gold, silver and brass, fine linen, coat skins, oil, spices and sweet incense, different stones and many more for the making of the tabernacle.

These free metals God commanded them to use each has a divine meaning:

Gold - Divinity

Silver - Redemption

Brass - Suffering

God required specific colors, which represent the following:

Blue - Son of God (Book of John, the Eagle)

Purple - King of Glory (Book of Matthew, King, Lion of Judah)

Scarlet - Suffering (Book of Luke, Our Savior)

More representations were:

Fine Linen - Perfect Man [robes of righteousness] (Book of Mark, the Ox)

Goats' Hair - the Prophets

Notice the precise sequence in which God ordered the following;

Ram's skins - Symbol of Christ (Genesis 22).

Dyed Red - Son of God died on Calvary.

Badgers' skins - Bruised for our iniquities. Jesus was not even recognized as a human being afterwards.

Shittim wood [This wood is a family of very durable Acacia wood, which was called Iron Wood]. The body of Christ saw no corruption. This points to His resurrection.

Oil for light - After the resurrection came the outpouring of the Holy Spirit.



---

God then gave precise instructions for the Ark of Covenant (Exodus 25):

<sup>10</sup> *Make an ark of shittim wood*

<sup>11</sup> *overlay it with pure gold - make upon it a crown of gold*

<sup>16</sup> *shall put into the ark the testimony which I shall give thee*

<sup>17</sup> *Shall make a mercy seat of pure gold -*

<sup>18</sup> *Make two cherubims of gold, beaten work shall thou make them*

<sup>21</sup> ***Put the mercy seat above upon the ark and in the ark thou shall put the testimony that I shall give thee***

<sup>22</sup> ***And there I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubims which are upon the ark of the testimony, of all things which I will give in commandment unto the children of Israel.***

---

**Right here is your answer to the question of where you can meet God and communicate with Him.**

**ENTER GOD'S DWELLING PLACE!**

**If you experience problems hearing God's voice or communicating with Him, it is possible that you are visiting the wrong place!**

---

**God said:**

**"I will commune with thee from above the mercy seat ....."**

God has specific protocols for entering the tabernacle, His dwelling place! Breaking this protocol has consequences, as we can see in the following incident: The Israelites suffered a significant defeat at Eben-Ezer. Hophni and Phinehas, sons of the high priest Eli, were killed and the ark was captured by the Philistines. When they disrespectfully



opened the lid to look inside the ark of the Lord, the Lord smote 50 000 with death.

*"And he smote the men of Bethshemesh, because they had looked into the ark of the LORD, even he smote of the people fifty thousand and threescore and ten men: and the people lamented, because the LORD had smitten many of the people with a great slaughter". 1 Samuel 6:19 KJV*

We have to follow God's protocols to meet Him at the mercy seat, which is His seat, His dwelling place, where He will communicate with His people.

**What protocol was broken by the Philistines?**

**When you remove the mercy seat, you remove the covering of the blood of Christ and expose yourself to the law by rejecting the work of Jesus on the Cross. This has devastating consequences: "You will stare death in the eye!"**

God always begins His work from the inside to the outside. Let's look at a summary of the tabernacle.

**Studying the different elements in the different areas of the Tabernacle gives us the true meaning of each and it reveals the protocol that we as believers have to follow to meet our Lord, Yahshua HaMashiach, in the Holy of Holies.**

The tabernacle consisted of three areas, namely:

- Holy of Holies
- Holy Place
- Outer Court

**HOLY OF HOLIES**

God ordained Moses to put the Ark of Covenant behind a veil in the Holy of Holies. The veil separated the Holy of Holies from the Holy Place.



## **HOLY PLACE**

In front of the veil, inside the Holy Place, we find the Golden Altar of Incense. Also in the Holy Place, are:

On the right - the Table of Shewbread.

On the left - the Golden Candlestick, the Lampstand (also known as the Menorah).

The entrance into the Holy Place is the door with 5 pillars.

## **OUTER COURT**

Outside the Holy Place, in front of the 5 pillars, we find the Outer Court.

In the Outer Court, we find the following items:

Brazen Laver ["waskom"], a round bowl with water for washing.  
Brazen Altar for the sacrifices of animals.

**Let us look in more detail at the various items in the different areas:**

## **INSIDE THE HOLY OF HOLIES:**

### **ARK OF COVENANT**

We find the Ark of Covenant inside the Holy of Holies.

The Ark of Covenant was made of smittim wood, also known as iron wood, which is a very durable, long lasting wood.

It speaks of the promise of the Father to His Son, that He will not abandon Him to the realm of death, nor will He allow His Son to experience corruption (Psalm 16:10).

Therefore, Messiah had to trust His Father to not leave Him in Hades, but to resurrect Him from the dead (*A promise that we too, will be resurrected from the dead!*).

The Ark of Covenant was covered with gold, which speaks of divinity.

The wood speaks of humanity.



The wood speaks of Jesus as pure human, the body in the flesh, and gold speaks of deity, the perfect man and perfect God. We see Jesus as the Son of Man, the perfect man in wood (in the Gospel of Luke) and the perfect man in gold (as the Son of God in the Gospel of John). He was fully God.

The Mercy Seat on the other hand, was made from pure gold, with no wood in it. It had to be made as one solid piece.

In the Ark we see the person of Jesus.  
In the Mercy Seat we see the purpose of Jesus

Within the Ark of Covenant, we find the following items:

Two sets of Tables of the Testimony, which is the Ten  
Commandments, written in stone,  
The Golden pot of manna,  
Aaron's Rod.

Moses came down from the mountain with the two stones of testimony and when he saw that the people had made a golden calf and worshiped it, **he executed a prophetic action by breaking the stones. This declared that Israel was not ready and able to fulfill the law.** Moses had to go back up the mountain to receive a second set of commandments from God. **This time God told Moses to not show it to the people, but to put it in the Ark of Covenant. By this act, God declared: "I will send my SON to fulfill it on behalf of my people".**

Glory to God, for He declared:

*"Do not think that I have come to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I have not come to abolish them but to fulfill them". Matthew 5:17*

*For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes. Romans 10:4 KJV*





For Christ is the end of the law. And because of Him, God has transferred His perfect righteousness to all who believe, says the Passion Translation (Romans 10:4). The law has not been fulfilled by Israel, but by Christ Jesus, Yahshua HaMashiach, the Anointed One.

### **GOLDEN POT WITH MANNA**

The Golden Pot with manna speaks of the Bread of Life. What an amazing word we find in the Gospel of John, where Yahshua declares that He is the "Bread of Life" (I invite you to make a study of John 6).

### **AARON'S ROD**

The rod of Aaron budded in the Ark of Covenant. This speaks of resurrection.

*And the LORD said unto Moses, Bring Aaron's rod again before the testimony, to be kept for a token against the rebels; and thou shalt quite take away their murmurings from me, that they die not. Numbers 17:10*

Jesus, our Mediator, who rose from the dead, is revealed in the Ark of Covenant.

The Ark of the Covenant can be found inside the Most Holy Place and represents the Nucleolus, which is found inside the nucleus of cells - the round purple area in our generic cell diagram. What a discovery to know that the Lord put His Holy of Holies within our DNA structure!

Paul declares:

***<sup>21</sup> This entire building is under construction and is continually growing under his supervision until it rises up completed as the holy temple of the Lord himself. <sup>22</sup> This means that God is transforming each***



***one of you into the Holy of Holies, his dwelling place,  
through the power of the Holy Spirit living in you!  
Ephesians 2:21-22 TPT***

## **MERCY SEAT**

The crown of the Mercy Seat was made from one solid piece of pure gold (no wood), covered by two cherubim. The Mercy Seat was put above the ark as a lid. From there God will meet with us, commune with us from above the mercy seat, between the two cherubim, which are the guardians of God's glory.

*And thou shalt put the mercy seat above upon the ark; and in the ark thou shalt put the testimony that I shall give thee. <sup>22</sup> And there I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubims which are upon the ark of the testimony, of all things which I will give thee in commandment unto the children of Israel. Exodus 25:21-22*

Here we see the cherubim guarding the work of Calvary. They protected our salvation in the Garden of Eden, as they protected the tree of life after the fall. Had Adam and Eve eaten from the tree of life in their sinful state, we would have been condemned without any chance of REDEMPTION. Adam would have lived forever as a sinner, but now, through the redemption work of Christ, we can live forever as redeemed believers!

*"And when Moses was gone into the tabernacle of the congregation to speak with him, then he heard the voice of one speaking unto him from off the mercy seat that was upon the ark of testimony, from between the two cherubims: and he spake unto him". Numbers 7:89*



It is very important to note that the voice of God came through the blood. Thus, this time the blood speaks better things than the blood of Abel. The blood of Christ speaks mercy and forgiveness, in contrast with the blood of Abel, which cried out for justice and righteousness. The CROWN, which is a border around the mercy seat, speaks of the authority of the Messiah and His deity and the gold, which it was made of, speaks of divinity. The crown holds us securely in His authority. God looks down and sees the blood and has therefore no case against those who believe! Isn't this wonderful!

## **INSIDE THE HOLY PLACE:**

### **SHEWBREAD**

There were 12 loaves of Bread on the Table of Shewbread, which points to the 12 Tribes and also to the 12 apostles, which in turn represent the church.

Only the Priests could partake of the bread.

Today, we are His kings and priests and therefore we partake of the bread.

The bread speaks of Christ, who is Life and Power.

The Son of God is the substance we are feeding on.

He is the manna on which the angels feed. Manna refers to angel's food:

*And had rained down manna upon them to eat, and had given them of the corn of heaven. <sup>25</sup> Man did eat angels' food. Psalms 78:25*

In John 6:35 Jesus introduces Himself as the Bread of Life. He is indeed the Bread of Life!

### **CANDLESTICK – MENORAH**

This was also made out of one solid piece of pure gold.

It consists of one Stem with 6 branches, which represents the church.



The 7 Candlesticks (One stem plus 6 branches) point us to the 7 churches of Revelation and the 7 stages of the church age, which will end at the church of the Laodiceans.

In Revelation Jesus stood in the midst of the 7 churches with a message that those who overcome will be rewarded. It also speaks of the 7 Spirits of Isaiah 11, which the Lord outpours to prepare His saints for full salvation.

***And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him,  
the spirit of wisdom and  
understanding,  
the spirit of counsel and  
might,  
the spirit of knowledge and  
of the fear of the LORD;***

Isaiah 11:2

The Menorah is not merely a candle stick, but a lampstand in which the oil of the Holy Spirit flows!

*And I answered again, and said unto him, What be these two olive branches which through the **two golden pipes empty the golden oil out of themselves?** <sup>13</sup> And he answered me and said, Knowest thou not what these be? And I said, No, my lord. <sup>14</sup> Then said he, These are the two anointed ones, that stand by the Lord of the whole earth.  
Zechariah 4:12-14 KJV*

This scripture speaks of the fullness of the Anointing Spirit upon Christ and His body.

We experience Him firstly as the BREAD and then as the LIGHT  
When we become one with Him, we experience John 6 -  
communion and union in Him.

When we have daily communion with Him, we will never  
experience sickness again.

He illuminates our minds.

We get the mind of Christ. We start to think like Him.



Then we move into intercession, as we cry out; "**Abba, Father**", that is to cry out "Daddy"!

"For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father". Romans 8:15

The Passion Bible translated it as:

"And you did not receive the "spirit of religious duty," leading you back into the fear of never being good enough. But you have received the "Spirit of full acceptance," enfolding you into the family of God. And you will never feel orphaned, for as he rises up within us, our spirits join him in saying the words of tender affection, "beloved Father!" *Romans 8:15*

Now we can experience a glorious and resurrected life! Now we walk in pure righteousness and the people around us can see it!

## **OIL & SPICES**

Do you have sufficient oil?

In the parable of the virgins ALL 10 Virgins were asleep and ALL had oil. ALL of them were awakened, but only half of them had **sufficient** oil (Matthew 25).

There comes a time when an inexhaustible source of oil will flow from two golden pipes.

I believe this source of oil will be poured out on the Bride, because it is the Spirit and the Bride that cry out: "*And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.*" *Revelation 22:17*

There were 11 spices in the Altar of Incense. Spices represent our prayer life and when the spices are mixed, it releases an aroma acceptable for the Lord and it opens the door into the Holy of Holies.



## The Password

### **Do you desire to know the password to enter?**

*You can pass through his open gates with the password  
of praise.*

*Come right into his presence with thanksgiving.*

*Come bring your thank offering to him  
and affectionately bless his beautiful name!*

*Ps 100:4 TPT*

Notice that each step is a step higher and a step closer to YHWH! It is impossible to simply walk into the presence of YHWH. There is a protocol to be followed!

## **INSIDE THE OUTER COURTS:**

### **The Altar**

Here we find the Altar of the Red Heifer, which speaks of initial salvation. It was impossible for Gentiles to enter into the outer courts. This means that sinners could not enter. (*It also points to Christ, who died outside of the city -Hebrews 12:13-14*). Your ticket to enter is outside of the tabernacle (*Hebrews 9:11-15*). To enter through the door of the tabernacle points to Jesus, when He said:

**"I am the DOOR, the WAY and the TRUTH" - John 4:16**

How blind the religious people were! They were familiar with this concept, yet, when Jesus, the Door, arrived, they did not enter through Him and totally missed their salvation!

On entering through the gate, you could smell incense and spices burning on the altar. The smell of myrrh and frankincense was remarkable.



It is a picture of entering the presence of the Lord, leaving behind all your sin to move into the ark of safety and security, where you become His servant.

It speaks of a life transformed into maturity, approaching the HEAVENLY JERUSALEM!

*And behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according to his works.*

*<sup>13</sup> I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last. <sup>14</sup> Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and **may enter in through the gates into the city.***

*<sup>15</sup> But outside are the dogs, and the sorcerers, and the fornicators, and the murderers, and the idolaters, and everyone who loves and makes a lie. Revelation 22:12-15*

Sinners and the unsaved will NOT ENTER THE TABERNACLE. Outside the gates are the sorcerers and the fornicators, murderers and idolaters – those who love the lie more than they love the truth. Once you are inside, and have accepted the offering, it is not necessary to ever start over again. It is the BLOOD of the ONE SACRIFICE, Yahshua HaMashiach, the Anointed One, that completed it once and for all!

*<sup>10</sup> By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.*

*<sup>11</sup> And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins:*

***<sup>12</sup> But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;***

*<sup>13</sup> From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.*



<sup>14</sup> For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

<sup>15</sup> Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before, <sup>16</sup> This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them;

<sup>17</sup> **And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more.**

<sup>18</sup> Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

Hebrews 10:10-18

Though sin still continues, we do not have to make sacrifices anymore. In faith we abide by the completed work of the Cross!

### **BRONZE LAVER**

The Bronze laver is a round bowl filled with water.

The purpose was the washing of hands and feet of those involved in the sacrifices of the animals.

This is a picture of our water baptism. It represents dying in the water and coming out of the water into resurrection life.

It is a picture of being cleansed and sanctified to appear before the King.

It also points to our washing by the Word of God.

**THAT HE MIGHT SANCTIFY AND CLEANSE IT WITH THE WASHING OF WATER BY THE WORD. EPHESIANS 5:25**

*If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink. <sup>38</sup> He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. John 7:37-38*





**Following is some interesting information about** the outside poles of the Tabernacle, which upheld the outside fence:

There were 60 (10x6) pillars upholding the fence of fine white material

The number 6 always refers to MAN'S number and

The number 10 refers to responsibility.

Man is born from a sinful nature and therefore cannot fulfill his own responsibilities.

**"So, Jesus came to fulfill our responsibility!"**

Notice that Adonai knew this since the beginning, and it was no coincidence that Moses executed a prophetic act when he threw down the ten commandments crafted in stone, indicating that man cannot fulfill the law. When Moses came down the second time with the second set of ten commandments, Adonai told Moses to not show it to the people but to put it in the Ark of Covenant, which declared: **"I, your Lord, will fulfil it for you!"**

All pillars were to be made from shittim wood, referring to the corruptible flesh and the perfection of the body of Christ. The cup of each pillar was to be made from silver and the bottom from brass.

Silver speaks of redemption and brass of suffering.

Each pillar was to be held down to the ground with a rope made of goat's hair and a nail halfway in and halfway out, into the ground.

Goat's hair in Leviticus 9:3 refers to the SIN OFFERING.

The nails, halfway in and halfway out, speak of the death and resurrection of Christ!

It is sad to realize that Christ presented Himself to man in all these elements of His dwelling place, the Ark of Covenant, yet they rejected Him!



**He was the fulfillment of the shadow of all things  
- yet they could not grasp it and they rejected  
their Messiah!**

**Let's summarize the rich truths captured in the Tabernacle and review the protocol we need to follow to enter into the Holy of Holies.**

## **THE OUTER COURT**

### **THE GATE - RECONCILED**

In order to enter the tabernacle, God's dwelling place, we have to enter through the GATE.

Jesus is the ONLY Gate

Without Jesus, there is no hope, no salvation and no eternal life

I am the WAY, the TRUTH, and LIFE. No man cometh unto the Father, but by ME - John 14:6

### **ALTAR OF SACRIFICE - REDEEMED**

The sacrifice of animals was for the remission of sin.

"And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins" (Hebrews 10:11).

But the power of the blood of Christ, One Man, One Offering, One Sacrifice for sins, sanctified us ONCE FOR ALL.

*<sup>12</sup> But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God" Hebrews 10:12.*

### **GOLDEN LAVER - SANCTIFIED**

Only after our born-again experience and baptism can we move on to the golden laver. This is the place of the washing of the Word of God.



***That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word.*** Ephesians 5:25

Many are still at the gate! They have entered through the GATE, but unfortunately have never passed through the water to be raised as a new creation. This is what Jesus meant in John, Chapter 3, when He said to Nikodemus:

***"Nikodemus - how is this that you do not know what it means to be born again?" John 3:3***

***Except a man be born again, he cannot SEE the kingdom of God.***

***"Nikodemus - how is this that you do not know what it means to be born again? John 3:5***

***Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot ENTER into the kingdom of God.***

These following scriptures should come to life in your life.

Born of water - John 3:5

Crucified of Flesh - Galatians 5:24

Dying daily - 1 Corinthians 15:31

"Walk in the Spirit" - Galatians 5:16

Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not **inherit** the kingdom of God? 1 Corinthians 6:9

"Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God". *Galatians 5:21*



If you have not yet crucified the flesh, you will not, or cannot, move on to enter the Holy of Holies.

Once you have passed the altar of sacrifice you only need to wash your feet.

Why? Because we are already washed by the blood of the lamb. We are still living in a contaminated world and need daily cleansing by the Word of God.

The priests only washed their HANDS and FEET at the golden laver. Hands speak of works and Feet of our ways or paths of walking.

The laver contained pieces of mirror:

The Word is a mirror to see who we are in Christ. James 1:24 gives us a picture how to look in the mirror and to discover how Christ is seeing us.

**“For the believer, seeing the man “in the mirror” is seeing how God sees us from the beginning, even before the fall of Adam which resulted in sin’s devastation to human hearts. The man in the mirror is the new creation man”.**

We need to change from the inside to the outside.

### **The Outer Court represents our HUMAN body**

This is our place of struggling, of repetition and guilt.

Once death comes, guilt will leave.

Once guilt leaves, our will changes from the inside.

Our prayer life will change, and we will pray according to the Word of God.

We need to confess who Yehôvâh Elohim is. Peter received his revelation of who Christ is, after he was confronted and then he boldly and openly confessed.

Our prayer lives will become a living word.

It is the Word of God that will convert our souls.



Here are seven Steps of Prayer to follow, in order to enrich your prayer life:

Confession  
Supplication  
Adoration  
Intimacy  
Intercession  
Thanksgiving

## HOLY PLACE

The entrance into the Holy Place had five pillars, which represent the five offices of the church, also known as the five-fold ministries. Ephesians 4:11-13 gives us these offices of the five-fold ministries, namely apostles, Prophets, Evangelists, Teachers and Pastors.

The Passion Bible refers to these as the grace ministries.

What is the purpose of these grace ministries?

"Their calling is to nurture and prepare all the holy believers to do their own works of ministry and as they do this they will enlarge and build up the body of Christ."

*Ephesians 4:12 TPT*

In contrast with this scripture, what is the institutional church in reality doing?

*Their self-appointed pastors claim that they are the only spiritual leaders, thus overlooking God's grace ministries and neglecting to equip the Body of Christ.*

*No wonder the building never extends.*

In the Holy Place the following elements are present;

The Shewbread speaks of our **Satisfaction**.  
The Lampstand speaks of the **Revelation** we receive.  
The Altar of Incense speaks of **Exaltation**.



## **HOLY OF HOLIES**

This is where the Ark of Covenant stood, behind the veil. This is the place of **Glorification, where we touch Abba Father!** David's soul thirsted for His God and his flesh longed for Adonai. David saw His God in the sanctuary. Thus, he wrote Psalm 63 and declared how his soul will be satisfied.

### **My Soul Thirsts for You**

*A Psalm of David, when he was in the wilderness of Judah.*  
*O God, thou art my God; early will I seek thee: my soul thirsteth for thee, my flesh longeth for thee in a dry and thirsty land, where no water is; <sup>2</sup> **To see thy power and thy glory, so as I have seen thee in the sanctuary.** <sup>3</sup>  
*Because thy lovingkindness is better than life, my lips shall praise thee. <sup>4</sup> Thus will I bless thee while I live: I will lift up my hands in thy name. <sup>5</sup> **My soul shall be satisfied as with marrow and fatness; and my mouth shall praise thee with joyful lips:** <sup>6</sup> When I remember thee upon my bed, and meditate on thee in the night watches. <sup>7</sup> Because thou hast been my help, therefore in the shadow of thy wings will I rejoice. <sup>8</sup> My soul followeth hard after thee: thy right hand upholdeth me. <sup>9</sup> But those that seek my soul, to destroy it, shall go into the lower parts of the earth. <sup>10</sup> They shall fall by the sword: they shall be a portion for foxes. <sup>11</sup> But the king shall rejoice in God; every one that sweareth by him shall glory: but the mouth of them that speak lies shall be stopped. Psalm 63:1-11 TPT**



Because of the Word of God that washed and cleansed us, and because of the illuminated lampstands:

Revelation is now ours.

The word now produces revelation knowledge.

The oil that causes it to shine, the Holy Spirit, brings revelation.

God talks / communicates with us.

The Shewbread, accompanied by revelation, produced satisfaction and David cried out that his soul was satisfied!

BUT, there is a price to be paid! Persecution will follow, once we reach this stage of our spiritual lives. This is why the shewbread was covered by frankincense, which releases a sweet smell, but yet is bitter to the taste.

*If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you: on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified. 1 Peter 4:14 TPT*

*Peter 4:14 TPT*

In Acts, the Holy Ghost came upon the disciples, and they received power, which only came after persecution.

*But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: Acts 1:8*

It is then during the time of persecution that we will enter into worship. That is why we come to the table of incense, before entering the Holy of Holies. That table of incense, containing 11 spices, are pointing us to worship. **Revelation** at the lampstand leads us to **satisfaction** at the Table of Shewbread, which in turn leads us to the wonderful place of **worship**. This again leads to **persecution**, the bitter taste of frankincense.

**Only then will we be ready to enter the Holy of Holies!**

*O sing unto the LORD a new song: sing unto the LORD, all the earth.*



- <sup>2</sup> *Sing unto the LORD, bless his name; shew forth his salvation from day to day.*
- <sup>3</sup> *Declare his glory among the heathen, his wonders among all people.*
- <sup>4</sup> *For the LORD is great, and greatly to be praised: he is to be feared above all gods.*
- <sup>9</sup> *O worship the LORD in the beauty of holiness: fear before him, all the earth.*
- <sup>11</sup> *Let the heavens rejoice, and let the earth be glad; let the sea roar, and the fullness thereof.*
- <sup>12</sup> *Let the field be joyful, and all that is therein: then shall all the trees of the wood rejoice*
- <sup>13</sup> *Before the LORD: for he cometh, for he cometh to judge the earth: he shall judge the world with righteousness, and the people with his truth.*

Psalm 96:1-13

*He that dwelleth in the secret place of the Most High, shall abide in the shadow of Almighty, our Refuge and Fortress. My God, in You I will trust"*

*My Refuge and My Fortress*

- <sup>1</sup> *He that dwelleth in the secret place of the most High shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty.*
- <sup>2</sup> *I will say of the LORD, He is my refuge and my fortress: my God; in him will I trust.*
- <sup>3</sup> *Surely he shall deliver thee from the snare of the fowler, and from the noisome pestilence.*
- <sup>10</sup> *There shall no evil befall thee, neither shall any plague come nigh thy dwelling.*





<sup>11</sup> *For he shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways.*  
*Psalm 91:1-3; 10-11*

"With my soul have I desired thee in the night; yea, with my spirit within me will I seek thee early: for when thy judgments are in the earth, the inhabitants of the world will learn righteousness." (Isaiah 26:9)

**BE STILL AND KNOW THAT I AM GOD - Psalm  
46:10**

**New International Version**

*He says, "Be still, and know that I am God; I will be exalted among the nations, I will be exalted in the earth."*

**New American Standard Bible**

*"Cease striving and know that I am God; I will be exalted among the nations, I will be exalted in the earth."*

**King James Bible**

*Be still, and know that I am God: I will be exalted among the heathen, I will be exalted in the earth.*

**Christian Standard Bible**

*"Stop your fighting, and know that I am God, exalted among the nations, exalted on the earth."*

**Contemporary English Version**

*Our God says, "Calm down, and learn that I am God! All nations on earth will honor me."*



**Let's review the protocol we have to follow in order to touch Him! We have to go through the following stages:**

- ♣ **AT THE GATE WE ARE RECONCILED.**
- ♣ **AT THE ALTAR WE ARE REDEEMED.**
- ♣ **AT THE GOLDEN LAVER WE ARE SANCTIFIED.**
- ♣ **AT THE LAMPSTAND WE ARE ILLUMINATED.**
- ♣ **AT THE SHEWBREAD WE ARE SATISFIED.**
- ♣ **AT THE TABLE OF INCENSE, WE EXALT HIM.**
- ♣ **IN THE HOLY OF HOLIES, WE TOUCH HIM!**

When we touch Him in the Holy of Holies, this is when "deep calleth unto deep"

*Deep calleth unto deep at the noise of thy waterspouts: all thy waves and thy billows are gone over me. Ps 42:7 KJV*

The Passion Bible translated it as:

*<sup>7</sup> My deep need calls out to the deep kindness of your love.  
Your waterfall of weeping sent waves of sorrow  
over my soul, carrying me away,  
cascading over me like a thundering cataract.  
<sup>8</sup> Yet all day long God's promises of love pour over me.  
Through the night I sing his songs,  
for my prayer to God has become my life.*

"I cried unto thee, O LORD: I said, Thou art my refuge and my portion in the land of the living. <sup>6</sup> Attend unto my cry; for I am brought very low: deliver me from my persecutors; for they are stronger than I. <sup>7</sup> Bring my soul out of prison, that I may praise thy name: the righteous shall compass me about; for thou shalt deal bountifully with me". *Psalm 142:5-7*



## **APPLE OF MY EYE**

This is the place where we become the "**apple of his eye**"!

*Keep me as the apple of the eye, hide me under the shadow of thy wings. Psalm 17:8*

Adonai declares: "for he that toucheth you toucheth the apple of his eye". Zachariah 2:8

As Moses had to grow into his relationship with Adonai, we too need to follow God's protocol to meet Him face to face.

At the burning bush (Exodus 3:1-17) God told Moses to come closer. Had Moses not gone closer and looked, he would have missed both his calling and intimacy with his beloved Father.

In Exodus 33:17-23, Moses only saw the back of God, BUT  
In Exodus 33:11, Moses spoke face to face with the Father!

Likewise, we first have to enter through the Gate, into the outer court.

This is our Born-again experience, before we can enter as a priest and a king into the Holy Place, the place of service!

Yet, only His beloved high priest could enter the Holy of Holies, which speaks of God requiring of us a deep intimate relationship with Him, before we can enter His ultimate presence!

### **Are you willing to pay the price?**

The personal foundation, which is Yahshua HaMashiach, is fundamental in laying down the foundation. He is the cornerstone and any misrepresentation of who HE really is, will most definitely cause the house to collapse when the storm comes. We will constantly be misled by the enemy, trying to convince us that God is responsible for our miserable life.

The better we know our beloved Father, the stronger the foundation is laid down to sustain our house when the storm comes.



Remember, we can know Him by:

“Studying His **Names** in the scriptures.

“Studying the Word of God and **looking for the Messiah** in all the scriptures, both in the Old- and in the New Testament.

Studying His **Feasts**.

Studying His **Tabernacle**, that is His dwelling place.

Studying His **Attributes**.

Let us look at a few of Adonai’s attributes.

Remember that Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, and today, and forever (Hebrews 13:8 KJV). He is the same today as He was in the Old Testament.

--- 000 ---



## My Attributes

We often reduce and devalue God's character in our minds, because of our customs and traditions. His true unchangeable Godly character should become part of who we are, in order for Him to be revealed to others through our lives. By looking at Biblical truths, this book will help us to understand God's character in and through our Lord Jesus and to carry His attributes in our own lives and present it to this world. May Adonai flood your heart and mind with His revelation of His attributes as you read, study and meditate on His Word. The following four common attributes of Adonai will be discussed:

- Omnipotence
- Omnipresence
- Omniscience
- Omnibenevolence

### 1. GOD'S OMNIPOTENCE

The word "Omnipotent" is derived from the Latin word "Omni", which means "all" and potent means "power". Omnipotence means to be all-powerful, almighty and having unlimited power. Adonai has supreme power. This means that He can do whatever He wants to. He is not subject to physical limitations like man is. Being omnipotent, Adonai has power over wind, water, gravity, physics, etc. God's power is infinite, or limitless.

#### **Our God is an Omnipotent God**

This power is immeasurable, unimaginable and unlimited. This means God is the greatest of the great.

*"For God will never give you the spirit of fear, but the Holy Spirit who gives you mighty power, love, and self-control" (2 Timothy 1:7).* According to the Strong's Dictionary, mighty power refers to the Greek word, "Dunamis", which is resurrection power. This same power that the Father used to raise His Son, Yahshua, from the dead, works in us!



This is God's ultimate power! It is not the same power that raised Lazarus from the dead, though, because Lazarus was raised from the dead only to die again. Christ, however, was raised to live eternally. Glory to God!

This ultimate, glorious power is at work within us!

*<sup>19</sup>I pray that you will continually experience the immeasurable greatness of God's power made available to you through faith. Then your lives will be an advertisement of this immense power as it works through you! This is the mighty power <sup>20</sup>that was released when God raised Christ from the dead and exalted him to the place of highest honor and supreme authority in the heavenly realm!  
Ephesians 1:19-20 TPT*

The only way to access this power, Paul says in the above-mentioned scripture, is through faith. Without FAITH it is impossible to please God (Hebrews 11:6). There is no need to pray for more faith, because scriptures are very clear that faith comes by hearing and hearing by the Word of God (Romans 10:17). Your faith will increase and grow into full maturity, when you study the Word of God, when you pursue the Messiah in all the scriptures throughout the Bible, study His Names, search for His attributes and enrich yourself by studying the Feasts of Adonai.

Where there is power, there is authority.

*"Behold, I have given you authority and power to trample upon serpents and scorpions and [physical and mental strength and ability] over all the power that the enemy possesses; and nothing shall in any way harm you." Luke 10:19 AMPC*

We have received authority and Godly power to overcome illness, to wage mental warfare and to trample all evil power coming against us!



Let us use this power to overcome our fears, which keep us in bondage, and replace it with Godly, sacrificial (*Agape*) love. Day by day we will become more like Him, being transformed by the Holy Spirit into the image and likeness of our Messiah.

## 2. GOD'S OMNIPRESENCE

Omnipresent, we now can easily discover, means "all present". Adonai is everywhere at the same time. It means His divine presence encompasses the whole universe. There is no location that He does not inhabit. Omnipresence indicates that Adonai is distinct from the universe, but simultaneously inhabits the entirety of it.

### **He is everywhere at once!**

Nothing is hidden from His eyes. God lives with us every moment of our lives. Isaiah prophesied that Christ would come to earth as Emmanuel, God is with us! Matthew recorded that Isaiah's prophecy was fulfilled, because Christ was born from a virgin and was indeed called Emmanuel. The reason why God emphasizes being **with** us, is that when Adam and Eve transgressed in the Garden of Eden, they lost the presence of the Lord, but He restored it again! Hallelujah!

The prophet Jeremiah wrote:

*<sup>23</sup> "I am a God who is everywhere and not in one place only. <sup>24</sup> No one can hide where I cannot see them. Do you not know that I am everywhere in heaven and on earth?"  
Jeremiah 23:23-24 GNT*

David wrote a poetic song:

*Where could I go from your Spirit? Where could I run and hide from your face? <sup>8</sup> If I go up to heaven, you're there! If I go down to the realm of the dead, you're there too! <sup>9</sup> If I fly with wings into the shining dawn, you're there! If I fly*



*into the radiant sunset, you're there waiting! <sup>10</sup> Wherever I go, your hand will guide me; your strength will empower me. <sup>11</sup> It's impossible to disappear from you or to ask the darkness to hide me, for your presence is everywhere, bringing light into my night. Psalm 139:7-11 TPT*

How easily we can be destructed by our own self-pity, when we ask questions such as: "Where are you, God? Are you even alive? Don't you see my suffering?"

**Adonai is Omnipresent! He is present in all your situations!**

We limit Adonai and His Attributes by our small thinking. Let us embrace the written Word of God so that the living Word can manifest His true nature to us!

**3. GOD'S OMNISCIENCE**

Omniscience means "all-knowing" and "all-wise". Adonai knows everything about the past, present and the future. He never needs to learn anything, and nothing can or will catch Him by surprise. Yehôvâh Elohim is the source of knowledge and wisdom. God's wisdom is completely found in the Messiah, Yahshua HaMashiach.

*But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption. 1 Corinthians 1:30 KJV*

The Passion Translation states:

*"For it is not from man that we draw our life but from God as we are being joined to Jesus, the Anointed One. And now he is our God-given wisdom, our virtue, our holiness, and our redemption. <sup>31</sup> And this fulfills what is written: If anyone boasts, let him only boast in all that the Lord has done"!*





Knowing that Yehôvâh Elohim is omniscient, convinces us to rest assured that He knows all our needs and He will satisfy us. He will change our disappointments into delight. He will change our frustrations into hope. Instead of shame, we will receive a double portion of boldness. Instead of disgrace, we will rejoice in our inheritance (Isaiah 61:7). Yes, even the least of the smallest desires of our hearts are known to God. There are times when we don't even realize our own desires. But God knows them all! Sometimes we get stressed out for many reasons and end up being exhausted. Behind all our stresses, there is an unfulfilled or unrecognized desire. An unfulfilled desire is a desire of the heart, which is known to us and everyone around us, but which no one can fulfil. An unrecognized desire is a desire of the heart, which we ourselves do not even recognize. But Adonai knows it all and He desires to fulfil it for us.

There are many scriptures indicating that Adonai already knows our thoughts, e.g., in Luke, when the scribes and the Pharisees watched Yahshua to see if He would heal on the sabbath day, so that they might find an accusation against Him:

***But he knew their thoughts, and said to the man which had the withered hand, Rise up, and stand forth in the midst. And he arose and stood forth. Luke 6:7-8 KJV***

You see, the scribes and Pharisees were rule-oriented, but our Messiah will always be love-oriented! Every single incident and act from God is an act of love. You must embrace this thought, believe it and your foundation will never collapse or crack.

*<sup>33</sup> Who could ever wrap their minds around the riches of God, the depth of his wisdom, and the marvel of his perfect knowledge? Who could ever explain the wonder of his decisions[w] or search out the mysterious way he carries out his plans?*



*34 For who has discovered how the Lord thinks or is wise enough to be the one to advise him in his plans? Romans 11:33-34 TPT*

#### **4. GOD'S OMNIBENEVOLENCE**

Omnibenevolence refers to Adonai's perfection or unlimited goodness. There is one single characteristic and attribute of Yahshua that I believe is standing out. That is His Omnibenevolence! **"God is LOVE"**!

**Yehôvâh Elohim is indeed love and he that love not, knoweth not Adonai (1 John 3:8).**

How wrongly we have been taught, since childhood, that Adonai was angry at Adam and Eve after they had sinned. **"In his anger He chased them out of the Garden of Eden"**, we were taught.

This is not the truth, as this act was an ACT OF LOVE. Adonai protected Adam and Eve from eating from the tree of life in their fallen state. Had Adam and Eve eaten from the tree of life, Satan would have kept the complete human race in bondage forever, without a chance of redemption.

It is Adonai's desire for us to eat from the tree of life, but not in our fallen state. After we have received our full redemption and have been fully restored to the image and likeness of Yehôvâh Elohim, the tree of life is given to us in Revelation 22, which is the last and final book and the chapter revealing God's restoration plan.

It was an Act of Love. when the Father sacrificed His only beloved Son, Yahshua HaMashiach, and through His blood restored us to His original intent!

*And by the blood of his cross, everything in heaven and earth is brought back to himself—back to its original intent, restored to innocence again!*

*Colossians 1:20 TPT*



**Love fulfills the law, as Paul explains:**

*<sup>8</sup> Let no debt remain outstanding, except the continuing debt to love one another, for whoever loves others has fulfilled the law. <sup>9</sup> The commandments, "You shall not commit adultery," "You shall not murder," "You shall not steal," "You shall not covet," and whatever other command there may be, are summed up in this one command: "Love your neighbor as yourself." <sup>10</sup> Love does no harm to a neighbor. Therefore love is the fulfillment of the law.*  
*Romans 13:8-10 TPT*

For the entire law is fulfilled in keeping this one command: "Love your neighbor as yourself", according to Galatians 5:14 NIV. This is not a new commandment, but had been ordained from the beginning, when Adonai said:

*<sup>17</sup> "You shall not hate your brother in your heart, but you shall reason frankly with your neighbor, lest you incur sin because of him. <sup>18</sup> You shall not take vengeance or bear a grudge against the sons of your own people, but you shall love your neighbor as yourself: I am the Lord. Leviticus 19:17-18 ESV*

Psalm 89:14 declares:

*Righteousness and justice are the foundation of your throne; love and faithfulness go before you. NIV*

*Righteousness and justice are the foundation of Your throne; Lovingkindness and truth go before You. AMP*

The apostles clearly understood that the foundation of the kingdom, as taught by the Messiah, is based on this principle of love. It was because of sacrificial (*Agape*) love that we find our redemption in and through



the blood of Christ. This is not a conditional love as humans exhibit. (*When earthly things fade away, then our love for one another also fades away*). The beloved disciple, John, wrote:

*"God is love! Those who are living in love are living in God, and God lives through them. <sup>17</sup> By living in God, love has been brought to its full expression in us so that we may fearlessly face the day of judgment, because all that Jesus now is, so are we in this world. <sup>18</sup> Love never brings fear, for fear is always related to punishment. But love's perfection drives the fear of punishment far from our hearts. Whoever walks constantly afraid of punishment has not reached love's perfection. <sup>19</sup> Our love for others is our grateful response to the love God first demonstrated to us". 1 John 4:16-19 TPT*

The story of Abraham and Isaac is a typology, a foreshadowing of the love of the Father who offered His only begotten Son to, once and for all, deal with the sin of this world.

*For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. John 3:16 KJV*

The greatest love a person can show is to die for someone else (John 15:13). It is easy to die for a beloved friend, but few will lay down their lives for an enemy. This is the sacrificial love of Adonai! He laid down his life for humanity, while we were still His enemies.

**The greatest love is when one lays down his life, so that everyone else can live through his death!**

Paul's prayer in Ephesians 3 needs much attention and meditation, so that these deep truths will penetrate our innermost being and enable us to grasp the LOVE OF ADONAI:



*<sup>16</sup> May He grant you out of the rich treasury of His glory to be strengthened and reinforced with mighty power in the inner man by the [Holy] Spirit [Himself indwelling your innermost being and personality].*

*<sup>17</sup> May Christ through your faith [actually] dwell (settle down, abide, make His permanent home) in your hearts! May you be rooted deep in love and founded securely on love,*

*<sup>18</sup> That you may have the power and be strong to apprehend and grasp with all the saints [God's devoted people, the experience of that love] what is the breadth and length and height and depth [of it];*

*<sup>19</sup> [That you may really come] to know [practically, through experience for yourselves] the love of Christ, which far surpasses mere knowledge [without experience]; that you may be filled [through all your being] unto all the fullness of God [may have the richest measure of the divine Presence, and become a body wholly filled and flooded with God Himself]!*

*<sup>20</sup> Now to Him Who, by (in consequence of) the [action of His] power that is at work within us, is able to [carry out His purpose and] do superabundantly, far over and above all that we [dare] ask or think [infinitely beyond our highest prayers, desires, thoughts, hopes, or dreams] <sup>21</sup> To Him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations forever and ever. Amen (so be it).*

*Ephesians 3:16-21 AMPC*

The most prominent thing that we must believe, when laying down our foundation, is that God is **love** and that His every single act is an act of love. Even when we do not understand, even when our human reasoning



tries to convince us otherwise, we must hold onto this single, very important fact: "

**Adonai is love and everything that He is doing in my life is an act of love".**

I can sincerely testify to this: I seriously doubted the actions of Adonai in my life. I could not understand why certain things went so wrong. Little did I know that Adonai was performing a magnificent work to transform me into His image and likeness. "For My thoughts are not your thoughts, nor are your ways My ways, declares the Lord. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are My ways higher than your ways and My thoughts than your thoughts" (Isaiah 55:8-9).

Therefore, my beloved reader, when the storm comes, when trials and persecutions come, when things are going from bad to worse, stand and hold your ground, help is on its way! Adonai knows exactly what He is doing. He is busy preparing you, cleansing you, sanctifying you and setting you apart for His special use!

**From my own diary, Yahshua answered my cry, and said in Luke 21:**

*12-15 "But before any of this happens, they'll arrest you, hunt you down, and drag you to court and jail. It will go from bad to worse, dog-eat-dog, everyone at your throat because you carry my name. You'll end up on the witness stand, called to testify. Make up your mind right now not to worry about it. I'll give you the words and wisdom that will reduce all your accusers to stammers and stutters. 16-19 "You'll even be turned in by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends. Some of you will be killed. There's no telling who will hate you because of me. Even so, every detail of your body and*



*soul—even the hairs of your head!—is in my care; nothing of you will be lost. Staying with it—that’s what is required.*

**Stay strong to the end! You won’t be sorry; you’ll be saved!**

*28 When all this starts to happen, up on your feet. Stand tall with your heads high. Help is on the way!” Luke 21:12-28 MSG*

What a journey it has been for me! I can first-handedly testify that, if you hold on to the end, you will not be sorry! I guarantee that help is indeed on its way and your deliverance is near! What you are going through, is indeed an act of LOVE from Adonai, your Beloved! He knows what He is doing!! Just trust Him with all your heart! Lean not unto your own understanding, and He WILL direct your paths and lead you into victory and maturity...! (Proverbs 3:5-6).

### **Comfort for the Contrite**

The prophet Isaiah wrote that the Adonai who lives in a high and holy place is the very same God who also lives with the contrite and lowly in spirit.

*“And shall say, Cast ye up, cast ye up, prepare the way, **take up the stumbling block out of the way of my people.** <sup>15</sup> For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the **high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit**, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones”. Isaiah 57:14-15 KJV*



The word "**contrite**" means "*feeling or expressing remorse at the recognition that one has done wrong*". This means that Adonai lives with those people who are repentant and lowly in spirit. Carefully read the text again, as the last part indicates that Adonai is doing this to revive the spirit of the humble.

***This is a work of mystery.*** The general meaning for contrite is repentant. As Paul indicates to us in Hebrews 6, repentance is the very first step to take, before we can move on to build our house. Repentance, thus, is the birth canal of salvation. Repentance, in a nutshell, is a positive change in mind and an about turn – a 180-degree turnaround. God uses the enemy and our circumstances to bring us low, to crush and humble us, to renew our spirit. Bruised, broken-hearted and crushed are the words used to describe "*lowly in spirit*".

Sometimes, while going through life's journey, we must undergo indescribable painful situations, become wounded and broken-hearted, because of unexpected outcomes. It might be the loss of a loved one, a dragging goal, yet to be achieved, eagerly anticipating a blessing that's been avoiding you for many years, or serious financial problems. Remember, in all the pain God is with us, holding and carrying us like a father carries his child. Isaiah 43:2 tells us that: "When you pass through the waters, I will be with you; And through the rivers, they will not overflow you. When you walk through the fire, you will not be scorched, nor will the flame burn you."

***"For I know the plans I have for you," declares the LORD, "plans to prosper you and not to harm you, plans to give you hope and a future". Jeremiah 29:11***  
*NIV*





This verse is well-known to all of us, but few realize what the origin of this passage is. Let us reflect on the previous verse, which says:

*"For thus saith Jehovah, After seventy years are accomplished for Babylon, I will visit you, and perform my good word toward you, in causing you to return to this place". Jeremiah 29:10 ASV*

Here we find that the Lord spoke to Israel at the end of their 70-year period of captivity. They went into this captivity, because of their prideful lives. God's word is very clear that pride goes before destruction, a haughty spirit before a fall (Proverbs 16:18 NIV). Now we can see the Act of Love from God's side. By preventing them from falling and being totally destructed, Adonai intervenes. He chooses to rather bring them to a place where they are temporarily humbled, bruised, broken-hearted and crushed, so that they can get to a point of being "lowly in the spirit".

Now, Adonai can declare:

*"For I know the plans I have for you, declares the LORD, **"plans to prosper you and not to harm you, plans to give you hope and a future"** (Jeremiah 29:11).*

I hope you now can see that this act of love toward Israel, was indeed a mystery. This is the act of mystery that I had also experienced. Yahshua loved me so much that he did not want to see me go down into permanent destruction. He rather used my circumstances and my enemies to get me to a point of being humbled, broken-hearted, bruised and crushed, so that I could repent of my own free will. My Beloved declared that He will hear me and deliver me, for His plan is to prosper me and not to harm me, to give me hope and a future!

Glory to my God, Yahshua HaMashiach, who is working a work of mystery! One day, before the sea of glass, mingled with fire in front of the throne, we shall cry out with the saints:



*Great and marvelous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints. Revelation 15:3 KJV*

*<sup>4</sup> Love is large and incredibly patient. Love is gentle and consistently kind to all. It refuses to be jealous when blessing comes to someone else. Love does not brag about one's achievements nor inflate its own importance. <sup>5</sup> Love does not traffic in shame and disrespect, nor selfishly seek its own honor. Love is not easily irritated or quick to take offense. <sup>6</sup> Love joyfully celebrates honesty and finds no delight in what is wrong. <sup>7</sup> Love is a safe place of shelter, for it never stops believing the best for others. Love never takes failure as defeat, for it never gives up. <sup>8</sup> Love never stops loving. It extends beyond the gift of prophecy, which eventually fades away. It is more enduring than tongues, which will one day fall silent. Love remains long after words of knowledge are forgotten. <sup>9</sup> Our present knowledge and our prophecies are but partial, <sup>10</sup> but when love's perfection arrives, the partial will fade away. 1 Corinthians 13:4-10  
TPT*

There is still much to share regarding the attributes of Adonai, but due to time and space it is not part of the scope of this book. Diligently search the scriptures in your own time to discover Yahshua.

God is **Infinite** - He is Self-Existing, without Origin:  
Colossians 1:17

God is **Immutable** - He never changes: Malachi 3:6;  
Hebrews 13:8

God is **Self-Sufficient** - He has no needs: John 5:26

God is **Wise** - He is full of perfect and unchanging wisdom:  
Romans 11:33



- God is **Faithful** – He is Infinitely, unchangingly True:  
Deuteronomy 7:9; 2 Timothy 2:13
- God is **Just** – He is infinitely, unchangeable right and perfect in  
all He does: Deuteronomy 32:4
- God is **Merciful** – He is Infinitely, unchangeable compassionate  
and Kind: Romans 9:15-16
- God is **Gracious** – God is Infinitely inclined to spare the guilty:  
Psalm 145:8
- God is **Holy** – He is Infinitely, unchangingly perfect:  
Revelation 4:8
- God is **Glorious** – He is Infinitely Beautiful and Great:  
Habakkuk 3:4

*"Around the throne and on each side stood four living creatures, full of eyes in front and behind. <sup>7</sup> The first living creature resembled a lion, the second an ox, the third had a human face, and the fourth was like an eagle in flight. <sup>8</sup> Each of the four living creatures had six wings, full of eyes all around and under their wings. They worshiped without ceasing, day and night, singing,*

***"Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God, the Almighty!  
The Was, the Is, and the Coming!"***

*Revelation 4:6-8 TPT*

--- o0o ---



## Dig Deep

Now that we realize that the only way to build our house is on this Rock, the Petra, Yahshua HaMashiach, and that this foundation is built upon the principle of "hearing" and "doing", the next very important action to take, according to our text, is to **dig deep!**

### **Build Your House on the Rock**

*And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say? <sup>47</sup> Whosoever cometh to me, and **heareth my sayings, and doeth them**, I will shew you to whom he is like: <sup>48</sup> He is like a man which built an house, **and digged deep**, and laid the foundation on a rock: and when the flood arose, the stream beat vehemently upon that house, and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock. <sup>49</sup> But he that heareth, and doeth not, is like a man that without a foundation built an house upon the earth; against which the stream did beat vehemently, and immediately it fell; and the ruin of that house was great.*

*Luke 4:46-49*

To dig deep means to get rid of unwanted building materials and to replace them with reinforcement steel and concrete so that the foundation will not crack. An ineffective foundation will always cause a house to collapse, independently of how strong the rest of the building materials are. Some unfit building materials are:

### **1. THE PAST**

There is one single aspect in life that constantly holds us all back and keeps us in bondage and that is our memories of the past. Satan is a master at reminding us of our past. I have seen many people in captivity who willingly hold onto their past. The very first element, when digging



deep, is to get rid of our past. We are now new creatures, with a new identity and new future in Christ Jesus.

*My old identity has been co-crucified with Christ and no longer lives. And now the essence of this new life is no longer mine, for the Anointed One lives his life through me – we live in union as one! My new life is empowered by the faith of the Son of God who loves me so much that he gave himself for me, dispensing his life into mine! Galatians 2:20 TPT*

The Apostle Paul declares:

“At last, we have freedom, for Christ has set us free! We must always cherish this truth and firmly refuse to go back into the bondage of our past” (Galatians 5:1 TPT).

***“I don’t depend on my own strength to accomplish this; however I do have on compelling focus: I forget all of the past as I fasten my heart to the future instead”. Philippians 3:13 TPT.***

We receive our right standing with the Father, because of what Christ, Yahshua HaMashiach, had done for us on the cross.

*May my only boast be found in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ. In him I have been crucified to this natural realm; and the natural realm is dead to me and no longer dominates my life (Galatians 6:14 TPT).*

To truly get rid of the past, we must remind ourselves that no one can earn God’s righteousness. It can only be transferred to us, when we no longer rely on our own works, but believe in the One who powerfully declared the ungodly to be righteous in His eyes. It is faith that transfers God’s righteousness into our account (Romans 4:5 TPT).



## **2. TRADITIONS**

The Bible warns us that we are taken into captivity by our human tradition and philosophies – Colossians 2:8

New International Version

*See to it that no one takes you captive through hollow and deceptive philosophy, which depends on human tradition and the elemental spiritual forces of this world rather than on Christ.*

New Living Translation

*Don't let anyone capture you with empty philosophies and high-sounding nonsense that come from human thinking and from the spiritual powers of this world, rather than from Christ.*

Our human traditions stand in our way to walk in obedience.

Mark 7:8

*You have let go of the commands of God and are holding on to human traditions." Mark 7:8 NIV*

New Living Translation

*For you ignore God's law and substitute your own tradition."*

Human traditions and philosophies stand in the way of our deliverance. These traditions put a veil over our eyes and prevent us from seeing the truth. Our hearing gets dull and the truth does not make sense to the flesh. Only God, through His mercy and Holy Spirit, can break this yoke of bondage.

## **3. PREJUDICES**

In our society we need to deal with prejudices. We need to get rid of our racial, denominational, social and personal prejudices.



#### 4. PRECONCEPTIONS

I believe that the most important preconception the body of Christ has, is our wrong perception of who Jesus is and how to serve Him. I am astonished at how members of the body of Christ seek the Lord in pagan rituals, e.g. Christmas, holidays (pagan feast days that has nothing to do with the Lord's Feasts) and hiding Easter eggs on Easter.

Little by little, precept upon precept, the world creates a twisted picture of the Messiah and we all fall into this trap. The end result is unbelief. We try to bring comfort into our discomfort by coming up with new doctrines, like, sometimes it is God's will to heal, but sometimes not, or that it was God's will to take my child or spouse to heaven (*by implication accusing God for my child or spouse's death*).

If we start believing this nonsense, our houses will eventually collapse, because the foundation has cracks. It cannot and will not last.

#### 5. UNBELIEF

Satan is a master at stealing our faith with lies and deceptions. We should not pray for more faith, but we need to get rid of our unbelief. In the Gospel of Mark, a man came to Yahshua, asking Him if He **can** heal His Son (Mark 9:22). Yahshua answered (my own words):

*"What do you mean if I can? This is not about Me. This is about your faith. If you believe, all things are possible (Mark 9:23). The father cried out with tears; "Lord, I believe; help me with my unbelief" (Mark 9:24).*

Unbelief closes the mind for faith. Many believers are captured within their own unbelief, when they remark that *"I have been praying for my spouse now for 30 years and nothing has happened"*. The believers give up because their unbelief pictures Adonai as the one who cannot help and do not want to help.



Let us dig deep and get rid of our unbelief. Let us lay down a good and strong foundation that will keep standing in the storm.

## 6. DNA TIES

Many years ago, at the beginning of this Ministry, the Lord took me through the process of deliverance. I wrote down my experience in a booklet, which I called “**Our Battle**” (available on our website <https://www.berashithministry.co.za/index.php/booklets>). The Lord indicated to me the importance of breaking soul ties and getting rid of hidden sin. I identified these hidden sins as “DNA Ties” (*I highly recommend you to study this booklet and confess these sins in your own audible voice*). This booklet and prayers of repentance are part of the preparation work for people who come for healing sessions. Without repeating the teachings in this booklet, the following summary is given for your convenience.

Many years before I wrote the booklet, the Lord told me that I was stubborn, and He gave me scripture to convince me:

*For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the LORD, he hath also rejected thee from being king. 1 Samuel 15:23 KJV*

At first, I resisted His correction and instruction. You see, the flesh will always manifest. It was about ten years later, when I wrote the booklet on DNA Ties, that my spiritual eyes were opened to receive the truth. In my own walk, I had to dig deep to study the meaning of the words God gave me in 1 Samuel. It was only then that I realized just how stubborn I was. Stubbornness is the iniquity of idolatry. You become your own idol. It is all about “me” and “myself” and my selfish life.





*The Lord already knows all and He wants to help us. He wants to cleanse us from all this filthiness so that we can stand before Him blameless, without any wrinkles, as a spotless Bride. He has a desire for us to become whole and holy again so that He can set us apart for a special use as His Shulamite Bride, a warrior Bride for Him.*

To lay the foundation and repair the temple, we must dig deep. The higher and bigger the building is going to be, the deeper we need to dig. When digging, we get rid of the filthiness, the soft clay and unsuitable materials and we insert reinforced concrete. Quite often we do not even realize that these unsuitable materials are part of our foundations. Adding to the six unsuitable materials already discussed, are:

- Bitterness
- Unforgiveness
- Resentment (Even after forgiving someone!)
- Strife and envy (Where there are strife and envy, there are all evil works. James 3:16)
- Stubbornness
- Rebellion
- Pride
- Guilt
- Unlovingness
- Lack of nurture
- Occultism
- Rejection

The list can go on and on. There are many scriptures on the above-mentioned aspects. (***For a complete study on this topic, please download for free the five booklets on our website, "Our Battle", as part of The Light Towers booklets***). The only way to deal with these sins, especially with the rebellion spirit, is execution.



**My own testimony:**

During the period that the Lord was dealing with my hidden sins, I went through a 30-day cleansing process with the Holy Spirit. Each day the Spirit revealed to me a new hidden sin. On the last night I asked the Lord to not hold back, but to reveal all filthiness. That night I experienced something like a vision. I was asleep, but yet fully awake in the spirit. The Holy Spirit showed me a peacock. I laughed and said to the Lord that I know a peacock represents “rebellion”, but at that stage I did not realize that God was showing me pride in my own heart.

*The next morning, while studying the meaning of rebellion, God opened my eyes, and I wrote a prayer of confession.*

*This was the birth of these five Booklets that I wrote, under the guidance of the Holy Spirit.*

That was the final nail in my coffin and I willingly crucified the FLESH. The self died that day on the stake. The scriptures broke open for me:

***“I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me (Galatians 2:20 KJV).***

The Passion Bible translates it as:

*My old identity has been co-crucified with Christ and no longer lives. And now the **essence of this new life is no longer mine**, for the Anointed One lives his life through me—we live in union as one! My new life is empowered by the faith of the Son of God who loves me so much that he gave himself for me, dispensing his life into mine!*

**We are all born with the spirit of rebellion. If you have not yet repented of it, your foundation will be shaken.**



Glory to the Most High God, Yehôvâh Elohim! "How marvelous are Your works!" How perfect are your works in my life, my Lord! Glory to Yahshua HaMashiach for setting me free!

--- o0o ---



## THE WORD OF GOD

I find it very interesting that believers can make a comment such as: “***I have a problem with the Bible***”. When asking them what they mean, they mention the alleged contradictions in scriptures and the deviation from the true meaning of scriptures in different translations.

I fully cover the topic of how different translations are manipulated by the institutional church in my book “Dispensations” (*It can be downloaded from our website for free*). All translations are an interpretation of the original Aramaic or Hebrew text into English. Afrikaans is only about 100 years old, and simply does not have the vocabulary to translate the original Bible correctly.

**Thus, it is true that some translations might not be completely accurate, but you cannot have a problem with the Bible, as such (which is the written Word, that became flesh as Yahshua HaMashiach) and simultaneously say that you do belief in Yahshua.**

The Word became flesh. Yahshua is the written word. He is the Bible (John 1:1).

**If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken; John 10:35**

### THE SCRIPTURE CANNOT BE BROKEN.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (*and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father*) full of grace and truth (John 1:1, 14).

What an amazing word we find in Revelation, when John recorded:

“And I saw heaven opened and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth



judge and make war. <sup>12</sup> His eyes *were* as a flame of fire, and on his head *were* many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. <sup>13</sup> And he *was* clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called **The Word of God**. Revelation 19:11-13  
We cannot deny it! Yehôvâh Elohim is the Word of God!

**WE CANNOT BELIEVE IN JESUS AND YET DISBELIEVE THE BIBLE.**

Jesus explained to His disciples that only for a little while they will see Him, but that He must leave and return to His Father who sent Him.

*"Yet a little while, and the world seeth me no more; but ye see me: because I live, ye shall live also". John 14:19*

Jesus declared that the world will not see Him, but even when He is not on earth, we, as his disciples, will be able to see Him. This is still valid today, for many on earth cannot see Jesus.

**Can you see Jesus in the scriptures?**

**Find Him in the Old and New Testament!**

The Messiah commanded us to keep His word. Keeping His word is an act of love toward Him, as John recorded:

*"If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him". John 14:23*

The word "**if**" indicates a precondition. If we love the Messiah, we can expect to receive a blessing. That means the Triune God, Yehôvâh Elohim (*the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit*) will come and abide within us. What a promise to look forward to!

**The law motivates by fear, but grace motivates by love.**

You can motivate your children by using fear, but the only way to keep them close to you even when they are grown-up, is with love. Thus, love



is the motivation of obedience. **“Jesus manifests Himself to us through the Word of God”!** We need to understand and grasp this: reading and studying the written Word of God is a prerequisite for the living Word, Yahshua, to manifest Himself. Then that love will open the door **for the Trinity to come and abide within you!** We sometimes think we can interpret scripture as we wish. But it is only the author of a book who can interpret the meaning of the passage:

*Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. <sup>21</sup> For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost. 2 Peter 1:20-21*

***The words of the LORD are pure words: as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times.***

***Psalms 12:6***

Many wrongly believe that “man” wrote the Word of God. The Holy Spirit, however, is and was the only author of the Word. Man was only the vessel and man is subjected to error.

We all know that Adam was made from the dust of the earth. Therefore, man refers to clay. This implies that the Bible came through the vessel of clay.

According to David, man, as clay, needs to be purified seven times by the fire of the Holy Spirit.

The Silver in the furnace also needs purification seven times. The number seven refers to the perfection of the Holy Spirit. Silver always refers to our redemption.

### **A COAL FROM THE ALTAR**

One of the most significant examples of man being purified is the prophet, Isaiah. He considered himself as impure, living in a society of impurity. The Lord new it. A seraph took a live coal from the altar, touched Isaiah’s lips and cleansed him.



*Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.*

*<sup>3</sup> And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. <sup>4</sup> And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. <sup>5</sup> Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the LORD of hosts. <sup>6</sup> Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: <sup>7</sup> And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged. Isaiah 6:2-7 KJV*

### **What happened in Chapter 7, after he had his lips cleansed?**

**Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel. Isaiah 7:14 KJV**

Yes, Isaiah, now with cleansed lips, prophesized that Immanuel was on His way, to be born of a virgin. Glory to GOD! Saints, this is how the scriptures are written down by the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, using man as His vessel. Let there be no doubt that the written word cannot be broken, nor is it of human inspiration, nor for human interpretation.

***"If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken" John 10:35***

**JESUS IS CLEAR THAT THE SCRIPTURE CANNOT BE BROKEN!**



## USING THE SCRIPTURES

Satan came to Eve in the Garden of Eden and made her question what God had said: "Did God really say you cannot eat from the tree and you shall die?" Genesis 3:1-4

**Deception comes when you do not know scripture  
and do not walk in truth.**

*The presence of the "outlaw" is apparent by the activity of Satan, who uses all kinds of counterfeit miracles, signs, spurious wonders, <sup>10</sup> and every form of evil deception in order to deceive those who are perishing because they rejected the love of the truth that would lead them to being saved. <sup>11</sup> Because of this, God sends them a powerful delusion that leads them to believe what is false. 2 Thessalonians 2:9-11 TPT*

In contrast, Jesus walked in truth. When Satan tried to deceive Jesus in the desert, He knew scriptures could withstand the wiles of the devil.

**Having received the Holy Spirit does not  
necessarily mean that you operate in the power  
of the Holy Spirit.**

As strange as this might sound, it is the truth. We learn this from the life of Yahshua on earth.

*"And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him: 17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased". Matthew 3:16-17*





Directly after His baptism Jesus received the Holy Spirit. But it was only after He had overcome temptation that He operated in the power of the Holy Spirit.

Satan used the same strategy as with Eve, when he tried to deceive the Messiah:

**“If you are the Son of God...?”**

Matthew 4:3

Without having a conversation with Satan, Jesus simply said:

**It is written**

Matthew 4:1-11

Satan always uses doubt to deceive us. The only way to deal with this kind of temptation, is to quote scriptures!

**IT IS WRITTEN!**

Just before Jesus ascended into the heavens, He promised His disciples that the Father will send them a Helper. John 14:26:

*“But the Comforter, even he Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all that I said unto you”. ASV*

***The International Standard Version***

*But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and remind you of everything that I have told you.*

*But you have received the Holy Spirit, and he lives within you, so you don't need anyone to teach you what is true. For the Spirit teaches you everything you need to know, and what he teaches is true—it is not a lie. So just as he has taught you, remain in fellowship with Christ. 1 John 2:27 NLT*



*Yet when the Spirit of Truth comes, he will guide you into all truth. He will not speak on his own accord, but will speak whatever he hears and will declare to you the things that are to come. John 16:13 ISV*

The Holy Spirit will always glorify Yahshua. If you find any teaching or ministry that glorifies a person, it is not from the Holy Spirit. In that case, the Holy Spirit will eventually leave. Many ministries go astray, because men take the glory.

**The Glory always belongs to our Lord, Yehôvâh Elohim!**

## **THE NATURE OF GOD'S WORD**

Remember that we first need the Written Word, before the living Word of God can manifest (*which in both cases is Yahshua HaMashiach, the Anointed One*).

***"For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart". Hebrews 4:12***

When we study the written Word of God, it will quickly determine our heart's intentions. It pierces very deeply into our spirit and soul in order to start the process of sanctification. We need to be sanctified to be restored, as each person is born from a corruptible seed. The word heals us (Psalm 107:20; Jeremiah 30:17), it makes us whole and holy again. Adonai commanded us to be holy, as He is holy (1 Peter 1:16). Thus, we can say:



The Word of God is alive and powerful.  
Only the Word of God can penetrate the soul and spirit, the thoughts, and the heart.  
It discerns our hearts and analyses us to bring us unto holiness.  
While we read the Bible, the Bible is reading us.

Many years back I read Jeremiah 3:15 *"And I will give you pastors according to mine heart, which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding"*. At that stage I was crying out to the Lord to deliver me from the miserable situation my life was in. I asked the Lord: "Where are these pastors?" They were surely absent from my life.

*God is faithful and He answered! He sent many to minister to me according to my own heart's desires. He answered all my questions through them, so that I, in turn, can now share it with you!*

"For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe." 1 Thessalonians 2:13

The Word of God is not the word of men and if you receive it as the word of men, it will not prosper nor bring you any truth. But if you read it as the Word of God, it will set you free. Our provision is in His promise. Peter explains:

"Everything we could ever need for life and godliness has already been deposited in us by his divine power. For all this was lavished upon us through the rich experience of knowing him who has called us by name and invited us to come to him through a glorious manifestation of his goodness. <sup>4</sup> As a result of this, **he has given you magnificent promises that are beyond all price, so**



that through the power of these tremendous promises we can experience **partnership** with the divine nature, by which you have escaped the corrupt desires that are of the world". 2 Peter 1:3-4 TPT

This promise entails a partnership with Him – what an amazing promise! The Greek word "**koinonos**" means "**to participate as a partner, to partake of, to be a companion with, to have fellowship with**" the divine nature.

*This is one of the great mysteries of our faith, that God shares His nature with us. We are given birth by the Holy Spirit to be God's true sons and daughters, and every **father imparts his DNA and his "nature" to his children.** The Greek word "**physis**" (nature) is taken from the word *phyō*, which means "**to give birth, produce, bring forth, or to grow up.**" Christ lives in us and transforms us into His very own likeness. In Christ we share His divine nature. We will all bear the image of the Man from heaven, Jesus Christ. See Romans 8:9-25; 1 Corinthians 15:12-57.*

Yahshua explained to Nicodemus that we all need a born from above experience. The following statement may sound confusing: "*Many may have the same father, Yehôvâh Elohim, but not all of us have the same mother*". Our Father is in heaven, but some of us are born of the slave women, Hagar, representing Ishmael, the slave-child. Those who are born from above, from the New Heavenly Jerusalem, are born of the free women, Sarah, representing the free child, Isaac.

For more information on this, read "Isaac and Ishmael, Born from a Free- and Slave Women" (It can be downloaded from our website under Products, Booklets menu).

**Let us not neglect the Bible, as it is the key to heaven!**



## 1. THE WORD GIVES FAITH

We wrongly pray to Adonai for more faith. Scripture is very clear that faith comes by hearing and hearing by the Word of God (Romans 10:17). Paul explains in the previous verses that it is impossible to believe in Him unless we have heard of Him.

*How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and **how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard?** and how shall they hear without a preacher? <sup>15</sup> And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things! <sup>16</sup> But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report? Romans 10:14-16 KJV*

Nobody can hear of the Messiah without a preacher. In conclusion it seems as if Paul wants to say that the problem is not necessarily a hearing problem, but a believing problem, as all do not obey the gospel. When Paul points to the word of the prophet Isaiah, he refers to Isaiah 53:5, which speaks of our healing. Not all have believed this report of Isaiah. What a pity that we are in bondage because of our unbelief.

*But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed Isaiah 53:5 KJV*

Paul continues with Romans 10:18-21 MSG, speaking now of Israel!

*<sup>18-21</sup> When you see God reach out to those you consider your inferiors—outsiders!—you'll become insanely jealous. When you see God reach out to people you think are religiously stupid, you'll throw temper tantrums. Isaiah dared to speak out these words of God: "People found and*



*welcomed me who never so much as looked for me. And I found and welcomed people who had never even asked about me. Then he capped it with a damning indictment: Day after day after day, I beckoned Israel with open arms, And got nothing for my trouble but cold shoulders and icy stares”.*

Paul points us to the dull ears of Israel. How Adonai longs, with open arms, to receive us, yet we give Him a cold shoulder. Let us learn from Israel to read the written word, to listen to it and to receive it gladly. Only then, faith will come through our hearing and hearing through the Word of God.

## **2. THE WORD MAKES US CHILDREN**

The Word of God gives us the right to become His children. How wonderful!

*God was delighted to give us birth by the truth of his infallible Word so that we would fulfill his chosen destiny for us and become the favorite ones out of all his creation!*

*James 1:18*

Out of all Adonai’s creation, we are the favorite ones! We receive the Spirit, the Holy Ghost, and He brings about our adoption to sonship. Then we cry out, “Abba Father” – that is Daddy! (Romans 8:15). *Because you are his sons, God sent the Spirit of His Son into our hearts, the Spirit who calls out, “Abba, Father.” Galatians 4:6 NIV*

## **3. THE WORD PURIFIES US**

*Seeing ye have purified your souls in **obeying the truth** through the Spirit unto unfeigned love of the brethren, see that ye love one another with a pure heart fervently: <sup>23</sup> Being born again, not of corruptible seed,*



*but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever (1 Peter 1:22-23).*

What an act of grace from our loving Father, who, after the fall, gives us a new chance to become His children. He restores everything. Born from the flesh is to be born from a corruptible seed. Our born-again experience gives us a new life in Christ Jesus, this time to receive our Daddy's DNA, which can only be established through an incorruptible seed – the Word of God.

**It is the seed of the Word of God that is  
incorruptible and gives us new life.**

The nature of the seed determines the fruit!

#### **4. THE WORD HELPS US TO GROW IN HOLINESS**

The Word of God gives us spiritual nourishment and leads us into maturity.

"In the same way that nursing infants cry for milk, we must intensely crave after the pure spiritual milk of God's Word. For this "**milk**" will cause you to grow into maturity, fully nourished and strong for life [The Greek is "grow into salvation."] <sup>3</sup> especially now that you have had a taste of the goodness of Yahweh and have experienced his kindness."

1 Peter 2:1-3 TPT

The nourishment contained in the milk of the Word is like an antibiotic for guile. This milk contains an element that eliminates our guile.

**Therefore, the Word is guileless, unadulterated milk.**

The living Word is the "*logos*" of God. The "**pure spiritual milk**" is the sustaining power of God's Word coming from his very breast, as it were, to nourish and strengthen our inner being. From verse three we can see that this "**milk**" is the Lord himself dispensed to us by the Word of God. Our craving for this "**milk**" is not only because of necessity, but of



delight. He is the Seed, the Word, the Milk, the Lord, and the Living Stone. Just as a baby feeds on milk for many months to help him grow, likewise we drink and drink this milk from our Father's breasts, the written Word of God, to grow and reach our spiritual maturity.

*For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. <sup>13</sup> For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. <sup>14</sup> But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil. (Hebrews 5:12-14).*

#### **A REVELATION**

On Tuesday, 18<sup>th</sup> May 2021, a couple visited me. During our conversation, they referred to the stage our local churches (referring to the structural church) are in. The Afrikaans word is "**doleer**" and refers to a stage of grieve. The church grieves over all the announcements of their Synod on same sex marriages, etc. That evening, during our weekly gathering, I forgot the correct word and accidentally used the word "**adolescence**".

A person, who participated through "zoom", sent me a message afterwards as she received a revelation about how appropriate the "wrong" word, "adolescence" actually was.

Adolescence (from Latin *adolescere* - 'to grow up') is a transitional stage of physical and psychological development that generally occurs during the period from puberty to legal adulthood (age of majority). Adolescence is usually associated with the teenage years, but its physical, psychological or cultural





expressions may begin earlier and end later. For example, puberty now typically begins during preadolescence, particularly in females. Physical growth (particularly in males) and cognitive development can extend into the early twenties. Thus, age provides only a rough marker of adolescence, and scholars have found it difficult to agree upon a precise definition of adolescence.

**She wrote:**

“Adolescence means the stage between childhood and adulthood... You referred to the church being in adolescence - so essentially it refers to the teenage phase of development and in psychology the developmental task that needs to happen then is finding identity. So, I think it makes sense and you heard right. The church has not reached maturity or adulthood.

Adolescence is often also a time of rebellion, where adolescents listen to their **peers** rather than their **parents**. The church listens to their peers in the world e.g. about their opinion on homosexual marriages in church and the existence of hell, rather than listening to their Father. It was no coincidence that you also pointed to the scripture in Ezekiel 2 which refers to rebellious people”.

*And he said unto me, Son of man, I send thee to the children of Israel, to a rebellious nation that hath rebelled against me: they and their fathers have transgressed against me, even unto this very day. <sup>4</sup> For they are impudent children and stiffhearted. I do send thee unto them; and thou shalt say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD. <sup>5</sup> And they, whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear, (for they are a rebellious house,) yet shall know that there hath been a prophet among them. <sup>6</sup> **And thou, son of man, be not afraid of them, neither be afraid of their***



**words, though briars and thorns be with thee, and thou dost dwell among scorpions: be not afraid of their words, nor be dismayed at their looks, though they be a rebellious house. <sup>7</sup> And thou shalt speak my words unto them, whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear: for they are most rebellious. <sup>8</sup> But thou, son of man, hear what I say unto thee; Be not thou rebellious like that rebellious house: open thy mouth, and eat that I give thee. <sup>9</sup> And when I looked, behold, an hand was sent unto me; and, lo, a roll of a book was therein; <sup>10</sup> And he spread it before me; and it was written within and without: and there was written therein lamentations, and mourning, and woe.** Ezekiel 2:2-10 KJC

#### **She Continued her message the next morning:**

"This morning I felt Him (Adonai) refer to the **bar mitzvah** and **bat mitzvah** in Hebrew culture – the blessing at the age of 12 and 13 – which essentially means that a young person is afterwards counted as an adult. But the "church" has not had their bat mitzvah yet. They are searching for identity and blessing from peers, rather than from parents. They are "fashion conscious and seeker sensitive". In the world gay marriages etc. are fashionable. The church needs to come to Father YHVH for their **bat mitzvah**, for their blessing into adulthood and maturity and to find her identity in Christ.

I also hear the following; they are like moody teenagers - slamming doors when they don't get their way!!! Claiming to be so misunderstood! Hormones and "muisneste"! Father YHVH has a beautiful sense of humor! He is really showing a picture I will understand.



In adolescence, teenagers are also the "center of their own universe". They are self-centered and it's all about them!

**I hear the words: "get over yourself and grow up"**

The scripture that says by now you should be eating meat and not milk...."

I was busy writing down Hebrews 5:12-14 in my discussion on page 131-132 (*Growing in Holiness*), while this above message was being delivered in parts. When the person pointed to the scripture "you should be eating meat and not milk, I forwarded Hebrews 5 to her. Without noticing it, she forwarded the same scripture to me. We simultaneously experienced the work of the Holy Spirit! What a revelation knowledge we both received! GLORY TO Yehôvâh Elohim!

## **5. THE WORD BRINGS MENTAL ILLUMINATION**

For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Live as children of light (Ephesians 5:8 NIV).

*You are all children of the light and children of the day.*

*We do not belong to the night or to the darkness.*

*1 Thessalonians 5:5 NIV.*

This is what the Word of God does – it gives us mental illumination. "Break open your Word within me until revelation-light shines out! Those with open hearts are given insight into your plans" (Psalm 119:130 TPT). No education can bring any light. It is only the Word of God that can bring light. Wisdom and education are not the same. I believe that a great part of the trouble in the modern world is because of educated men. Coming from an academical background, with years of research and consultation experience I can confirm that education means nothing. Solomon asked the Lord for wisdom and his wisdom drew leaders from all the nations to meet this wise man.



## 6. THE WORD BRINGS PHYSICAL HEALING

It is heartbreaking to see so many people perish, because of not believing that the Word of God heals our physical bodies. As previously mentioned, not all believe the report of Isaiah 53:5 that by HIS stripes we are healed.

David wrote:

*Some of us were such fools, bringing on ourselves  
sorrow and suffering all because of our sins.*

*<sup>18</sup> Sick and feeble, unable to stand the sight of food,*

***we drew near to the gates of death.***

*<sup>19</sup> Then we cried out, "Lord, help us! Rescue us!" And he  
did!*

*<sup>20</sup> God spoke the words "**Be healed,**" and we were  
**healed,***

***delivered from death's door!***

*<sup>21</sup> So lift your hands and give thanks to God for his  
marvelous kindness*

*and for his miracles of mercy for those he loves! Psalm  
107:17-21 TPT*

### **Are you willing to believe it?**

There are so many scriptures in the written Word of God that promise our healing. It includes physical healing and even more, even healing in our soul and spirit! Adonai introduced Himself for the very first time as Yehôvâh Rapha, their Healer, to His people (Israel) in the wilderness.

*I will put none of these diseases upon thee, which I have  
brought upon the Egyptians: for I am the LORD that  
healeth thee. Exodus 15:26 KJV*



According to the Strong's Dictionary, the word "healeth" comes from the Hebrew word, "râphâh", meaning to thoroughly make whole, to heal as in healing received from a physician.

**H7495 (Strong)**

râphâ'

A primitive root; properly to *mend* (by stitching), that is, (figuratively) to *cure*: - cure, (cause to) heal, physician, repair, X thoroughly, make whole.

**SOME OF GOD'S PROMISES TO HEAL US:**

*Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.*

**1 Peter 2:24 KJV**

*He sent his word, and healed them, and delivered them from their destructions. **Psalm 107:20 KJV***

*Who forgiveth all thine iniquities; who healeth all thy diseases; Who redeemeth thy life from destruction; who crowneth thee with lovingkindness and tender mercies;*

**Psalm 103:3-4**

*Beloved, I wish above all things that thou mayest prosper and be in health, even as thy soul prospereth.*

**3 John 1:2 KJV**

*But let all my true friends shout for joy, all those who know and love what I do for you. Let them all say, "The Lord is great,*



*and he delights in the prosperity of his servant."*

***Psalm 35:27 KJV***

In my own search for emotional healing and deliverance the Word of God came to me through this scripture in Malachi:

*"But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall". Malachi 4:2*

When I cried out for "righteousness" and begged to be delivered from all the unrighteous deeds against me, the sun arose, and Yehôvâh Rapha brought healing in His wings! Joy broke through and it was as if calves were released from their stall, running into the pasture joyfully, with their tails high!

James wrote:

*"Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord: <sup>15</sup> And the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him." James 5:14-15 KJV*

One aspect of the "doctrine of Christ" is the "laying on of hands" for the sick to receive their healing. Derek Prince testified by his own experience during a time of a long sickness, that he took the written Word of God like medicine each day and his own healing broke through. He first-handedly experienced the words of Malachi:

*"But unto you that fear my name shall the sun of righteousness arise with healing in its wings; and ye shall go forth, and gambol as calves of the stall" Malachi 4:2 ASV.*



"My son, attend to my words; incline thine ear unto my sayings. <sup>21</sup> Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep them in the midst of thine heart. <sup>22</sup> For they *are* life unto those that find them, and **health to all their flesh**. Proverbs 4:20-22

**Let it deeply penetrate into the inner most being of your soul, that we are redeemed by the blood of the lamb, but cleansed by the washing of the Word of God!**

The Word of God brings victory over Satan, it provides cleansing to the believer, and it is indeed a spiritual mirror to see where we still need to wipe off the dirt.

Glory to Yehôvâh Elohim, who is our personal foundation. So, let us move forward unto perfection as we study the Doctrinal Foundation of Christ!

--- o0o ---



## **PART 2: DOCTRINAL FOUNDATION**





## INTRODUCTION: A DOCTRINAL FOUNDATION

Paul mentions the importance of moving unto full spiritual maturity and then lists seven very important principles of the doctrine of Christ to enable the believer to lay down the foundation:

*Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward God: <sup>2</sup> Of the doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands, and of resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment: <sup>3</sup> And this will we do, if God permit (Hebrews 6:1-3 KJV).*

The principles thus are:

- Repentance of dead works
- Faith toward God.
- Doctrine of Baptisms.
- Laying on of hands.
- Resurrection of the dead.
- Eternal Judgment.
- And last but not the least – “If God Permit”.

Any foundation must first be inspected and approved of, though, before the structure of the building can be erected. If the Building Inspector is indeed satisfied, he approves of it by using a stamp of authority. Similarly, Adonai first needs to **permit** (to approve) the restored foundation by using a signet ring as His stamp of approval!



## **MATURITY**

Is it sufficient enough for my salvation that I believe with my heart and confess with my mouth that Christ is my Savior?

*"For with the heart one believes unto righteousness and with the mouth one confesses unto salvation" (Romans 10:10).*

This is where most believers in the body of Christ are being misled. Believing and confessing are only the starting point. The moment we believe in our hearts and confess with our mouths, we do indeed make it unto salvation, but we are still immature, still on milk, for everyone partaking of milk is unskillful in the Word of Righteousness, for he is still an infant (Hebrews 5:12-13). Carefully read again that Paul says we have become too dull to understand. It is mostly our human traditions that stand in our way to fully understand and grow unto maturity.

*<sup>11</sup> We have much to say about this topic although it is difficult to explain, because you have become too dull and sluggish to understand. <sup>12</sup> For you should already be professors instructing others by now; but instead, you need to be taught from the beginning the basics of God's prophetic oracles! You're like children still needing milk and not yet ready to digest solid food. <sup>13</sup> For every spiritual infant who lives on milk is not yet pierced by the revelation of righteousness. <sup>14</sup> But solid food is for the mature, whose spiritual senses perceive heavenly matters. And they have been adequately trained by what they've experienced to emerge with understanding of the difference between what is truly excellent and what is evil and harmful. Hebrews 5:11-14 TPT*



Paul explains to Timothy that God's breath will empower us to receive His instructions and corrections and bring us to godliness. Godliness is to be like God – fully mature and perfectly prepared to fulfill any assignment.

*<sup>16</sup> God has transmitted his very substance into every Scripture, for it is God-breathed. It will empower you by its instruction and correction, giving you the strength to take the right direction and lead you deeper into the path of godliness. <sup>17</sup> Then you will be God's servant, fully mature and perfectly prepared to fulfill any assignment God gives you. 2 Timothy 3:16-17 TPT*

Paul warns us that, by the time we reach this point of full maturity, we should never be drawn into meaningless arguments. Such arguments only bring more division into the body of Christ and we need to avoid this at all cost.

*<sup>14</sup> Be committed to teach the believers all these things when you are with them in the presence of the Lord. Instruct them to never be drawn into meaningless arguments, or tear each other down with useless words that only harm others. 2 Timothy 2:14 TPT*

*We need to show great patience to the immature. As Adonai's servants, instead of being argumentative, we should instead help others to see the truth.*

*<sup>24</sup> For a true servant of our Lord Jesus will not be argumentative but gentle toward all and skilled in helping others see the truth, **having great patience toward the immature.** <sup>25</sup> Then with meekness you'll be able to carefully enlighten those who argue with you so they can see God's gracious gift of repentance and be brought to*



*the truth.* <sup>26</sup> ***This will cause them to rediscover themselves and escape from the snare of Satan who caught them in his trap so that they would carry out his purposes.*** 2 Timothy 2:24-25 TPT

This scripture holds the key for the very first doctrinal principle found in the Bible. It will be discussed under “**Repentance and Dead Works**”.

## **ON A ROCK**

The only way to reach spiritual maturity is to ensure that the foundation of the house is built on a rock. This is not just any rock, but the cliff – the “**Petra Rock**”. As discussed in Part 1, Peter declared that Christ is the Messiah and, on that rock, “**Petra**”, we have to build the temple. In this scripture the pattern of laying down the foundation is hidden. Take cognizance of these four very important aspects in laying down the foundation of our temples.

Firstly, there was a **confrontation**, when Yahshua asked “Who do you say I am?”

Then followed a **revelation**, when Peter declared under the influence of the Holy Spirit that Christ is the Messiah.

Peter responded with an **acknowledgment**. Very important that he did not quench the Holy Spirit by refusing the acknowledgment, but rather he embraced it.

Then Peter made a public **confession** of his faith.

We have confidence that this “**temple**” will stand and last when the storm comes, because of Jesus’ promise: “*He who comes to me and **hears** my words and **do** it (acts on them) is like a person building a house, who dug a deep hole to lay the foundation on **rock**. When the storm comes, and pushed against that house but couldn’t shake it, because it had been founded on the rock*” (Luke 6:46-48). The opposite is therefore also true. He who does not **HEAR** and does not **DO** and does not **dig deep**, when the storm comes, his house will surely collapse.



The word used in Luke 6 for rock is "**petra**" and it refers to "The Rock", Yahshua HaMashiach. What Christ was saying to Peter and his disciples was:

***Based on the revelation which you received,  
Peter, of who I am, on that revelation I will build  
my ecclesia.***

Yehôvâh Elohim wants sons and daughters for Himself. We are all born from a corruptible seed and henceforth need a born-again experience. This time from an incorruptible seed. He adopted us and when the Holy Spirit abides in us, we cry out – ABBA FATHER, that is Daddy! (Romans 8:15; Galatians 4:6) To enable us to grow unto full maturity we need a strong, deep foundation. This can only be done, when we preach Christ and bring every person into full understanding of the truth.

*28-29 Christ is our message! We preach to awaken hearts and bring every person into the full understanding of truth. It has become my inspiration and passion in ministry to labor with a tireless intensity, with his power flowing through me, to present to every believer the revelation of being his perfect one in Jesus Christ. Colossians 1:28-29*  
TPT

Only now can the entire building be erected and continually grow, until it rises up unto completion. What an amazing statement Paul made in his epistle to the Ephesians, when he indicated that the Holy Spirit is transforming each and every one of us into the Holy of Holies – His dwelling place!

***21 This entire building is under construction and is continually growing under his supervision until it rises up completed as the holy temple of the Lord himself. 22 This means that God is transforming each one of you into the Holy of Holies, his dwelling place,***



***through the power of the Holy Spirit living in you!***  
***Ephesians 2:21-22 TPT***

Now you understand the purpose of this book and of our assignment. Before we can be transformed into the Holy of Holies, we need to lay down the foundation. Only then can the building, which is under construction, reach full completion. That is when we, *the Temple of Adonai*, is transformed into the Holy of Holies, where Yahshua HaMashiach can dwell permanently.

--- o0o ---



## 1. REPENTANCE OF DEAD WORKS

Our main text to lay down the doctrinal foundation, is Hebrews 6:1-3.

*"Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of **repentance** from dead works, and of **faith** toward God, <sup>2</sup> Of the doctrine of **baptisms**, and of **laying on of hands**, and of **resurrection** of the dead, and of eternal **judgment**. <sup>3</sup> And this will we do, if God **permit** (Hebrews 6:1-3 KJV).*

Faith toward God can only follow after repentance of dead works. It is a pity that the importance and the true meaning of repentance are not clearly explained in the body of Christ anymore. If we do not meet Christ in repentance, we will most definitely meet Him in judgment.

Anything we do without faith is considered dead works.

*I think we can assume that 98% of all human works are the result of self-effort. The Bible teaches us that all self-effort is dead works, because it does not originate from faith. Without faith it is just impossible to please God.*

**"And it is impossible to please God without faith.**

Anyone who wants to come to him must believe that God exists and that he rewards those who sincerely seek him".

Hebrews 11:6 NLT

A shocking truth that we should grasp, is that when we do and act out of self-righteousness and self-efforts, we are under a curse!

For as many as are out of works of the law, **these are under a curse**; for it is written, "Cursed *is* everyone who does not continue in all things which are written in the Book of the Law, to do them." Galatians 3:10 MKJV



If you, for example, take pride in how good your business is doing, because of your own efforts and plans, you have to repent from dead works to come out from under that curse.

I walked for many years in deception, while I accomplished much out of my own effort. Then God revealed this profound Biblical truth to me. Paul explains: "Having begun in the Spirit, do you now perfect yourself in the flesh?" (Galatians 3:3). We often begin our newborn experience in the spirit, but somewhere along the line we start focusing on the self and self-efforts, trying to achieve perfection in the flesh. Paul used even stronger words when he addressed the Galatians: "O foolish Galatians, who ***bewitched*** you not to obey the truth, to whom before your eyes Jesus Christ was written among you crucified?" Galatians 3:1. To be "*bewitched*" is when someone casts a spell over you. This happens when we nullify Adonai's mercy and grace by ignoring Christ's work on the cross and even by diluting His blood, when we add fleshly attempts to it.

**Christ cried out on Calvary:**

**"It is done!" "Tetelestai!" "It is Finished!"**

**Nothing can be added!**

We need to believe that Yehôvâh Elohim exists and that He already paid the full price for all. The Christians life is a walk of faith. Any effort, task, assignment, or action we take must originate from faith. This is the only way to please Adonai.





## REPENTANCE

Notice that the first doctrinal stone listed is repentance and the last is judgment. If we do not willingly meet Adonai in repentance, we will surely meet Him in judgment. Repentance is the birth canal for salvation.

Repentance in Greek is "*metanoia*" and means a **change of the mind**, a complete conversion, a turn, change of behavior, or new course; a completely altered view of life and behavior. The Hebrew meaning of repentance is "*teshuvah*" and it means **to turn around**.

*Combining these we get a complete picture of the meaning of repentance:*

**"To turn around and walk in a new direction, on a new course with a renewed mind".**

Paul warns us to not be conformed to this world, but to be transformed. We can only be transformed by the renewing of our minds.

*And do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, in order to prove by you what is that good and pleasing and perfect will of God.*

*Romans 12:2 MKJV*

Many mistake repentance for an act of emotion, but it is merely a choice of decision. It springs from the will and not from the emotions. Emotional repentance results into falling back into the old ways. An emotional experience does not last to the end, because the "**will**" did not change. Renewing of your mind suggests an intellectual act. It means to think differently, which brings about a change in behavior and results in bearing the fruit of the Spirit. This will be the evidence of true repentance.



## **FAITH & REPENTANCE**

Faith follows repentance, as proven by this scripture:

***"The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God draws near. Repent, and believe the gospel". Mark 1:15***  
*MKJV*

The opening statements of both Christ and John the Baptist were:

**Repent, for the kingdom of Heaven is at hand.**  
*Matthew 3:2; Matthew 4:17; Mark 1:15; Mark 6:12;*  
*Luke 13:3, 5*

Luke recorded twice that we must repent, to not perish (Luke 13:3, 5). After the Holy Spirit was outpoured on 120 men in the upper room and they started to pray in tongues, the people surrounding them were cut to the heart, asking: "What shall we do?"

*Then Peter said to them, **Repent and be baptized**, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ to remission of sins, and you shall receive the **gift of the Holy Spirit**. Acts 2:38*

My heart is broken, because the deception in our churches withholds the multitudes from entering the kingdom of heaven. Peter is very clear: "Repent, be baptized and receive the 'gift'!". Messiah longs to freely give us the most precious gift – the gift of the Holy Spirit! Yet most believers think they can live their daily walk without Him.

Peter repeated himself, saying: "*Therefore repent and convert so that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord*" Acts 3:19 MKJV.

**Those who struggle in their faith have probably never met the conditions of repentance.**



*My own Personal Experience:*

*The church has never taught me about repentance. It has never explained to me the necessity or meaning of true repentance. God Himself revealed it to me. I am a living witness that my life was radically changed for the good and that I experienced Godly breakthroughs, after I had truly repented.*

*When ministering to the broken-hearted, I realize just how many people are exhausted from struggling through life, because of broken relationships, financial problems, strife, envy, jealousy, rebellion, stubbornness and many more. Although they say they have forgiven those who wronged them, they are still walking in resentment and unforgiveness.*

*True repentance is to meet our Lord, Yahshua HaMashiach, in the Courts of Heaven, where the prosecutor, Satan, accuses us day and night of our weaknesses and sins. Christ, our Redeemer, is the only One who can apply the blood of the lamb to our indictment. He does so, after we have truly repented. Only then can the legal rights that Satan has in our lives be cancelled and we can escape the snare of the devil.*

***"For the accuser of our brothers and sisters, who accuses them before our God day and night, has been hurled down". Revelation 12:10***

As soon as the broken-hearted apply the following steps of repentance, changes in their lives are visible. Miracles of physical healing follow (*confirmed by amazed physicians, who acknowledge that the healing could only be the result of a miracle*), relationships are restored, new business opportunities break through and broken souls are healed.



**Forgive** in your own audible voice those who hated you, cheated on you, robbed you, talked about you, criticized you, abandoned you, used you, rejected you, hated you, betrayed you, deceived you and neglected you.

Give up the **resentment** {bitter indignation at having been treated unfairly} toward those you have just forgiven.

**Bless** them with heavenly blessings and with a life of abundance.

Now release **resurrection power**, which is Dunamis power, in and over your soul and immune system to declare and decree that your soul and immune system are strong and excellent. This is deemed necessary for the next step.

**Bind the strongman** and summon him, according to the scriptures, to pay back sevenfold what he has stolen. "But if he is found, he shall restore sevenfold; he shall give all the goods of his house." Proverbs 6:31.

We should never judge others, for no man has the true facts or knows the conditions of another person's heart. We ask the only true judge, Yahshua HaMashiach, for **justice and righteousness**.

These above-mentioned steps, I had learned, are the key for repentance to unlock the heavenly blessings in our lives.

***These words that I speak today over you are trustworthy and true! I guarantee your freedom and blessings when you sincerely follow these steps.***



Repentance is God's requirement for you to enter His Kingdom - a life of abundance!

*And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to **repent**:<sup>31</sup> Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.<sup>32</sup> And when they heard of the resurrection of the dead, some mocked: and others said, We will hear thee again of this matter (Acts 17:30-32).*

## **THE SNARE OF SATAN**

It is important to be well aware that Satan keeps us in his snare of deception and lack of knowledge. Once the veil has been lifted from our own spiritual eyes by grace, we need to be patient with those who are still in immaturity. With meekness the mature need to help the immature to see the truth.

*<sup>24</sup> For a true servant of our Lord Jesus will not be argumentative but gentle toward all and skilled in helping others see the truth, **having great patience toward the immature.**<sup>25</sup> Then with meekness you'll be able to carefully enlighten those who argue with you so they can see God's gracious gift of repentance and be brought to the truth.<sup>26</sup> This will cause them to rediscover themselves and escape from the snare of Satan who caught them in his trap so that they would carry out his purposes. 2 Timothy 2:24-26 TPT*



**Adonai gives us the "gift of repentance", in order to bring us to the truth. When we embrace the truth, which came through repentance, we then are able to escape the snare of Satan, who caught us in his trap.**

## **SICKNESS AND DISEASE**

The topic of sickness and disease is a complete teaching on its own, but the concept is worth mentioning here in short.

*Adonai is not the author of confusion, nor is He the author of sickness and disease. Satan is the one who comes to steal, kill and destroy, but Yehôvâh Elohim comes to give life and that we might have it more abundantly (John 10:10).*

Paul teaches us that there are many voices and each and every voice has meaning.

*There are, I suppose, many different languages in the world, yet none of them is without meaning. 1 Corinthians 14:10 ISV*

How sad it is that we listen to these voices, understand it and dwell on it so much that these voices, over time, manifest in our personalities and bodies. We need to be overcomers, *as scriptures teach us!* Paul explains that these voices are foreign to him.

*<sup>11</sup> but to me they mean nothing. A person talking to me in one of these languages will be a stranger to me and I will be a stranger to him. 1 Corinthians 14:11 ISV*

Paul was also bombarded by these voices, but to him they meant nothing. It simply fell on deaf ears. Because these voices have meaning to us, on the other hand, we are ensnared by the devil.



**Let me explain how these “voices” operate in our lives:**

A voice may come to you, whispering that Person A said nasty things about you. You then dwell on this thought, start to distance yourself from Person A and resentment sets in. As soon as you walk in unforgiveness and in resentment you put yourself in torment (Matthew 18:34). Because you dwell on this voice over a period of time, the hypothalamus gland picks up the conflict between the soul and the spirit. The spirit originated from heaven and has no understanding of resentment and unforgiveness, in contrast with the soul that operates out of the old Adam and fleshly realm. This brings about the conflict between the soul and the spirit. The hypothalamus gland is responsible for the regulation of hormones throughout the body. Constant over or under secretion of these hormones, due to the conflict, which causes long term stress, is what brings about sickness and disease.

How ironic that some believe sickness and disease are from God, but then at the same time visit the doctor to heal them.

***“You hypocrite, how dare you interfere with God’s will in your life by going to a doctor if you believe He is the author of sickness and disease”!***

Dr. Henry W. Wright says in his book, *“A More Excellent Way, Be in Health”*, that we sometimes pray to God for years to heal a sick person, while in the meantime God’s will for us is to be released from the snare of Satan, who caused the sickness in the first place. Diseases in our lives can sometimes be the result of a separation from Him and His Word in specific areas of our lives, due to us not completely obeying His will. Sometimes we need to be **sanctified** in certain areas of our lives, before He heals us.

The beginning of healing from spiritually rooted diseases, is when you make peace with Adonai, accept His love once and for all, accept yourself and accept others. We have all made it unto salvation, but few are



willing to go through the process of **sanctification**. Yahshua demonstrated this concept to his disciples, when he washed their feet. He told them it was not necessary for Him to wash their whole body, as they had already made it unto salvation. He only needed to wash their feet, which was a symbolic act of **sanctification**. When a specific disease manifests in your physical body, it indicates the area of separation from Adonai in your life. That is where Satan keeps us in captivity.

For us in the healing ministry, the challenge is often to find that area of separation and to then lead the person to the truth, e.g. *the spiritual root of your sickness may be because of the presence of the unloving spirit*. When you feel unloved, rejected and abandoned, there is a lack of nurturing in the bloodline. The truth is that Adonai promised that He will never leave you nor forsake you (Deuteronomy 31:6). Through God's gracious gift of repentance, the sick is brought to the truth and this will cause them to rediscover themselves and escape from the snare of Satan, who caught them in this trap of the unloving spirit.

I hope that you clearly understand now that faith in the works of Adonai follows repentance. I daily experience how people's faith is stirred up and how they receive their deliverance from the snare of the devil after they repent. Healing flows as a result of repentance.

If we do not set this stone of "**repentance**" into our foundation, the building will always be unstable. Not only did Paul warn us against listening to the many voices, but he also gave us the weapon to deal with these voices.

*"<sup>3-4</sup>For although we live in the natural realm, we don't wage a military campaign employing human weapons, using manipulation to achieve our aims. Instead, our **spiritual weapons** are energized with divine power to effectively dismantle the defenses behind which people hide. <sup>5</sup> We can*





*demolish every deceptive fantasy that opposes God and break through every **arrogant attitude** that is raised up in defiance of the true knowledge of God. We capture, like prisoners of war, **every thought** and insist that it bow in obedience to the Anointed One. <sup>6</sup> Since we are armed with such dynamic weaponry, we stand ready to punish any trace of rebellion, as soon as you choose complete obedience 2 Corinthians 10:3-6 TPT*

The Living Bible Translation speaks of using God's mighty weapons, not those made by men, to knock down the **devil's strongholds**. Through these many voices, the devil establishes strongholds, *that become part of our personalities*. These weapons, Paul says, can break down every proud argument against God and every wall built to keep men from finding Him. These walls are blocking humans from knowing and seeing the truth. The King James Version says the weapons of our warfare are not fleshly, but mighty through God to the pulling down of **strongholds, pulling down imaginations** and every high thing that exalts itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every **thought** into the obedience of Christ. (2 Corinthians 10:4-5 KJV).

Notice the link between strongholds and imaginations (*the Passion Translation refers to it as thoughts*). We must bring it all into captivity under the obedience of Adonai.

We do all of this through the act of repentance to escape the snare of Satan, who caught us in his trap.



## **CHANGE YOUR MIND**

Most troubles in our spiritual lives are because we have never truly repented and changed our minds. We have never really made a decision and surrendered ourselves to the Lordship of Yahshua HaMashiach. We have never laid down our "will". What an example Yahshua set for us in the Garden of Gethsemane, when He prayed to the Father:

*"And going a little farther, He threw Himself upon the ground on His face and prayed saying, My Father, if it is possible, let this cup pass away from Me; nevertheless, not what I will [not what I desire], but as You will and desire".*

*Matthew 26:39 AMPC*

Even Jesus could not bear to accept and carry all the sin, iniquities and transgressions of the world onto Himself. But He laid down His will and accepted the will of the Father. He set an example for us today, requiring of us to also lay down our will for Him.

## **BEING DOUBLE-MINDED**

Many believers in the body of Christ are unstable in all their ways. They are schizophrenic, spiritually having split personalities. They try to please Adonai on Sundays, by going to church, but for the rest of the week they live a self-pleasing life. The Word of God calls this a double-minded man.

*He is a double-minded man, unstable in all he undertakes.*

*James 1:8 ISV*

When we doubt and constantly walk in unbelief, we are like a wave of the sea that is driven and tossed by the wind. Such a person will not receive anything from Adonai. (*Our Christian life is not so much a lack of faith, but rather a matter of getting rid of our unbelief.*)

"But he must ask in faith, without any doubts, for the one who has doubts is like a wave of the sea that is driven and



tossed by the wind. For do not let that man think that he shall receive anything from the Lord.” James 1:6-7 ISV

*<sup>22</sup> Don't just listen to the Word of Truth and not respond to it, for that is the essence of self-deception. So always let his Word become like poetry written and fulfilled by your life! James 1:22 TPT. Not doing what the Word of God says, seems to be self-deception, according to James.*

*<sup>23</sup> If you listen to the Word and don't live out the message you hear, you become like the person who looks in the mirror of the Word to discover the reflection of his face in the beginning. <sup>24</sup> You perceive how God sees you in the mirror of the Word, but then you go out and forget your divine origin. <sup>25</sup> But those who set their gaze deeply into the perfecting law of liberty are fascinated by and respond to the truth they hear and are strengthened by it—they experience God's blessing in all that they do! (James 1:23-25).*

*For the believer, seeing the man “**in the mirror**” is perceiving how God sees us, even from the beginning, before the fall of Adam, which resulted in sin's devastation to human hearts. The man in the mirror is the new creation man.*

We all fall short of seeing the new creation man in the mirror, because the devil constantly reminds us of the past, of the old man in the flesh. This, in itself, is double-mindedness.

*It wasn't that long ago that you lived in the religion, customs, and values of this world, obeying the dark ruler of the earthly realm who fills the atmosphere with his authority, and works diligently in the hearts of those who are disobedient to the truth of God. <sup>3</sup> The corruption that was in us from birth was expressed through the deeds and desires of our self-life. We lived by whatever natural*



*cravings and thoughts our minds dictated, living as rebellious children subject to God's wrath like everyone else. <sup>4</sup> But God still loved us with such great love. He is so rich in compassion and mercy. <sup>5</sup> Even when we were dead and doomed in our many sins, he united us into the very life of Christ and saved us by his wonderful grace! <sup>6</sup> He raised us up with Christ the exalted One, and we ascended with him into the glorious perfection and authority of the heavenly realm, for we are now co-seated as one with Christ! Ephesians 2:2-6 TPT*

## **GRACE & MERCY**

Let us not boast, believing that anything comes from ourselves. Through God's grace and mercy, He delivered us from this old sinful nature. Paul clearly understood this when he wrote:

*"As for me, may I never boast about anything except the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ. Because of that cross, my interest in this world has been crucified, and the world's interest in me has also died". Galatians 6:14 NLT.*

*This entire building is under construction and is continually growing under **his supervision** until it rises up completed as the holy temple of the Lord himself. <sup>22</sup> This means that God is transforming each one of you into the Holy of Holies, his dwelling place, through the power of the Holy Spirit living in you! Ephesians 2:21-22 TPT.*

*Let us not grieve or quench the Holy Spirit by preventing Him to do His work in our lives. (1 Thessalonians 5:19, Ephesians 4:30; Acts 7:51).*

*For the flesh sets its desire against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; for these are in opposition to one*



*another, so that you may not do the things that you please.*

*Galatians 5:17*

The flesh must die. Laying down our will is the sign of a crucified flesh. It is the flesh and the will that rebel.

Scripture warns us:

*But they rebelled*

*And grieved His Holy Spirit;*

*Therefore He turned Himself to become their enemy,*

*He fought against them. Isaiah 63:10*

## **LIVING STONES**

“We are living stones, all joined together as a building to be occupied by the Lord. So, keep coming to him who is the Living Stone—though he was rejected and discarded by men but chosen by God and is priceless in God’s sight. <sup>5</sup> Come and be his “living stones” who are continually being assembled into a sanctuary for God. For now, you serve as holy priests, offering up spiritual sacrifices that he readily accepts through Jesus Christ. <sup>6</sup> For it says in scripture: Look! I lay a cornerstone in Zion, a chosen and priceless stone! And whoever believes in him will certainly not be disappointed”. 1 Peter 2:4-6 TPT

Yehôvâh Elohim is the foundation of the Universe. He is the foundation of your temple. He is the precious cornerstone of the building. What he requires of us is to only REPENT. Through our repentance the blood of the lamb flows, not only to cleanse and to sanctify us, but to cancel all legal rights Satan has in our bloodlines. Then we are set free from the snare of the devil.

“And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.” Acts 20:32 KJV



This message of repentance is so important that Christ recorded it to five of the seven churches in the Book of Revelation.

*Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and **repent**, and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except thou repent. Revelation 2:5*

***Repent**; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will fight against them with the sword of my mouth. Revelation 2:16*

*And I gave her space to **repent** of her fornication; and she repented not. Revelation 2:21*

*Behold, I will cast her into a bed, and them that commit adultery with her into great tribulation, except they **repent** of their deeds. Revelation 2:22*

*Remember therefore how thou hast received and heard, and hold fast, and **repent**. If therefore thou shalt not watch, I will come on thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee. Revelation 3:3*

## **FALSE REPENTANCE**

We are easily mistaken to believe that experiencing deep sorrow or regret is repentance. I have seen many believers constantly asking forgiveness with tears, only to turn around and continue doing the very same wrong things.



The Greek word used in Matthew 27, when Judas realized that he had betrayed the Messiah, is "**metamelomai**" and means **profound sorrow**, engulfed in grief, swallowed in regret. This is not the same word for repentance, which is "**metanoia**" and means a **change of the mind**. The Hebrew word for repentance is "**teshuvah**," which means **to turn around**.

## JUDAS

"Then Judas, who had betrayed him, when he saw that he was condemned, **repented**<sup>G3338</sup> and returned the thirty pieces of silver to the princes of the priests and the elders." Matthew 27:3 JUB

*G3338 (Strong)*

*metamellomai*

*met-am-el'-lom-ahee*

*From G3326 and the middle of G3199; to care*

*afterwards, that is, regret: - repent (self).*

Judas never renewed his mind, nor did he turn around. He never made a decision for Christ. He was only filled with grief, sorrow, and regret. Judas had passed the point of change. Rick Renner explains the deeper meaning in Greek. It is to be like an animal that lost its way and cannot get back home. It cannot return to his owner. Likewise, many people feel sorry for their wrong deeds and repent of it, but never change in their ways and they lose their way to return to their First Love. It is not a matter of experiencing deep sorrow, as Judas did, but rather of making a sincere decision, led by the Holy Spirit, to turn around and to renew your mind. Many do make a momentary decision, urged by emotions, because they feel bad about their sins, but their lives never show the appropriate fruit. They never execute their decision to make a radical change in their lives. It is not a matter of feeling bad, but rather of deciding to consciously repent. Then the Holy Spirit starts His work of



sanctification. Salvation is a once off event, but sanctification needs to take place on a daily basis.

**Rick Renner's experience of repentance:**

Rick Renner tells how he, as a five-year-old boy, went to the pulpit to repent of his sin and to accept Jesus as Lord and Savior of his life. He saw older people approaching the pulpit with many emotions, shedding tears in their repentance. Soon Rick noticed that those people did not attend church anymore and when he saw them several months later, there was no proof of any change in their lives.

When repentance sprouts from emotions, it may not even lead to a renewed mind and to a turning away from the old ways. The decision should sprout from the will.

**We will see permanent conversions, if people would only  
repent as a definite act of their will!**

**The most critical moment in our lives is that instance, when  
Adonai asks of us to repent. There may never be another  
chance again!**

**ESAU**

Esau despised God. He never came unto repentance. His own fleshly desires were far more important to him than God's spiritual requirements. In the Book of Hebrews, Paul recorded:

*"Lest there be any fornicator, or profane person like Esau, who for one morsel of food sold his birthright. <sup>17</sup> For you know that afterward, when he desired to inherit the blessing, he was rejected; for he did not find any place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears".  
Hebrews 12:16-17 MKJV*





*These are very hard words, my beloved reader. With tears, Esau desired an opportunity to repent, but it was too late. This is precisely what Romans 1 warns us about. Those who persist in their wrong ways, will reach a point in their lives, when Adonai will give them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts. Because they did not retain God in their knowledge, He will give them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient (Romans 1:24, 28). A reprobate mind is the Greek word "adokimos", meaning a degraded mind, perverse understanding, rejected, by implication worthless, castaway. God reprobated the unrepenting sinner. In other words, they reach the same point that Esau and Judas reached, which is the point of no return and no change. Their minds become reprobate – contaminated. If you stubbornly persist to reject the truth, God says He will then give you over to believe the lie.*

**Do not reject that precious moment in your life, when God lovingly asks of you to repent.**

--- o0o ---



## THE NATURE OF REPENTANCE

The well-known parable of the prodigal son in the Gospel of Luke gives us better light on the nature of repentance.

This son took his portion of goods that falleth to him and left his father's house. He spent it all, resulting in him having to feed pigs in order to survive. For a Jew to feed swine, was as low as a person could get.

***"Sometimes we also have to reach that lowest point in life, before we would be willing to turn around".***

When the prodigal son came to his senses, when that "moment of truth" hit him, he suddenly realized that he will be better off returning to his father's house. He was perishing in his current state of uncleanness among the pigs. The state the prodigal son was in, can be compared to the state of those in captivity by the snare of the devil!

*<sup>17</sup> And when he came to himself (the moment of truth), he said, How many hired servants of my father's have bread enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger! <sup>18</sup> I will arise and go to my father, and will say unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before thee, <sup>19</sup> And am no more worthy to be called thy son: make me as one of thy hired servants. <sup>20</sup> And he arose, and came to his father. Luke 15:17-20*

This prodigal son acknowledged that he had wasted everything. He made a decision to arise, return to his father and turn his life around. This is the result of true repentance!

The beauty of the story lies in the deep truth of who our Father truly is. He is represented by the father who saw his returning son and had compassion over him. He ran and fell on his neck and kissed him. The



father must constantly have been on the lookout for the return of his lost son. Even before the son could express his guilt and unworthiness, the father brought out the best robe, put a ring on his finger, sandals on his feet and slaughtered the fattened calf to welcome him back. The ring on his finger and sandals on his feet were a declaration that the father perceived him as his true son and not as a servant.

*Bring forth the best robe, and put it on him; and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on his feet: <sup>23</sup> And bring hither the fatted calf, and kill it; and let us eat, and be merry: <sup>24</sup> For this my son was dead, and is alive again; he was lost, and is found. And they began to be merry. Luke 15:22-24 KJV*

***That is the result of true repentance -  
to be welcomed by the Father.***

Without true repentance our Christian life would be an up and down experience. It is a decision of the "will" to lay down the first foundation stone. Our unrepented life is responsible for most of our problems. Without repentance our building will collapse in future.

**Therefore, Saints, repentance comes before faith.**

### **DO YOU WANT TO MEET THE MESSIAH?**

John the Baptist prepared the way for the Messiah's appearance by using these words: "Repent ye for the kingdom of heaven is at hand" (Matthews 3:2). Mark recorded: "Repent ye and believe the gospel" (Mark 1:13-15). Repentance comes first. We cannot come to Adonai without repenting first.

Yahshua Himself made it very clear, after His resurrection:

***And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. Luke 24:46-47 KJV***



Over time we water down this message of repentance. By carefully studying the Book of Acts, we will see that there is no one who claims salvation without water baptism. Paul told the elders in Ephesians, both Jews and Greeks, that repentance toward God and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ are the key for our salvation (Acts 20:21). The point here is that Paul preached this message from house to house and he preached the same message in public and in the synagogues. The message never changed.

*And how I kept back nothing that was profitable unto you, but have shewed you, and have taught you publicly, and from house to house. Acts 20:20*

**You cannot come to God without repentance.  
This is a doctrinal requirement.**

### **Return**

*All humanity has gone astray; each and everyone have turned to his own way. No one is righteous – not even one (Romans 3:10).*

*All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all. Isaiah 53:6*

This is why Adonai requires repentance of us, so that we can turn around and be saved.

*<sup>7</sup> Come back, come back, O God, and restore us!*

*<sup>19</sup> O God, the mighty Commander of Angel Armies, come back and rescue us!*

*Psalms 80:7; 19*

Lamentations recorded the mourning of Jeremiah over the destruction of Jerusalem and stated in Chapter 5:21:



---

**(MKJV)** *Return us to You, O Jehovah, and we will turn;  
renew our days as of old,*

**(TLV)** *Bring us back to You, Adonai, and we will return.  
Renew our days as of old*

Derek Prince told a story of how he started a Bible Class with a few friends, when they were in the army. One day a friend, who usually attended these classes, approached Derek and asked to be excused from future classes, as he was afraid that he might become converted. Many years later Derek met with this person again and he had turned into the most miserable person ever imagined, because he had rejected the urge of the Spirit to repent and to turn to God. He had reached the point of no return! When God speaks and we do not act and obey, we might find ourselves at the same point as Esau and Judas. May us all adhere to this foundational requirement of repentance, before it is too late. Scripture is clear that when we reach that point of no return, we will perish.

**I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent,  
ye shall all likewise perish. Luke 13:3**

## **2. FAITH TOWARD GOD**

The second doctrinal requirement is "*faith toward Adonai*".

*This is not just any faith. The scripture is very clear that  
it is faith toward Yehôvâh Elohim.*

Without faith it is impossible to please Adonai. For we must believe that He indeed exists and that He is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

*And without faith living within us it would be impossible to  
please God. For we come to God in faith knowing that he  
is real and that he rewards the faith of those who  
passionately seek him (Hebrews 11:6 TPT).*



The Greek word "**adynatos**" means **impotent** or **powerless**. "We are powerless to please God." Only faith pleases God. Therefore, "anyone who approaches God must believe."

### **The Nature of Faith**

We often pray for more faith, but the Word of God clearly indicates that we have all received "**the measure of faith**". The measure of faith indicates the same amount for everyone.

Do you want your faith to grow?

***"Faith comes by hearing and hearing by the Word of God. Romans 10:17***

Our faith increases, when we study and "eat" the written Word of God (as we explained in Part 1). We need to hear the Word of God. Hearing comes by meditating, studying and eating the Word of God. Only then can the living Word of God manifest in our lives.

**The Word of God is therefore the only source of faith.**

### **WHAT THEN IS FAITH?**

Faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen (Hebrews 11:1). The Greek word for substance is "**hupostasis**", which means:

*"A setting or placing under. Thing put under, substructure, foundation. That which has foundation, is firm, that which has actual existence, the steadfastness of mind, courage, resolution, confidence, firm trust and assurance.*

*Biblical faith is in the heart, according to Romans 10:10 that says:*

*"For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation".*



If faith is in the heart and in the present, then hope is in the mind and in the future. Be careful to not have it the wrong way round, as a diverted hope brings on Alzheimer's disease. This is why the Word of God states that faith is the substance of things hoped for.

Many hope that something would happen in the future, but do not have faith for it to happen. Through my own experience I'd like to explain this as follows, realizing that theologically it might not be hundred per cent correct, by definition:

*"If someone would offer you a drink, but does not have your favorite drink available, that person could offer you something else, also preferable to you. Your favorite Five Roses tea may be substituted by Rooibos tea. Likewise, as believers, we substitute our hope with faith, so to speak. It is then our faith that brings the evidence of the things we cannot see. Although I may not yet see my breakthrough, my healing or restored relationship, by walking in faith I can already see it manifested. That is the only way to please God – through faith in Him".*

This is crucial to grasp and to understand. When Adonai declares that by His stripes we are healed (Isaiah 53:5), it means that healing has already been provided. Why are we still sick then? Because the thief, Satan, has stolen it from us! When a person deals with the spiritual roots of a specific sickness and repents for being separated from Adonai in that area, that person can now release faith and make a declaration: **"By His stripes I am healed"**. Faith sees the unseen and it brings evidence of things not seen! I cannot see my healing yet, but I have evidence that it is already provided. One day you will wake up with the



manifestation of a healed body and soul, restored relationships and a restored life!

**Why? Because you released faith toward Adonai! You walked in and by faith to see the future as if it already existed!**

Hope is the helmet, which protects the head and the mind, but faith is the breastplate that protects the heart.

*But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation. 1 Thessalonians 5:8*

Faith has the ability to take us beyond the realm of the visible!

***For we walk by faith, not by sight***

It is through faith that we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear (2 Corinthians 5:7). We first confess our faith and then we have hope. Many are trapped by diverted hope, because faith was not confessed. Hope comes after the release and declaration of our faith in Yehôvâh Elohim.

## **YOUR FAITH WILL BE TESTED**

Most of us do not realize that the Christian life is a life of trials, persecution, rejection and tests. Our faith can only grow and become stronger, when it is tested. James explains:

*My fellow believers, when it seems as though you are facing nothing but difficulties, see it as an invaluable opportunity to experience the greatest joy that you can! <sup>3</sup> For you know that when your faith is tested it stirs up in you the power of endurance. <sup>4</sup> And then as your endurance grows even stronger, it will release perfection into every part of your being until there is nothing missing and nothing lacking. James 1:2-4*





During these tests and trials, we learn to endure and to grow stronger, so that, when the storm comes, the building will last and not be unstable. When we are tested, we go through the same process as silver and gold, when they are purified by fire. Our faith goes through the fire of purification.

*That the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honor and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ (1 Peter 1:7).*

### **FAITH RELATES US WITH OUR HIGH PRIEST**

“Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the apostle and high priest of our profession, Christ Jesus” (Hebrews 3:1).

Our high priest, Yahshua HaMashiach, is indeed in touch with all our feelings:

*Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession. <sup>15</sup> For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin. <sup>16</sup> Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need. Hebrews 4:14-16 KJV*

### **WHAT IF MY PRAYERS SEEM TO BE UNANSWERED?**

Most of us sometimes reach a point in our lives, when we want to give up. Waiting seemingly endlessly for a prayer to be answered, can be very exhausting. While horse riding one day, I cried out to God with a



loud voice: "I cannot take it anymore, Lord! Please send Elijah's chariots of fire to take me home!" But the author of Hebrews encourages us:

**Cast not away** {apoballo - throw away; to discard; or to get rid of something no longer desired, needed, or wanted} *therefore your confidence, which hath great recompence of reward.* <sup>36</sup> *For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise.* <sup>37</sup> *For yet a little while, and he that shall come will come, and will not tarry.* <sup>38</sup> *Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.* <sup>39</sup> *But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul. Hebrews 10:35-39 KJV*

We are warned not to cast away our confidence. The word **cast away** is "**apoballo**" in Greek.

We find the same word in Mark 10. A blind man, Bartimaeus, was sitting next to the road, begging. He heard that Jesus of Nazareth was passing by and cried out with a loud voice, "Son of David, have mercy on me!" The disciples tried to silence him, but he cried out even louder: "Thou Son of David, have mercy on me". (Mark 10:46-48). Bartimaeus had been waiting for very long. Something prevented him from receiving his sight.

*And Jesus stood still, and commanded him to be called. And they call the blind man, saying unto him, Be of good comfort, rise; he calleth thee.* <sup>50</sup> *And he, **casting away his garment**, rose, and came to Jesus. Mark 10:49-50*

When Jesus commanded Bartimaeus to come to Him, Bartimaeus cast away his garment. He cast away, "apoballo", that which was in his way to receive his sight. Bartimaeus had to obey, he had to rise up and go to Jesus.



*Let us, too, cast away all the hindrances that are  
standing in our way to get through to Jesus!*

*And Jesus answered and said unto him, What wilt thou that I should do  
unto thee? Mark 10:51a*

***If Jesus would ask you today what you  
desired of Him to do for you,  
what would your answer be?***

Without any hesitation Bartimaeus knew exactly what he wanted from Jesus.

***The blind man said unto him, Lord, that I might  
receive my sight. Mark 10:51b***

Jesus's reply to Bartimaeus was: "Go thy way; thy faith hath made thee whole. And immediately he received his sight, and followed Jesus in the way." (Mark10:52)

Bartimaeus was confident and bold in declaring his faith. He had a huge expectation that the Lord would indeed meet his need. He immediately received his sight, because his faith had made him whole! In times when your prayers seem to go unanswered, do not cast away your confidence, because there is indeed a great recompense of reward awaiting you! Let us not be of those who withdraw from Him and miss the reward awaiting us.

**Look out, for payday is coming!**

There will be a reimbursement, a settlement, for the believers for all their troubles. Don't forfeit it because of a lack of faith or because of unbelief.

Hebrews 10 emphasizes that we need patience. Don't be moved by unbelief or by circumstances or what you see. We do not walk by sight, but by faith. Keep your position, stand and hold your ground. Maintain



your territory as military troops do, when the commander orders them to maintain their position, even in the face of fierce combat. We have to defiantly stick it out, regardless of the pressure mounted against it.

*"It means to hold out, hold on, outlast, persevere, hang in there, to never give up, to refuse to surrender to obstacles and to turn down every opportunity to quit."*

*"It means refusing to break, surrender or bend under a heavy load, because you are convinced that the territory, promise or principle under assault rightfully belongs to you. It means to show stamina and durability."*

It means to have a supernatural ability to continue fighting! Make a decision today to never give up. Stick to your faith! Don't surrender! Refuse to move! Stand and hold your ground! Hang on in power!

## **WHAT DID YOU DECLARE?**

Whatever it is that you have confidently spoken, you will receive the promise. Verse 37 says to hang on for just a little while longer, for payday is coming. You are on the edge of receiving. Do not withdraw or move away.

*<sup>39</sup> But we are not of them who draw back unto **perdition**; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul. Hebrews 10:39 KJV*

The word **perdition** is the Greek word "**apoleia**", which means *something ruined, rotten, and decomposing. It is a word used to describe the stench of a decaying animal or a dead human body; something in the process of perishing, loathsome.*

If you back off from your faith, you go into reverse and lose territory. Your life experience will become negative.



We are not of them who draw back unto perdition! We are of those who believe and receive the promise we declare with confidence!

Those who withdraw, because of unbelief, create an unattractive and inaccurate image of Adonai.

*And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive. Matthew 21:22*

*And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us:*

*1 John 5:14*

### **FULL SALVATION**

Faith brings full salvation. On the Berashith Ministry website ([www.berashithministry.co.za/index.php/products/personal-books](http://www.berashithministry.co.za/index.php/products/personal-books)),

**“The Apocalypse of your Full Salvation”** is a full discussion on this topic parts. Through faith, we receive full salvation. You may think to yourself: I confessed with my mouth and believe in my heart and surely I have made it unto salvation! Yes, but this salvation of your spirit is only the beginning of your faith. Carefully read what Peter has to say:

*<sup>5</sup> Through our faith, the mighty power of God constantly guards us until our **full salvation** is ready to be revealed in the last time. <sup>6</sup> May the thought of this cause you to jump for joy, even though lately **you’ve had to put up with the grief of many trials.** <sup>7</sup> But these only reveal the sterling core of your faith, which is far more valuable than gold that perishes, for even gold is refined by fire. Your authentic faith will result in even more praise, glory, and honor when Jesus the Anointed One is revealed. <sup>8</sup> You love him passionately although you have not seen him, but through believing in him you are saturated with an ecstatic joy, indescribably sublime and immersed in glory. <sup>9</sup> For you*



*are reaping the harvest of your faith—the full salvation  
promised you—your souls' victory! 1 Peter 1:5-9 TPT*

In between verses 5 and 9 we find trials and persecution, which refine our faith by fire. Only then can we experience the sanctification of the soul. After sanctification we reap the harvest of our faith, which is full salvation, "even the salvation of your soul" 1 Peter 1:9 NKJV.

## **PERSONAL RELATIONSHIP**

When we have a personal relationship with Yahshua HaMashiach we have complete confidence and trust to approach Him. Prayer does not merely mean to talk to Adonai. It is a two-way conversation. It does not mean to merely present a shopping list to God and end off your requests with a satisfying "Amen!" God can easily deal with your list, but He is interested in YOU.

We are often very ignorant of Biblical principles. When sincere ministers try to teach these principles to the body of Christ, we are dull of hearing. Solomon understood God's ways. He knew the Biblical principles of giving. Solomon went up to the brazen altar before the Lord, which was at the tabernacle of the congregation. He offered a thousand burnt offerings to the Lord (2 Chronicles 1:6), although God required the sacrifice of only one bull. He gave more than expected of him! That night God appeared to Solomon and said:

### **ASK WHAT I SHALL GIVE THEE!**

God saw Solomon's heart and invited Solomon to ask anything of Him. Solomon asked for wisdom. The Lord honored his request and gave him also all the riches and wealth and honor such as no other king has ever had before, nor shall ever have in future. (2 Chronical 1:12).

[For more information on this topic, please download the Book: "The Gift of Giving"]



**God will always speak through the Bible. Anything that does not line up with the Bible, is not from God.**

## **PRAY IN THE NAME OF JESUS**

One day a good friend visited me. We had a discussion on the following scripture verse:

*And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. <sup>14</sup> If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do it. John 14:13-14*

At that time, both of us had experienced the opposite of what this verse said. Although we asked, we did not seem to receive. Today I have a better understanding of this passage. We tend to come to God with a shopping list. Although God wants to give you your heart's desires, He is far more interested in YOU, in having a personal relationship with YOU. As my own walk progressed with Adonai and as I got to know Him much more intimately, I have reached the point, where my soul cries out:

"I am satisfied! My soul is indeed saturated by Yehôvâh Elohim! I do not want, I am content!". Now I experience that, from this place of complete satisfaction, when I ask anything in His name, I do receive!".

*And in that day ye shall ask me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, he will give it you. <sup>24</sup> Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full. John 16:23-24*

We should come to Yahshua on the basis of what Jesus did on our behalf. He paid the penalty for sin and took our iniquities on Him.

*For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit. 1 Peter 3:18*



“But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.” (Ephesians 2:13) The blood of Christ restores us and cries out a better covenant than the blood of Abel.

*And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel. Hebrews 12:24*

### **THE BLOOD OF CHRIST always speaks on our behalf.**

We come to the Father on the basis of who Jesus is. That is why the personal foundation in Part 1 is so fundamental to the restoration of the temple.

*Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, <sup>20</sup> By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh; <sup>21</sup> And having an high priest over the house of God; <sup>22</sup> Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water. Hebrews 10:19-22*

### **CHRIST OUR ADVOCATE**

Our earthly court system requires of us to have an advocate, when going to the high court. Likewise, we need an advocate to present our case before the Father in the Heavenly courts. Knowing that we are indeed guilty of a crime, we plead guilty. Our advocate, Yahshua HaMashiach, stands in our place before the Father and He accepts His Son’s offering on the cross. He declares us free and “Not guilty!”

*My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate {someone*





*called to help us} with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous. 1 John 2:1*

Based on our relationship with Him, He adopts us as His children. Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:

*According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love: <sup>5</sup> Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, <sup>6</sup> To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved. Ephesians 1:4-6*

We are completely accepted by Christ, but through many voices the devil tells us that we are rejected. He focuses on our sins and on our past and accuses us day and night. We listen to the wrong voices and live a life of captivity, ensnared by the devil. We should instead accept the precious prize of freedom, which the Son of God gave us on Calvary, when He cried out: "Tetelestai!", "It is done!", "It is finished!".

## **IN JESUS WE CAN CLAIM EVERYTHING**

"He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?" Romans 8:32

Many believers claim Philippians 4:19, which says: "My God shall supply all your need according to his riches in glory by Christ Jesus", without realizing that the Philippians were the only congregation that financially supported Paul's ministry from the beginning:

*For I want you to know that the Philippian church was the only church that supported me in the beginning as I went*



*out to preach the gospel. You were the only church that sowed into me financially, <sup>16</sup> and when I was in Thessalonica, you supported me for well over a year.*  
*Philippians 4:15-16 TPT*

Then Paul made the remark as he addressed the Philippians: "MY GOD shall supply all **your** needs". We can only reap what we sow. The Philippians sowed a seed in Paul's ministry and Paul knew that His God would accordingly supply all their needs.

It is clear that the believer has to release faith to receive from Adonai.

*For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us. 2 Corinthians 1:20*

--- o0o ---



## FAITH AND WORKS

This topic of “faith and works” is very important, but it can also be very controversial. We should, however, not get involved in arguments and useless debates about “works” such as keeping laws and statutes. Unknowingly, we sometimes even twist scriptures to support our opinions.

It is not the aim to engage in such controversial debates, but rather to help the reader to lay down the foundation as the scripture teaches us. We need to grasp that the following scripture is *the only foundational principle of the Christian faith*. Most often we unconsciously try to add substances to it. Paul explains:

*"And, brothers, I declare to you the gospel which I preached to you, which also you have received, and in which you stand; by which you also are being kept safe, if you hold fast the word which I preached to you, unless you believed in vain. <sup>3</sup> For I delivered to you first of all that which I also received, that **Christ died for our sins**, according to the Scriptures, and that He was **buried**, and that He **rose again the third day** according to the Scriptures. 1 Corinthians 15:1-3*

This is the message that the disciples preached everywhere. The Messiah had died for our sins, He was buried and rose again on the third day! The ultimate proof is in the written Word of God and not necessarily in the opinions of the eye-witnesses. Peter explains:

*"We were not retelling some masterfully crafted legend when we informed you of the power and appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ, for we saw his magnificence and splendor unveiled before our very eyes. <sup>17</sup> Yes, Father God lavished upon him radiant glory and honor when his*



*distinct voice spoke out of the realm of majestic glory, endorsing him with these words:*

***This is my cherished Son, marked by my love. All my delight is found in him!***

*<sup>18</sup> And we ourselves heard that voice resound from the heavens while we were with him on the holy mountain. <sup>19</sup> And so we have been given the **prophetic word—the written message of the prophets, made more reliable and fully validated by the confirming voice of God on the Mount of Transfiguration.** And you will continue to do well if you stay focused on it. For this prophetic message is like a piercing light shining in a gloomy place until the dawning of a new day, when the Morning Star rises in your hearts. 2 Peter 1:16-19 TPT*

What a statement Peter made! Even though they were eye-witnesses of all these events, they had a more reliable and validated confirmation of the Messiah – the Written Word of God by the prophets! I hope you can grasp this! The written Word of God, coming from the prophets of the Old Testament, Peter says, is much more reliable than their own reports as eye-witnesses!

**The final authority is the Scriptures!**

Anything that does not line up with scripture, is false. Paul was very adamant about this, when he wrote:

***"I am shocked over how quickly you have strayed away from the One who called you in the grace of Christ.***

***I'm astounded that you now embrace a distorted gospel!***



***<sup>7</sup> That is a fake "gospel" that is simply not true. There is only one gospel—the good news of Christ! Yet you have allowed those who mingle law with grace to confuse you. <sup>8</sup> But even if we or an angel from heaven should preach a gospel different than the one we preached to you, let them be under God's curse! (Galatians 1:6-8 TPT).***

Paul spent six chapters on explaining this concept to the Galatians.

*Please download for free the Booklet "Isaac & Ishmael; Born from Free- and Slave Women" from our website for a more complete discussion on this topic.*

Saints, when we receive and accept these facts, righteousness will be imputed to us. Righteousness is not what we do, but what we believe. Righteousness is to receive our "right standing before our Father". We have to cease from all our efforts and works. We cannot earn anything from Adonai. No human can do anything to change how God feels about us. The Holy Spirit lead me to this revelation in the epistle of James.

*You perceive **how God sees you** in the mirror of the Word, but then you go out and forget your divine origin.*

*James 1:24 TPT*

We are easily blinded by Satan to not see or deeply discover this Biblical truth. In a footnote, the Passion Translation Bible explains verse 24 as follows:

*For the believer, seeing the man "in the mirror" is seeing how God sees us from the beginning, even before the fall of Adam which resulted in sin's devastation to human hearts. The man in the mirror is the new creation man.*



My dear friend, when we have made it unto salvation through faith, we are a new creation. Why do you want to go back to your old fleshly desires or try to add customs and rituals to Yahshua's finished works on the cross?

Paul explains:

*When people work, they earn wages. It can't be considered a free gift, because they earned it. <sup>5</sup> **But no one earns God's righteousness.** It can only be transferred when we no longer rely on our own works, but believe in the one who powerfully declares the ungodly to be righteous in his eyes. **It is faith that transfers God's righteousness into your account!** Romans 4:4-5 TPT*

Read again James 1:24, where Paul refers back to Abraham, the father of faith: "Because Abraham believed God's words, his faith transferred God's righteousness into his account".

Stop self-righteous works! You cannot earn anything by your own works. Stop trying to earn righteousness!

*By grace we are saved through faith. It is a gift God gave to us, not of works, lest anyone should boast. Ephesians 2:8- 10*

There is a reason why Adonai ordained that salvation should come through Him alone. The moment we add works, in the hope to earn God's favor, pride sets in and we start boasting. I have discovered that legalistic people are by nature not very loving people. A very good example is the Pharisees. They did not act out of love, but in contrast wished to impose the law of Moses onto each and every offender. Yahshua, on the other hand, only demonstrated love to each and everybody who approached him.

There is, of course, an important place for works in our lives, but it should follow faith.



*We have become his poetry, a re-created people that will fulfill the destiny he has given each of us, for we are joined to Jesus, the Anointed One. Even before we were born, God planned in advance our destiny and the good works we would do to fulfill it! Ephesians 2:10 TPT*

Paul is clear that we must first become a new creation, through faith, and then follows good works.

## **FRUIT**

Most believers find it very difficult to realize that humanity cannot bear fruit.

Andrew Murray once asked: *"Who is to be blamed when there is not fruit?"*

The answer to this question is: **"Christ alone."**

"How can that be?", you may ask!

In the book, *The Blood Study Guide: Experience the Power to Transform You* (pp. 165-167). Charisma House. Kindle Edition, Benny Hinn wrote:

*"It is not our strength that produces life, but His. Just before the crucifixion, Jesus had a meal with His disciples and gave them one of the greatest lessons found in the Gospels. He told them that they were not the vine and they were not the fruit—they were the branches. We are an outlet for God's power, not the power itself. Jesus said:*

***I am the true vine, and My Father is the vinedresser. Every branch in Me that does not bear fruit He takes away; and every branch that bears fruit He prunes, that it may bear more fruit.***

*You are already clean because of the word which I have spoken to you. Abide in Me, and I in you. As the branch*



*cannot bear fruit of itself, unless it abides in the vine, neither can you, unless you abide in Me. I am the vine, you are the branches. He who abides in Me, and I in him, bears much fruit; for without Me you can do nothing. JOHN 15:1-5*

*God's purpose as the "vinedresser", is to keep the vine clean. The pruning of sin is not the result of our effort, but of His. All we are required to do, is to surrender. **Some Christians are struggling to bear fruit, but no branch has the power to make that happen. Jesus was saying: "You don't bear the fruit. I do. But I give you the privilege of carrying it. The fruit is Mine. The vine is Mine. The branch is simply hooked onto Me. That's all."***

*Someone once asked me: "If God is doing all the work, then what is my job?" "To hang on!" I replied. The vine supplies life to the branches, and the branch has the privilege of carrying the fruit. In effect, our job is to become "fruit carriers."*

***Take a close look at exactly what it is that is attached to the branch.***

***It is the fruit of the Holy Spirit, not of the flesh!***

*We become the channel through which love, joy, peace, and all the other spiritual fruit are given to the world (Galatians 5:22-23). What is the result of our branch-vine relationship? When we understand this concept and make the Lord the source of our lives, He answers our prayers. Jesus said:*





*If you abide in Me, and My words abide in you, you will ask what you desire, and it shall be done for you. —*

*JOHN 15:7*

*Never forget that Jesus said: "Without Me you can do nothing" (John 15:5). This is true before, during, and after salvation. The vine is strong and the branch is weak. But branches are what God uses to deliver His fruit to the world.*

*Hinn, Benny. The Blood Study Guide: Experience the Power to Transform You (p. 165-167). Charisma House.*

*Kindle Edition.*

## **BORN FROM FREE- AND SLAVE WOMAN**

The story of Isaac and Ishmael, in Genesis 16-21, introduces us to Abram and Sarai. Notice the spelling of their names, which God later changed to Abraham and Sarah in Genesis 17.

The "h" added to both of their names points to the "hey" in the Jewish Alphabet and represents Elohim's breath – His Ruach!

It was as if Elohim had breathed His breath over them and for each of them a new life began.

Abraham and his family moved to Canaan from Mesopotamia. Being old and childless, Sarah gives her Egyptian maid, Hagar, to Abraham, in the hope that the couple will have a child by the maid. When Hagar do become pregnant, her continued presence in their house becomes intolerable to Sarah and she constantly complains to Abraham. He tells her to do with Hagar as she wishes. Sarah then treats the maid badly and Hagar escapes into the wilderness. There she is met by an angel of the Lord, who tells her to return to her mistress and to submit to her authority. He tells her that the Lord will so greatly multiply her descendants that they would not be able to be numbered for their



multitude. He confirms that she is with child and shall bear a son; and shall call his name Ishmael, because the Lord has given heed to her affliction. Ishmael shall be a wild ass of a man; his hand against every man, and every man's hand against him; and he shall dwell over against all of his kinsmen. (Genesis 16:9-12).

We read in Genesis 17:7-27 how God appears to Abraham and instructs him to circumcise himself and all the males of his household. God further commands that henceforth every newborn male should be circumcised on the eighth day of his life, as a sign of the "eternal covenant" between God and the seed of Abraham. God then informs Abraham that, in one year's time, he and Sarah would have a son, Isaac. Abraham was nearing his hundredth year at the time, and Sarah was approaching the age of ninety. They had been married for 75 childless years, and Sarah was physically incapable of having children. By then Abraham already had a son, Ishmael, born thirteen years earlier, from Sarah's maidservant Hagar.

*19 Then God said, Sarah thy wife shall bear thee a son indeed, and thou shalt call his name Isaac: and I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, and with his seed after him. Genesis 17:19*

Abraham's reaction to the divine promise, is to proclaim: "If only Ishmael would live before You!" (Genesis 17:18). Abraham seems to be saying that he would be perfectly happy to see Ishmael as his heir, as the one who continues his life's work and perpetuates his special relationship with God. God rejects Abraham's proposal. He reassures him that Ishmael will indeed become a great people, "**but my covenant I shall establish with Isaac**" (Genesis 17:21).



Only Isaac, the son Abraham would have with Sarah, could be the true heir, and only Isaac could father the people with whom God would enter into a covenant as His "kingdom of priests and His holy nation."

More than ten years after God's promise, Sarah becomes pregnant and has a son, Isaac. Abraham fetes Isaac's weaning with a great celebration. Genesis 21:9 tells us that "Sarah saw the son of Hagar, the Egyptian, whom she had borne to Abraham, playing [*metzachek*] with her son Isaac." There are different rabbinical explanations of what Ishmael might have been doing, but whatever it was, Sarah appeals to Abraham, demanding that he sends her away (Genesis 21:10).

**Metzachek is defined as mocking and scoffing.**

Sarah saw Ishmael making fun of Isaac. Being the "son of Hagar, the Egyptian", Ishmael was a servant, making fun of his master. Such an act was punishable by death or lashing. But Sarah instead insisted that he would not inherit with Isaac, by sending both Isaac and Hagar away, ensuring Ishmael's survival, because he would have been tenuous without his mother. This is either a language of idolatry, illicitness, or murder. Abraham would not tolerate such acts in his house. Ishmael was challenging Isaac's right to the inheritance. Sarah was focusing on the inheritance. Telling Abraham to send Ishmael away attests to this.

When God tells Abraham to do what Sarah asks, he unhappily consents, and the two are cast into the wilderness alone. Abraham gives them bare provisions, when he sees them off into the desert. When Hagar cries before God, a spring of water miraculously wells up in the desert and revives them. An angel appears to confirm God's earlier message



to Hagar that Ishmael would be the father of a great nation (Genesis 21:14-21). The next time we read of Ishmael is when he and Isaac are burying their father. The Bible then lists Ishmael's twelve sons, who survived him, after his death at 137 years of age (Genesis 25:9-18). The number twelve represents a sign of nationhood.

Let the reader take note that God's insistence on Isaac being the progenitor of His chosen people, tells us something very fundamental about the nature of our relationship with Him, for Ishmael and Isaac differed in two significant respects:

Ishmael came into the world by natural means, while Isaac's birth was a supernatural event.

Ishmael was circumcised at the age of thirteen, the age of *daat* (awareness), whereas Isaac entered into the covenant of circumcision as an eight-day-old infant—an age at which a baby is not even aware of his surroundings, much less of its significance.

In other words, Ishmael represents a rational relationship with God, one that is based upon a person's nature and understanding. Isaac represents a supranatural, supra-rational bond. Abraham discerned many positive qualities in Ishmael, and was prepared, and even desirous, to see him as his heir. Yet God insisted that his covenant with Abraham be perpetuated specifically through Isaac and Isaac's descendants—a people whose commitment to God will transcend the natural and the rational.

### **SLAVE AND FREE WOMAN**

More than 2000 years later, Paul writes:

<sup>22</sup> *For it is written: Abraham had **two sons, the one out of the slave-woman, and one out of the free woman.***

<sup>23</sup> *But, indeed, he out of the **slave-woman has been***



**born according to flesh**, and he out of the free woman through the promise; <sup>24</sup> which things are being allegorized; for these are the **two covenants**, one indeed from Mount Sinai bringing forth to slavery, which is Hagar. <sup>25</sup> For Hagar is Mount Sinai in Arabia, and answers to Jerusalem which now is, and is in slavery with her children. <sup>26</sup> **But the Jerusalem from above is free, who is the mother of us all.** <sup>27</sup> For it is written, "Rejoice, barren one not bearing; break forth and shout, you not travailing; for more are the children of the desolate than she having the husband." <sup>28</sup> **But brothers, we, like Isaac, are children of promise.** <sup>29</sup> But then even as he born according to flesh persecuted him born according to the Spirit, so it is also now. <sup>30</sup> But what does the Scripture say? **"Cast out the slave-woman and her son; for in no way shall the son of the slave-woman inherit with the son of the free woman."** <sup>31</sup> Then, brothers, we are not children of a slave-woman, but of the free woman. Galatians 4:22-31 MKJV

## WHAT IS PAUL TALKING ABOUT?

Throughout his epistle to the Galatians, Paul repeats the fact that there are two covenants, namely the old- and the new covenant. These two covenants are allegorized in the two sons of Abraham, namely Isaac and Ishmael. The first son of Abraham with Hagar, Ishmael, represents the old covenant and the ten commandments given to the nation on Mount Sinai.

<sup>24</sup> **These two women and their sons express an allegory and become symbols of two covenants. The first covenant was born on Mt. Sinai, birthing children into slavery—children born to Hagar.** <sup>25</sup> For



**"Hagar" represents the law given at Mt. Sinai in Arabia. The "Hagar" metaphor corresponds to the earthly Jerusalem of today which is currently in bondage. Galatians 4:24-25 MKJV**

As we all came into the world through and by natural means (*meaning, that we all had a father and a mother*), we are born under the curse of slavery. A born-again experience is required by Elohim to make us free. As Sarah was barren and became pregnant with Isaac, so did Mary become pregnant with Jesus Christ.

<sup>3</sup>*So it is with us. When we were juveniles we were **enslaved under the hostile spirits of the world.*** <sup>4</sup>*But when that era came to an end and the time of fulfillment had come, **God sent His Son, born of a woman,*** [Every child has a mother; but for Jesus to be "born of a woman" meant there was no human father, no male counterpart. Jesus' true Father is the Father of Eternity. No other child has had a virgin birth, "born of a woman," except him. All the rest of us are born from a father and a mother.] *born under the written law {Torah}.*

Galatians 4:3-4 TPT – emphasis is mine

The Hebraic Root Bible says: "But when the fullness of the time came, Elohim sent forth His Son, having come into being out of a woman, being subject to the Torah.

<sup>6</sup>*While they were there, the time came for her to have her baby,* <sup>7</sup>*and she gave birth to her first child, a son. She wrapped him in strips of cloth and laid him in a feeding trough, because there was no place for them in the guest quarters. Luke 2:6-7*



<sup>21</sup> After eight days had passed, the infant was circumcised and named Jesus, the name given him by the angel before he was conceived in the womb. <sup>22</sup> When the time came for their purification according to the Law of Moses, Joseph and Mary took Jesus up to Jerusalem to present him to the Lord, <sup>23</sup> as it is written in the Law of the Lord, "Every firstborn son is to be designated as holy to the Lord." Luke 2:21-23

<sup>5</sup> **Yet all of this was so that he would redeem and set free all those held hostage to the written law so that we would receive our freedom and a full legal adoption as his children** (Galatians 4:5 TPT).

The Hebraic Root Bible translated verse 5 as:

***That He might redeem the ones under (the penalty of breaking) the Torah, that we might receive the adoption of sons.***

Isn't it amazing that Sarah was a foreshadowing of Christ's birth, who was born supernaturally by the Spirit? Paul explains that Isaac, the son of the free woman, Sarah, was born supernaturally by the Spirit. But in contrast with this, Paul mentions that Ishmael, the son of the slave girl, was a child of the natural realm (Galatians 4:23 TPT).

*It seems to me that most of us have the same Father, but we do not have the same mother. This contains a mystery. Henceforth we need to be born from above – the heavenly Jerusalem, which is our true mother. She is the free woman, birthing children into freedom. But we also find a mother that is birthing children into slavery – children born to Hagar. She represents the law given at Mount Sinai and represents the earthly Jerusalem of today. Out of her (Hagar), the slave-woman, has been born children*



*according to the flesh, who are currently in bondage!*  
*(Galatians 4:23-25).*

Paul is showing us that the **law is a system of works that brings bondage** and that the **promise is a system of grace that brings true freedom**. Both Mary and Sarah were barren women and they both burst forth with gladness to give birth to free children.

*<sup>27</sup> For it is written:*

*"Burst forth with gladness,*

*O barren woman with no children!*

*Break through with the shouts of joy and jubilee,*

*for you are about to give birth!*

*The one who was once considered desolate and barren*

*now has more children than the one who has a husband!"*

*Galatians 4:27 TPT*

This is a typology fulfilled within the birth of Christ Jesus.

*<sup>3</sup> So it is with us. When we were juveniles (young, teenage, immature, inexperienced) we were **enslaved** under the hostile spirits of the world. <sup>4</sup> But when the time of fulfillment had come, **God sent His Son, born of a woman, born under the law.** <sup>5</sup> Yet all of this was so that he would redeem and set **free those held hostage to the law** so that we would receive our freedom and a full legal adoption as his children (Galatians 4:3-5 TPT – emphasis is mine).*

The above-mentioned passage is profound. We are now sons and daughters of adoption, by whom we cry out – Daddy! Abba Father!

Paul explains to the Romans:

### **Heirs with Christ**

*"Consequently, brothers, we are not—with respect to human nature, that is—under an obligation to live*





according to human nature. <sup>13</sup> For if you live according to human nature, you are going to die, but if by the Spirit you continually put to death the activities of the body, you will live. <sup>14</sup> **For all who are led by God's Spirit are God's children.** <sup>15</sup> **For you have not received a spirit of slavery that leads you into fear again. Instead, you have received the Spirit of adoption by whom we cry out, "Abba! Father!"** <sup>16</sup> The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children. <sup>17</sup> Now if we are children, we are heirs—heirs of God and co-heirs with the Messiah—if, in fact, we share in his sufferings in order that we may also share in his glory". Romans 8:12-17 TPT

We are saved by grace through faith and not by "doing". The nation of Israel is, however, still in bondage, because they have not yet accepted the Messiah and their salvation. They are still under the bondage of the law and this bondage will only end when the Messiah returns and redeems Jerusalem (Zachariah 14). What a privilege we have to accept the Messiah, to receive our salvation, to be born from above into our freedom. This is indeed grace!

Paul continues:

<sup>7</sup> Now we're no longer living like slaves under the law, but we enjoy being God's very own sons and daughters! **And because we're his, we can access everything our Father has—for we are heirs of God through Jesus, the Messiah!** Galatians 4:7 TPT.

Immediately after we are born from above, from the free woman, we not only become his own sons and daughters, but we also become His heirs. Our heritage comes through Jesus, the Messiah, and not by



keeping the law! It is very important to understand what Paul is trying to tell us. We cannot add anything to the blood of the lamb! Everything we are, everything we become, and everything we receive, is in Him and through Him.

*Before we knew God as our Father and we became his children, we were unwitting {not aware of the full facts} servants to the powers that be, which are nothing compared to God. <sup>9</sup> But now that we truly know him and understand how deeply we're loved by him, why would we, even for a moment, consider turning back to those weak and feeble principles of religion, as though we were still subject to them? {Footnote in HRB: "These were people who were before patterning pagan cultic practices and now came to faith in YHWH and are now known by YHWH and were turning back to the former pagan practices} Galatians 4:8-9 TPT – emphasis is mine.*

In this regard, Paul instructed the people of Thessalonica:

*You know what **instructions** we gave you through the Lord Jesus. <sup>3</sup> For it is God's will that you be sanctified: You must abstain from sexual immorality. <sup>4</sup> Each of you must know how to control his own body in a holy and honorable manner, <sup>5</sup> not with passion and lust like the gentiles who do not know God. 1 Thessalonians 4:2-5 TPT*

<sup>10</sup> Why would we want to go backward into the bondage of religion—scrupulously observing rituals like special days, **(Or "Sabbaths")**, celebrations of the new moon, annual festivals, and sacred years? **[There is no requirement for Gentiles to become like Jews and observe Jewish ordinances in order to draw closer to God. Our approach to God is always on the basis of grace and faith in the**



---

**blood of Jesus Christ, the Lord of the Sabbath.] Galatians 4:10 TPT**  
{The Hebraic Root Bible refers to the false worship of verse 8}

### **I AM YOUR SABBATH REST – YAHSHUA HAMASHIACH!**

Paul was the apostle who preached the good news to the Gentiles. His message announced their freedom in Christ Jesus. Throughout Paul's epistles, he emphasized this and was adamant about it when anybody tried to mislead the congregations to go back into slavery.

**<sup>11</sup>I'm so alarmed about you that I'm beginning to wonder if my labor in ministry among you was a waste of time!**

Galatians 4:11 TPT

### **PAUL'S PERSONAL APPEAL**

<sup>12</sup>Beloved ones, I plead with you, follow my example and *become free from the bondage of religion*. I once became as one of you, [Or "imitated you." Paul is using sarcasm when he says, "I imitated you; now you should imitate me!"] *a gentile, when I lived among you*—now become free like me. When I first came to minister to you, you did me no wrong. *I can't believe you would do wrong to me now!* Galatians 4:12

### **AN OLD TESTAMENT ALLEGORY**

In his epistle to the Galatians, Paul explains to the congregation that Christ came to fulfill the law. Our freedom is now in Him, Christ Jesus, the Anointed One. Why do you want to go back again to live strictly by the law, he asked?

<sup>21</sup>*Tell me, do you want to go back to living strictly by the law? Galatians 4:21 TPT*



The HRB translated this verse as:

***"I say to you, those that desire to let themselves be under (the penalty of) the Torah, do you not hear the Torah?"***

"Have you ever listened to what the law really says? Have you forgotten that Abraham had two sons; one by the slave girl, and the other by the free woman? {See Genesis 16:15; 21:2}. <sup>23</sup> *Ishmael*, the son of the slave girl, was a child of the natural realm. But *Isaac*, the son of the free woman, was born supernaturally by the Spirit—a child of the promise of God! <sup>24</sup> **These two women and their sons express an allegory and become symbols of two covenants.**" Galatians 4:22-24

*The first covenant was born on Mt. Sinai, birthing children into slavery—children born to Hagar {Genesis 21:10-14}. <sup>25</sup> For "Hagar" represents the law given at Mt. Sinai in Arabia. Galatians 4:24-25*

The "Hagar" metaphor corresponds to the earthly Jerusalem of today which is currently in bondage, because the nation has not accepted salvation yet. This bondage will end when Messiah returns and redeems Jerusalem - **Zechariah 14**

<sup>26</sup> *In contrast, there is a **heavenly Jerusalem above us**, {Revelation 21:1-2} which is our true "mother." She is the free woman, birthing children into freedom! Galatians 4: 26*

Paul is showing that the **law is a system of works that brings bondage** and that the promise is a system of grace that brings true freedom.



Paul quotes Isaiah's prophecy:

*"Sing, you barren woman, even the one who never bore a child! Burst into song and shout for joy, even you who were never in labor! For the children of the desolate woman will be more than the children of her that is married," says the LORD. Isaiah 44:1*

Paul discusses this in 2 Corinthians 3. The reason why the Sinai covenant brought bondage was because it had no avenue by which sins could be paid for and removed. Sin was only covered from year to year on Yom Kippur. It has nothing to do with the validity of the Torah, which is binding in both covenants. Hebrews 8:10.

## **MINISTERS OF THE NEW COVENANT**

*Are we beginning to recommend ourselves again? Unlike some people, we do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, do we. <sup>2</sup> You are our letter, written in our hearts and known and read by everyone. <sup>3</sup> You are demonstrating that you are the Messiah's letter, produced by our service, written not with ink but with the Spirit of the living God, not on tablets of stone but on tablets of human hearts. <sup>4</sup> Such is the confidence that we have in God through the Messiah. <sup>5</sup> By ourselves we are not qualified to claim that anything comes from us. Rather, our credentials come from God, <sup>6</sup> **who has also qualified us to be ministers of a new covenant**, which is not written but spiritual, because the written text brings death, but the Spirit gives life.*

*<sup>7</sup> Now if the ministry of death that was inscribed in letters of stone came with such glory that the people of Israel could not gaze on Moses' face (because the glory was*



fading away from it), <sup>8</sup> will not the Spirit's ministry have even more glory? <sup>9</sup> **For if the ministry of condemnation has glory, then the ministry of justification has an overwhelming glory.**

<sup>10</sup> In fact, that which once had glory lost its glory, because the other glory surpassed it. <sup>11</sup> For if that which fades away came through glory, how much more does that which is permanent have glory? <sup>12</sup> Therefore, since we have such a hope, we speak very boldly, <sup>13</sup> not like Moses, who kept covering his face with a veil to keep the people of Israel from gazing at the end of what was fading away. <sup>14</sup> **However, their minds were hardened, for to this day the same veil is still there when they read the old covenant. Only in union with the Messiah is that veil removed.** <sup>15</sup> Yet even to this day, when Moses is read, a veil covers their hearts. <sup>16</sup> But whenever a person turns to the Lord, the veil is removed. <sup>17</sup> **Now the Lord is the Spirit, and where the Lord's Spirit is, there is freedom.** <sup>18</sup> As all of us reflect the glory of the Lord with unveiled faces, we are becoming more like him with ever-increasing glory by the Lord's Spirit. 2 Corinthians 3:1-18  
ISV

These words of Paul are deep, and the true meaning can only be revealed by and through the Holy Spirit. The Greek word for **mystery**, "*mystērion*", is found twenty-eight times in the New Testament. It means a sacred secret, something that God has hidden since ancient times and that can only be revealed by God. Jesus teaches us that these mysteries are meant for us to perceive as part of our kingdom birth right (The Passion Bible, P442, quoting Romans 11:25).



***It is indeed a mystery.***

That we are living now under a new covenant can only be revealed to us once we are in union with Christ, the Messiah. Because He is spirit, we now find our freedom in Him, because we are also spiritual beings after our born-again experience. We have been transformed from a human being to a spiritual being.

*<sup>28</sup> Dear friends, just like Isaac, we're now the true children who inherit the kingdom promises. <sup>29</sup> And just as the son of the natural world at that time harassed the son born of the power of the Holy Spirit, so it is today. <sup>30</sup> And what does the Scripture tell us to do? Galatians 4:28-30*

*"Expel the slave mother with her son! {See Genesis 21:10}.*

This is proof that the two "sons" are not meant to live together. You cannot mingle **law and grace**, for only grace is based upon the promise of new life.

The son of the slave woman will not be a true heir, for the true heir of the promises is the son of the free woman." (See Genesis 21:10-12; John 8:35).

*But what says the Scripture? "Cast out the slave woman and her son, for in no way shall the son of the slave woman inherit with the son of the free woman." Genesis 21:10 HRB*

***God Protects Hagar and Ishmael***

*<sup>8</sup> The child grew and eventually was weaned, so Abraham threw a tremendous banquet on the very day Isaac was weaned. <sup>9</sup> Nevertheless, when Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian—whom Hagar had borne to Abraham—making fun of Isaac, <sup>10</sup> she told Abraham, "Throw out this*



*slave girl, along with her son, because this slave's son will never be a co-heir with my son Isaac!" Genesis 21:8-10*

According to Genesis 21:9, Ishmael made fun of Isaac in such a way that Sarah asked Abraham to throw out Hagar, the slave girl. We can only conclude that it must have been something more severe than simply teasing Isaac.

In the Biblical sense, this means that Ishmael was persecuting Isaac. God even counted Ishmael's persecution of Isaac as the beginning of the four-hundred-year persecution of His people.

*And he said unto Abram, Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land that is not theirs, and shall serve them; and they shall afflict them four hundred years.*

*Genesis 15:13*

*And God spake on this wise, That his seed should sojourn in a strange land; and that they should bring them into bondage, and entreat them evil four hundred years.*

*Acts 7:6*

Ishmael's mocking was a serious thing, because Isaac was God's ordained seed and Ishmael was the counterfeit. The counterfeit always hates the ordained. We, the ordained seed, are being hated by the counterfeit.

Paul says in Galatians 4:29:

*"But as then he that was born according to flesh persecuted him that was born according to Spirit, so also it is now."*

When Isaac grew older and became a boy, it stirred up Ishmael to persecute him. It is relevant in our lives, in the following way:

Many of us still boast in our natural goodness, saying, "Because I do A or Z, I am worthy", or "I am not as proud as some of my brothers and





sisters are. I thank God that I was born humble." The sisters may criticize others, saying, "I would never gossip the way Sister So-and-So does. I was not born that way." Even some elders and so-called ministers of the Word cannot keep from boasting about their natural attributes. Perhaps they say to themselves: "Brother So-and-So is quick to lose his temper. But I thank God that my natural birth is much better than his." Although maybe you do not utter such words, it is nevertheless hidden deep within all of us to a certain extent. When the Christ, who has been "born" in our Christian life, begins to grow up, our natural goodness will mock Him. Then the grace within us should say: **"Cast out the law! Cast out the bondwoman and what she has produced within me by fleshly efforts!"**

#### **Are you willing to sincerely do this?**

Sometimes we do it outwardly, but secretly still hold onto Hagar and Ishmael, onto the law and onto our natural attributes and goodness. Not many Christians today have the boldness to say, as Sarah did: **"Cast out this bondwoman and her son!"** Not many would say: "Cast out the law, the efforts of the flesh, and all the success of my own efforts!" Rather, we cling to our own success and hold onto our natural goodness. **But sooner or later God will force us to abandon the law, our self-effort, and all we have produced out of the flesh.** They will then begin to rise up and say, "From now on there will be no more Hagar and Ishmael! They must go!" Like Abraham, they will send them away with only bread and water (v. 14). Sooner or later we all must do this. We must rise up one morning, give the law a skin of water, and say, "Law, go your way, and take with you the one (Ishmael) you helped me produce. Don't leave him with me, because I don't want him anymore. I loved Ishmael in the past, but now I give him up."



The law and the result of the effort of the flesh must be fully abandoned. We need to fully comprehend the spiritual significance of the casting out of Hagar and Ishmael.

Acknowledgment: Living Stream Ministry. Publisher of Watchman Nee & Witness Lee.

<https://www.ministrysamples.org/excerpts/ISHMAELS-MOCKING-OF-ISAAC.HTML>

**<sup>31</sup> It's now so obvious! We're not the children of the slave woman; we're the supernatural sons of the free woman—sons of grace! Galatians 4:31**

### **NATURE OF GRACE**

The root meaning of grace is “*comeliness, beauty imparted to us because we believe in Him*”. He makes us beautiful by His grace. What a discovery we find in the Book of Song of Songs, written by Solomon:

#### ***The Shulamite***

*I feel as dark and dry as the desert tents  
of the wandering nomads.*

#### ***The Shepherd-King***

*Yet you are so lovely—  
like the fine linen tapestry hanging in the Holy Place.*

*<sup>11</sup> We will enhance your beauty*

*Songs 1:5, 11*

This confirms that the Lord is looking at us as a new creation, when He declares: “*Every part of you is so beautiful, my darling. Perfect is your beauty, without flaw within*” (Songs 4:7 TPT).

*And if by grace, then is it no more of works: otherwise, grace is no more grace. But if it be of works, then is it no more grace: otherwise, work is no more work* (Romans 11:6 KJV).



*For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith--and this is not from yourselves, it is the gift of God (Ephesians 2:8 NIV).*

Adonai has done this to protect you and me against the biggest sin, namely pride. We cannot and will not boast in anything – WE DID NOT EARN ANYTHING!

## **LAW**

You may ask what the purpose of the law is then?

*The law brings knowledge of sin and shows us our transgressions. It reveals our sin to us and shows us who we really are. But it also shows us Adonai's holy and perfect character. It is meant to bring us to the end of ourselves, to that place where we will cry out:*

*"We need a Savior!".*

Let us be clear, there is no man on earth who can obey and achieve the rules of the law. It is impossible. According to Orthodox rabbis there are more than 625 Jewish laws. Isn't it interesting that those who try to obey the law to the letter, are also the ones who water it down to mere dietary laws or festival laws? It is not a set of rules and can't be achieved through rules. James is clear:

*For whoever keeps the whole law and yet stumbles at just one point is guilty of breaking all of it. James 2:10 NIV*

Paul also explains: *No flesh shall be justified in his sight, for by law is the knowledge of sin.* Romans 3:20 JUB.

We can clearly see that the purpose of the law is to expose our weaknesses, which Adonai diagnoses. The law exposes the problem, but the law can never solve it. We need the law to bring us to the point of realization that we are in urgent need of grace. You are either under the



law or under grace. You are either born from a free woman or you are born from a slave woman.

*Many believers do have the same Father, Yahshua HaMashiach, but not all have the same Mother. Are you still under the bondage of the slave women, Hagar? Or are you born from above, from the free women, Sarah, a typology of the New Jerusalem?*

No man can keep the law, the sooner we acknowledge this before Yehôvâh Elohim, the sooner His full grace can be imputed onto us.

Law and grace are mutually exclusive. It can only be one or the other! The only way to come out of the dominion of sin, is to be under grace.

***For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace. Romans 6:14 KJV***

Can you see that when we are still under the law, sin has dominion over us? Scriptures are clear that when we are led by the Spirit, we are sons of Adonai!

*For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. Romans 8:14 KJV*

*But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law. Galatians 5:18 KJV*

Many believers twist Scriptures in order to justify the law. Scriptures do indeed teach us to obey God's commandments. But keeping them with the expectation to earn anything or with the purpose of being in right standing with God as a result of obeying the law, is not scriptural at all. Legalism only brings more division in the body of Christ. Each and every denomination has its own set of rules. Believers then judge the righteousness of others by their own standards and rules. They wrongly focus on obedience to a set of rules, instead of on faith.



Sometimes we, as Gentiles, read scriptures unaware of the true original meaning, because of our lack of Jewish traditions and customs. According to Jewish law no divorced person was allowed to marry again, unless the spouse died. Marrying while the previous spouse was still alive, was adultery, according to Jewish law. Likewise, Paul now explains to us in Romans 7 that we were also once married to the law. But now, after our conversion, we become dead to the law and are now free to marry *our new husband – Yahshua HaMashiach*. *We are now born from a free woman! Previously we were married to the law and were born from the slave women.*

***Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God. Romans 7:4 KJV***

At last we have freedom, for Christ has set us free! We must always cherish this truth and firmly refuse to go back into the bondage of our past, as explained in Galatians 5:1 TPT. Our past was a life lived in the flesh. The old Adam nature lived in our flesh, with passion for sins, which were stirred up by the law. The strength of sin is in the law as Paul says:

*"The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law". 1 Corinthians 15:56 KJV*

The problem is not with the law, but it is with trusting in our own ability to fulfill it. We do not have the ability to do so! Instead of trusting in ourselves, we need to fully trust and rely on Yahshua HaMashiach. When we live a self-righteous life, we automatically shut God's grace out of our lives. Isn't it interesting to notice that it is only the human race and the fallen angels that have a desire to be independent of God. Everything else in creation fully depends on God.



**We need Him in our every day's walk. We create a lot of problems for ourselves, because we refuse to fully depend on Adonai.**

We trick ourselves into self-reliance and self-dependence! Remember there is nothing wrong with the law! The problem is within ourselves, with our desire to be independent! The old rebellious nature of Adam constantly stands in our way of entering into our freedom.

When Christ appeared on earth, He presented Himself to the people, as if saying: *"Look! Here I am! I am the reality of the shadows that pointed to Me! I fulfilled the law on your behalf!*

*For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth. Romans 10:4*

They simply could not grasp it and openly declared:

*We be Abraham's seed, and were never in bondage to any man: how sayest thou, Ye shall be made free? John 8:33 KJV*

Yahshua replied:

***If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed. John 8:36***

Legalism, Saints, will always keep us from freedom. When we come to Christ, that is the end of the law and that is the only way we can achieve our right standing before the Father. Legalism appears to be something "good", but Paul regarded legalism as even a much more serious problem than adultery and drunkenness.

*"I am shocked over how quickly you have strayed away from the One who called you in the grace of Christ. I'm astounded that you now embrace a distorted gospel! <sup>7</sup> That is a fake "gospel" that is simply not true. There is only one*



*gospel—the good news of Christ! Yet you have allowed those who mingle law with grace to confuse you”. Galatians 1:6-7 TPT*

Paul continues:

*“What has happened to you foolish Galatians? Who has put you under an evil spell? Did God not open your eyes to see the meaning of Jesus’ crucifixion? Was he not revealed to you as the crucified one?*

*<sup>2</sup> So answer me this: Did the Holy Spirit come to you as a reward for keeping Jewish laws? No, you received him as a gift because you believed in the Messiah. <sup>3</sup> **Your new life began when the Holy Spirit gave you a new birth. Why then would you so foolishly turn from living in the Spirit by trying to finish by your own works?***

*<sup>4</sup> Have you endured so many trials and persecutions for nothing?*

*<sup>5</sup> Let me ask you again: What does the lavish supply of the Holy Spirit in your life and the miracles of God’s tremendous power have to do with you keeping religious laws? The Holy Spirit is poured out upon us through the revelation and power of faith!*

*<sup>6</sup> Abraham, our father of faith, believed God, and the substance of his faith released God’s righteousness to him*

*<sup>7</sup> So the true children of Abraham have the same faith as their father! <sup>8</sup> And the scripture prophesied that on the basis of faith God would declare gentiles to be righteous. God announced the good news ahead of time to Abraham: “Through your example of faith, all the nations will be blessed!” Galatians 3:1-8 TPT*



Paul remarked to the Galatians that, although the Holy Spirit started their journey off on the basis of righteousness, they were still trying to justify themselves by returning to the law.

To be under the law is to be under the curse.

*But if you rely on works of keeping the law for salvation, you live under the law's curse. For it is clearly written: "Utterly cursed is everyone who fails to practice every detail and requirement that is written in this law!" Galatians 3:10-11 TPT*

*Yet, Christ paid the full price to set us free from the curse of the law. He absorbed the curse completely, as He became a curse in our place. For it is written: "Everyone who is hung upon a tree is cursed." Galatians 3:13 TPT*

The prophet Jeremiah wrote:

*Thus saith the LORD; Cursed be the man that trusteth in man, and maketh flesh his arm, and whose heart departeth from the LORD. Jeremiah 17:5*

Cursed is the man who trusts in man. The flesh strengthens the heart and then man departs from the Lord. Many begin the Christian life in the Spirit, but do not continue in the grace of Adonai. They try to do for themselves what only God can do and thus bring themselves under the curse.

### **A Confession to be made!**

I meditated on these scriptures for many years, and it was only after I had listened to Derek Prince explaining this principle, that I realized I was also under the very same curse. That night my wife and I had communion and repented of our self-centered, self-reliant life.





Derek told that, while he was ministering in Jerusalem with another pastor, who explained this concept to someone, his wife realized that they were under this curse. At that stage they had been trying to sell their house for fourteen months, without success. Realizing that evening that they were trusting in the real estate agent to sell the house and not in God, they confessed. When they arrived at home, an agent stood waiting at the door with a client to buy the property!

How easily we are all destructed by our own self-reliant efforts in life! This is simply another way the devil keeps us in his snare.

What the law could not do, Christ did for us!

*For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: <sup>4</sup> That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit Romans 8:3-4*

There is no love in legalism, as indicated by the loveless, merciless acts of the Pharisees. Let us all labor to show love for one another, for LOVE is the fulfillment of the whole law!

***Owe no man anything, but to love one another: for he that loveth another hath fulfilled the law. Romans 8:8 KJV***

A certain lawyer came to Jesus with a question. Interesting that the scriptures identified the man as a "lawyer", as his intentions were to tempt Yahshua.

*"Master, which is the great commandment in the law? <sup>37</sup> Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. <sup>38</sup> This is the first and great commandment. <sup>39</sup> And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbor as*



*thyself. <sup>40</sup> On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets." Matthew 22:36-40 KJV*

**May I ask, in meekness: "Are you keeping the greatest and the most important commandment?" Let us not owe anyone anything, but only to love one another.**

***When you're placed into the Anointed One and joined to him, circumcision and religious obligations can benefit you nothing. All that matters now is living in the faith that works and expresses itself through love. Galatians 5:6 TPT***

"For we reach the goal of fulfilling all the commandments when we love others deeply with a pure heart, a clean conscience, and sincere faith."  
1 Timothy 1:5.

There is only one proof, Yahshua Himself said, that we are indeed His disciples and that is when we demonstrate our love for one another.

*By this everyone will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." John 13:35 KJV*

Let this be a warning to all ministries. When we, as ministers of the Word, produce disciples with knowledge, but without love, all our efforts are wasted. Knowledge puffs up, but love edifies and builds up!

*Now about food offered to idols: of course we know that all of us possess knowledge [concerning these matters. Yet mere] knowledge causes people to be puffed up (to bear themselves loftily and be proud), but love (affection and goodwill and benevolence) edifies and builds up and encourages one to grow [to his full stature]. 1 Corinthians 8:1 AMPC*



We can easily motivate our children with fear, but it will only be love that keeps them close to us when they are fully mature. Likewise, Adonai knows the only way to motivate his body, is through love.

In conclusion, James explains that faith without works is dead. Likewise, faith and works without love, will also be dead!

*But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, **but a doer of the work**, this man shall be blessed in his deed.*

*James 1:25 KJV*

## **FAITH WITHOUT WORKS IS DEAD**

James is very clear on this. When we hear the Word of God and we do not act upon it, faith in us is dead. Yahshua confirms it in Luke 6:46-48, which is also the foundational text of Part 1:

*Whosoever cometh to me, and heareth my sayings, and doeth them, I will shew you to whom he is like: <sup>48</sup> He is like a man which built an house, and digged deep, and laid the foundation on a rock: and when the flood arose, the stream beat vehemently upon that house, and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock. Luke 6:47-48 KJV*

“What does it profit, my brethren, if someone says he has faith but does not have works? Can faith save him? <sup>15</sup> If a brother or sister is naked and destitute of daily food, <sup>16</sup> and one of you says to them, “Depart in peace, be warmed and filled,” but you do not give them the things which are needed for the body, what does it profit? <sup>17</sup> Thus also faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead. <sup>18</sup> But someone will say, “You have faith, and I have works.” Show me your faith without [a]your works, and I will show you my faith by my works. <sup>19</sup> You believe that there is one God. You do well. Even the demons believe—and tremble! <sup>20</sup> But do you want to know, O foolish man, that faith without works is dead? <sup>21</sup>



Was not Abraham our father justified by works when he offered Isaac His Son on the altar? <sup>22</sup> **Do you see that faith was working together with his works, and by works faith was made perfect?** <sup>23</sup> And the scripture was fulfilled which says, "Abraham believed God, and it was accounted to him for righteousness." And he was called the friend of God. <sup>24</sup> You see then that a man is justified by works, and not by faith only. <sup>25</sup> Likewise, was not Rahab the harlot also justified by works when she received the messengers and sent them out another way? <sup>26</sup> For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also." James 2:14:26 TPT

--- o0o ---



### 3. DOCTRINE OF BAPTISMS

We continue with the doctrinal foundation in Hebrews 6, which states that we need to leave the basic principles of the doctrine of Christ to move on unto perfection. Just before Paul explains the doctrine of Christ, he makes a remark that he has much to say, but we, the believers, have become dull of hearing. We ought to have been rabbis (teachers) ourselves, but still we have need to be taught in the first principles of the oracles of Adonai. Most believers are still spiritually immature and in need of milk, instead of longing for strong meat, which refers to spiritual maturity (Hebrews 5:11-14). With this background, Paul mentions the doctrine of Christ, to remind the believer of these most important aspects to grow in spiritually immaturity, namely:

Repentance from dead works, and  
Faith toward God,  
Baptisms, and  
Laying on of hands, and  
Resurrection of the dead, and  
Eternal judgment.

After **repentance** comes **faith toward God**, both of which we have already discussed in the above-mentioned sections.

Paul gives the believer a protocol to follow. How sad that we often miss most of these steps in our walk with Christ. That is why our temples are collapsing.

After we have confessed our need for a Savior, and started walking in faith, then baptisms follow. *The Greek word is "baptizo" and speaks of being immersed "in" and "unto".* As I studied these principles, I also discovered that it involves "**someone**". Through baptism, our old nature, the old man in the flesh, which the Bible refers to as our Adam nature, born from a corruptible seed, must be executed on the stake.



That is the only way to deal with our rebellious spirit. We deserve to be put to death.

***But because of the love of our heavenly Father, who loved the world so much, that he gave His only begotten Son, Yahshua HaMashiach, so that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life (John 3:16).***

The Father put His Son, Christ Jesus, on the stake on our behalf so that we can have everlasting life. The Scriptures are clear that those who belong to Christ Jesus have nailed the passions and desires of their sinful nature to His cross and crucified them there (Galatians 5:24 NLT).

There is no other way than to follow Adonai's protocol. Firstly, you have to repent, make a commitment to Yahshua and confess that you are in need of a Savior. Then you release faith toward God. Execution on the stake follows, when we put our old fleshly nature on the cross. Paul now addresses the doctrine of baptisms.

*Notice the plural form - "**baptisms**"!*

*Believers often do not understand this doctrinal requirement of Christ. I also rebelled against being baptized, when I still did not understand the full concepts of being immersed. Today, after many years of Bible study, under the leadership of the Holy Ghost, I have boldness to release the truth.*

*The truth is found only in the Bible and not in any denominational doctrine. We cannot believe in Yahshua and simultaneously disbelieve what the Word (Jesus) teaches us.*

*In the beginning was the word and the Word was with God and the word was God (John 1:1). And the word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his glory, the*



*glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth (John 1:14).*

**John saw a vision on the Isle of Patmos:**

*And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. <sup>12</sup> His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. <sup>13</sup> And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: **and his name is called The Word of God.***

*Revelation 19:11-13*

It cannot be denied, that the written Word is Yahshua. He became the living Word, in a human body. He has risen and ascended into the heavens, from where He will return on a white horse, with His eyes flaming like fire. On His head will be many crowns and His written name will be: "**The Word of God**".

The Word of God is the highest authority and it cannot be broken!

***If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken. John 10:35***

## **SOMEONE, IN & INTO**

A clear understanding of the exact meaning of the Greek word "**baptizo**" will give believers a better understanding of what Christ requires of us. Our baptism is a transition from one side to another. Not a partial transition, but a full transition. Each and every part of our being must move from one side (*the dark side, old nature*) over to the other side (*the light, the new creation man*).



The word "**baptizo**" clearly implies an immersion by going down into the water, or by pouring water over the whole body. The requirement is total immersion and not partial immersion. That automatically disqualifies the sprinkling of a few drops of water on the forehead.

Baptizo speaks of three very important elements, namely **SOMEONE**, **IN** and **INTO**.

*Understanding these three fundamental issues will bring revelation knowledge of the true meaning of "different baptisms".*

*"**Someone** will always be involved in your baptism, e.g. a believer, or the Holy Spirit or Yahshua.*

*"**In**" refers to the element in which you are being immersed, e.g. in water, or in the Holy Spirit.*

*"**Into**" describes the element that you are baptized into as the end result of your baptism, e.g. into salvation.*

***John the Baptist** baptized believers **IN** water **INTO** repentance for forgiveness of sin. He made it very clear, however, that he baptized in water, but He who would come after him, would baptize with the Holy Ghost.*

***"I baptize you with water for repentance. But after me comes one who is more powerful than I, whose sandals I am not worthy to carry. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and fire".***

**Matthew 3:11**

*This baptism is a baptism **IN** the Holy Spirit **UNTO** power. The word power refers to resurrection power,*





*which is Dunamis power. According to scripture the same power that God the Father used to raise His Son, Yahshua, out of the dead, is also in me and in you (Romans 11:8).*

***For we were all baptized by one Spirit so as to form one body--whether Jews or Gentiles, slave or free--and we were all given the one Spirit to drink (1 Corinthians 12:13 NIV).***

## **ONE BAPTISM**

Although the Bible teaches us seven different baptisms, Paul wrote about “one body, one spirit and **one baptism**”.

***There is one body, and one Spirit, even as ye are called in one hope of your calling; <sup>5</sup> One Lord, one faith, one baptism, <sup>6</sup> One God and Father of all, who is above all, and through all, and in you all. Ephesians 4:4-6 KJV***

Scriptures can never contradict each other. So, what is Paul then referring to when he mentioned in Ephesians 4:5 that there is “**one baptism**”. This does not mean that there is only one baptism. Instead, it means that there is only **one**, of all the different baptisms, which every believer must obey and take part of. There is therefore only ONE BAPTISM essential for SALVATION! Does that mean all the other baptisms are not essential? They are not essential for salvation, but they are still essential for other things. These seven baptisms are all a package deal and is essential for a believer to walk in total freedom. Let us examine these baptisms in the Bible, indicating the all-and-all package deal God intended for us.



## 1. BAPTISM OF MOSES

*For I do not want you to be unaware, brothers, that our fathers were all under the cloud, and all passed through the sea, <sup>2</sup> and all were **baptized into Moses** in the cloud and in the sea, <sup>3</sup> and all ate the same spiritual food, <sup>4</sup> and all drank the same spiritual drink. For they drank from the spiritual Rock that followed them, and the Rock was Christ (1 Corinthians 10:1-4).*

Here we find a typology of what is to come, a foreshadowing of the New Testament baptism. Israel passed through the Red Sea and found themselves surrounded by walls of water. This was their water baptism. Moses described that, as they walked on dry ground, a cloud directed them. This cloud was the Spirit of the Lord leading them on - their baptism in the Holy Spirit (Exodus 14:21-31). Thus, God delivered (saved) the Children of Israel out of bondage to the Egyptians and lead them out of Egypt. This event is called the "Exodus." Accordingly, this is what Paul is referring to here in Corinthians.

This baptism is symbolic and serves as a type of the One to come, Yahshua HaMashiach. It prophesized that one day we will all be baptized in water and in the Holy Spirit. Notice that Paul says the Israelites were baptized INTO Moses. They were baptized in water into Moses. That speaks of a baptism into the leadership of Moses. Today we are not baptized into Moses' leadership, or into the leadership of any pastor or ministry, for that matter, but into the leadership of Christ Jesus.

## 2. BAPTISM OF SUFFERING

Jesus said to them, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I drink, or to be baptized with the baptism with which I am baptized?" <sup>39</sup> And they said to him, "*We are able.*" And



Jesus said to them, **"The cup that I drink you will drink, and with the baptism with which I am baptized, you will be baptized**

(Mark 10:38-39).

This baptism is not in reference to water, but the suffering and shame associated with the death of Christ, also called the "*baptism of the cross*". Jesus knew the cup He had to drink. It was a cup of shame and torment through scourging and through the suffering on the cross (Matthew 26:36-46). Jesus became, so to speak, overwhelmed by and immersed in pain and dishonor. James and John asked for glory and honor, but would instead receive the same treatment as Jesus, because they followed the Christ. Similarly, our calling is to suffer for the sake of Christ:

*In fact, you were called to live this way, because Christ also suffered in your place, leaving you his example for you to follow. 1 Peter 2:21 TPT*

### **3. BAPTISM OF JOHN**

John appeared, baptizing in the wilderness and proclaiming a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. <sup>5</sup> And all the country of Judea and all Jerusalem were going out to him and were being baptized by him in the river Jordan, confessing their sins. <sup>6</sup> Now John was clothed with camel's hair and wore a leather belt around his waist and ate locusts and wild honey. <sup>7</sup> And he preached, saying, "After me comes he who is mightier than I, the strap of whose sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie. <sup>8</sup> **I have baptized you with water, but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit.**" Mark 1:4-8

John was to prepare the way of the Lord and make His paths straight (Mark 1:3). His baptism was in water (*specifically the Jordan River*) and was for repentance and the forgiveness of sins. The Pharisees and



lawyers rejected John's baptism, and by doing so, rejected the purpose of God (Luke 7:29-30). Today, many still prefer to participate in this baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sin. The Apostle Paul passed through the upper coasts and came to Ephesus. He found certain disciples there and asked them if they had received the Holy Spirit, since they believed? They replied that they had not even heard about the Holy Spirit yet.

*And he said unto them, Into what then were ye baptized? And they said, Into John's baptism. <sup>4</sup> Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people that they should believe on him who should come after him, that is, on Christ, Jesus. <sup>5</sup> When they heard this, they were baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus. Acts 19:3-5 JUB*

The fact that Paul baptized these disciples into the name of the Lord Jesus, confirms that John's baptism cannot be the "one baptism" that Paul rereferred to. In our conclusion, however, we will later see exactly what this mandatory "one baptism" for the New Testament believer is.

#### **4. THE BAPTISM OF JESUS**

*Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan to John, to be baptized by him. <sup>14</sup> John would have prevented him, saying, "I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?" <sup>15</sup> But Jesus answered him, "**Let it be so now, for thus it is fitting for us to fulfill all righteousness.**" Then he consented. <sup>16</sup> And when Jesus was baptized, immediately he went up from the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming to rest on him; <sup>17</sup> and*



*behold, a voice from heaven said, "This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased." Matthew 3:13-17*

This account tells us of Christ's own baptism in the water of the Jordan River, administered by John the Baptist. Christ knew no sin, with no need of repentance or forgiveness (2 Corinthians 5:21). However, He still underwent a baptism in order to "**fulfill all righteousness.**" Unlike the Pharisee's, who rejected the purpose of God, Christ, by way of example, shows us the will of the Father by obedience in baptism. The Father confirms His love for His Son and immediately after, He bestows the Spirit upon Him. This event released Jesus to begin His ministry. Notice the reason for Christ's baptism: **To fulfill all righteousness!**

*We shall have a more detailed discussion on this later, but this act of obedience gave all believers right standing before the Father. Yahshua rightly declared:*

**"I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me". John 14:6**  
*NIV*

## **5. BAPTISM OF FIRE**

"I baptize you with water for repentance, but he who is coming after me is mightier than I, whose sandals I am not worthy to carry. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and **fire**.<sup>12</sup> His winnowing fork is in his hand, and he will clear his threshing floor and gather his wheat into the barn, but the chaff he will burn with unquenchable fire." Matthew 3:11-12

In this context, three different baptisms are in view.

Firstly, the baptism of John.

Secondly, the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

Finally, the baptism of fire.



John explains that Christ will gather His wheat securely into His barn, but one day the chaff will be burned with unquenchable fire (Matthew 3:12). Seemingly, this speaks of the future administration of judgment on those who disobey the gospel. In the context of sanctification, this verse may also be applied to our own lives. All filthiness in us should be burned in order to cleanse us, purify us, make us whole and holy again, so that we will be blameless and spotless before our Bridegroom.

Similarly, 2 Thessalonians 1:5-9 reveals Christ will return in "**flaming fire**", inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and on those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus" (verse 8). Therefore, this baptism is not of water. Instead, it is eternal "**fire**" to all those who do not obey the gospel and reject the Lord.

We also find evidence that a wall of fire surrounds us for our protection.

***And I myself will be a wall of fire around it,' declares the LORD, 'and I will be its glory within.' Zechariah 2:5 KJV***

Our Bridegroom will also bring fire upon those who seek to destroy us. See Psalm 140.

*Let the heads of those who surround me be covered with the trouble their lips have caused. 10 Let burning coals fall upon them; may they be thrown into the fire, into miry pits, never to rise. Ps 140:9-10*

## **6. BAPTISM OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

*"I baptize you with water for repentance, but he who is coming after me is mightier than I, whose sandals I am not worthy to carry. He will baptize you with the **Holy Spirit** and fire. <sup>12</sup> His winnowing fork is in his hand, and he will*



*clear his threshing floor and gather his wheat into the barn,  
but the chaff he will burn with unquenchable fire.” Matthew  
3:11-12*

Again, we see John’s words regarding the baptisms, which Christ Himself will deliver. This type is not in reference to baptism in the name of Jesus, but baptisms, which will be performed directly by the hand of Christ. One of these, as promised in Joel 2, is the baptism of the Holy Spirit upon men. Though the Holy Spirit in many ways will always remain a mystery to us, the Scriptures have revealed several things about Him. These revelations help us understand when and where these baptisms took place.

The outpouring of the Holy Spirit on “*all flesh*” was prophesied by Joel in Chapter 2. This began on Pentecost, when the apostles gathered together in Jerusalem, while waiting for Christ’s promise of the Holy Spirit (Acts 1:5, 8). With a mighty rushing sound, the apostles became filled (baptized) with the Holy Spirit. They began to speak in many tongues (known languages, see verses 8-11). This fulfilled John’s prophecy that Christ would baptize with the Holy Spirit. Additionally, it partially fulfilled the pouring out of the Spirit on “*all flesh*” in verse 17. In Chapter 10 we see the fulfillment of the rest of the prophecy.

We will come back to the baptism with the Holy Spirit later on, when we will have a more complete discussion on it.

## **7. BAPTISM IN THE NAME OF JESUS**

Let all the house of Israel therefore know for certain that God has made him both Lord and Christ, this Jesus whom you crucified.”<sup>37</sup> Now when they heard this they were cut to the heart, and said to Peter and the rest of the apostles, “Brothers, what shall we do?”<sup>38</sup> And Peter



said to them, "Repent and be baptized every one of you **in the name of Jesus Christ** for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. Acts 2:36-38

The Jews realized they had killed the Son of God. Cut to their hearts, they asked Peter what they could possibly do. Peter instructed that each of them should repent and be baptized, not in the name of John, but in the name of Jesus, who is now both Lord and Christ! This baptism was not merely ceremonial, but for "**the forgiveness of your sins**". The Scriptures are very clear that baptism in the name of Jesus Christ is for the forgiveness of our sins, and that without this baptism there is no forgiveness.

For the believer this is crucial. We all want to participate in the victory of the resurrected life of Christ, but few are willing to share in his suffering. We need to grasp this Biblical truth that we too need to die first, before we can be resurrected. If you have never gone down into the water, the question remains: "When were you then executed and sentenced to death?"

Our burial with Christ occurs during baptism, when the old self dies (Romans 6:1-6). Baptism is our execution on the stake. Our sins are nailed to the cross (Col. 2:11-15) and Christ washes our sins away by His blood (Acts 22:16).

Baptism in the name of Jesus Christ places us into the body of Christ.

***"For as many of you were baptized into Christ have put on Christ" and also makes us "sons of God, through faith" (Galatians 3:26, 27).***

Acts 2:42-47 declares that those who were baptized were those whom the Lord added to the number of believers who were saved.





Baptism in the name of Jesus Christ also happened in water. In Acts 10, Peter asks: "Who can refuse the water?" Baptism in the name of Jesus Christ occurred immediately after repentance. Also, in Acts 8:26-40, we read the story of Philip and the eunuch. After preaching Jesus to him, the eunuch asks, "See, here is water. What hinders me from being baptized?" (verse 36). They both went down into the water, and Philip baptized him.

Baptism in the name of Jesus Christ saves us. After commanding all to repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus, for the forgiveness of their sins, Peter tells them to "*save themselves!*" Consequently, baptism occurred for those who received His words (Acts 2:40-41). Peter writes in 1 Peter 3:21 that "baptism now saves you." In Mark 16:16 Christ says:

***"He who believes and is baptized shall be saved, but he who does not believe shall be condemned."***

In the Book of Acts we clearly see that the Baptism of John (unto repentance), after Yahshua's ascension into the heaven, is no longer valid and essential for salvation. Just after the outpouring of the Holy Ghost unto 120 men in the Upper Room in Jerusalem (just as Yahshua ordained it), Peter explained to 3 000 men what had just happened. When they heard it, they were cut to the heart and asked Peter what shall we do? (Acts 2:37 TLV).

***Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. Acts 2:38 KJV***



Carefully read what Peter said. He did not mention the Baptism of John, but the baptism IN THE NAME OF JESUS CHRIST for the remission of sins. The Baptism of John is baptism unto repentance, but now we need baptism unto the remission of sins in the Name of Jesus.

We also find confirmation in Chapter 18 of the Book of Acts. A Jew, named Apollos, was accurately teaching the things regarding Jesus, yet he knew only of the baptism of John. Consequently, Paul needed to correct those whom Apollos had taught in Ephesus. In this instance, Priscilla and Aquila explained the way of God to Apollos more accurately (Acts 18:24-26). ***Those under the baptism of John still needed a baptism in the name of Jesus*** (Acts 19:1-7). Therefore, this proves that John's baptism is not the "**one baptism**" to which Paul refers, but the baptism in the name of Jesus.

## **IN THE NAME OF JESUS**

The "**one baptism**" all believers must obey and teach, is the baptism in the name of Jesus Christ. This baptism occurs in water, resulting in our sins being forgiven. As a result of forgiven sins, salvation comes by the blood of Christ, as we participate in his death, burial, and resurrection.

## **God's Original Plan**

You may wonder why the New Testament requires of believers to be baptized. We have to realize that it was not possible for anybody in the Old Testament to be born again. To fully understand this, let us first explore what went wrong with mankind.



When God created Adam and Eve, He dwelt with them in the Garden of Eden. His original plan was for man to share in His authority and to rule on earth, not to serve Him as a servant (Gen 1:26-28).

**THE FIRST THING GOD GAVE MAN WAS HIS IMAGE AND LIKENESS.**

*God said, Let Us [Father, Son and Holy Spirit] make mankind in Our image, after Our likeness, and let them have complete authority over the fish of the sea, the birds of the air, the [tame] beasts, and over all of the earth, and over everything that creeps upon the earth. Genesis 1:26 (See also Psalm 104:30; Heb. 1:2; 11:3)*

**THE SECOND THING GOD DID WAS TO PLACE MAN IN HIS "PRESENCE", WHICH IS THE HEBREW MEANING OF THE WORD "EDEN".**

God's greatest desire was that man would be like Him, act like Him and dwell with Him.

**Image** = Resemblance (Strong's H6754) or exact **likeness** (Webster's "image")

Therefore, to be made in God's image means that man resembles God and is an exact likeness of Him.

**Eden** = A place of **God's presence** (Isaiah 51:3; Ezekiel 28:13)

God gave man His nature and then put Him in His presence. God wants a relationship with us.

**CREATED FOR A PURPOSE**

God created man for a purpose, namely to have dominion over all the earth. He created man with an image different from any other creature in His creation. He created man with His own spiritual and moral nature.



*What is man that You are mindful of him, and the son of [earthborn] man that You care for him? <sup>5</sup> Yet You have made him but a little lower than God [or heavenly beings], and You have **crowned him with glory** and honor. <sup>6</sup> You made him have **dominion over the works of Your hands; You have put all things under his feet.** Psalm 8:4-6 [I Corinthians 15:27; Ephesians 1:22, 23; Hebrews 2:6-8.]*

**GOD GAVE MAN INSTRUCTIONS AS TO HOW HE SHOULD GOVERN HIS LIFE IN THE GARDEN OF EDEN. THESE INSTRUCTIONS INCLUDED RULES ABOUT WHAT WAS ALLOWED TO BE EATEN AND WHAT NOT.**

*And the Lord God commanded the man, saying, You may freely eat of every tree of the garden; <sup>17</sup> But of the **tree of the knowledge of good and evil and blessing and calamity you shall not eat**, for in the day that you eat of it you shall **surely die.** Genesis 2:16-17*

Death was the proscribed consequence for disobeying this principle, as recorded in Genesis 3.

*In the sweat of your face shall you eat bread until you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken; for dust you are and to dust, you shall return. Genesis 3:19*

**DEATH IS THE ABSENCE OF THE PRESENCE OF GOD IN MAN'S LIFE.**

The serious consequence of man's disregard for God's principles in the garden, was his loss of the presence of the Holy Spirit and his subsequent separation from God. This spiritual death is at the root of all the ills that plague us as individuals and as a society. Without Him, we have no hope of finding true happiness or of fulfilling the purpose for



which we were born. Man cannot and will not live up to the potential and purpose God built into him, until the love and intimacy which God and man enjoyed in the garden, are restored!

## **CREATOR GOD IS MAN'S SOURCE**

When God made man, He spoke to Himself and man was created out of Him. Thus, man was created both to be of the same essence as God, who is spirit (John 4:24) and to live in the same environment as God, which is the realm of the spirit or the environment of God.

*So God created man in **His own image**, in the **image and likeness of God He created him**; male and female He created them. Genesis 1:27 [Colossians 3:9, 10; James 3:8, 9]*

In the wrong environment man cannot function effectively. The following example helps us to understand this fact. It doesn't matter how expensive a product is, when trying to operate it in the wrong environment, it will simply not function effectively, e.g. a very expensive TV screen simply can't function under water. EDEN, the **place of God's presence**, is man's ideal environment. Unbroken fellowship between God and man was the environment that God planned for man. Our ideal environment is nothing more and nothing less than the presence of God Himself. Outside of this perfect environment, man cannot live a meaningful life.

## **OUTSIDE OF GOD'S PRESENCE MAN CREATED A STATE OF MALFUNCTION FOR HIMSELF**

The fall of man, as man's own choice to commit sin is often called, is really a fall from God's presence, with the accompanying loss of the Holy Spirit.



*Therefore the Lord God sent him forth from the Garden of Eden to till the ground from which he was taken. <sup>24</sup> **So [God] drove out the man;** and He placed at the east of the Garden of Eden the **cherubim and a flaming sword which turned every way**, to keep and guard the way to the tree of life. Genesis 3:23-24 [Rev. 2:7; 22:2, 14, 19.]*

Eden was the place of God's presence. Man's banishment from Eden resulted in banishment from God's presence. Since the fall man has to work hard to return to God's presence. Let us see why this is the case.

### **CONTAMINATED**

God is holy, which means that God is completely pure in motive and perfect in goodness, righteousness, and justice. Because man committed sin, he was contaminated and lost the privilege to be in the Holy Presence of God.

*Exalt the LORD our God, and worship at his holy hill; for the LORD our God is holy. Psalm 99:9*

*Sanctify the LORD of hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread. Isaiah 8:13*

*For thy Maker is thine husband; the LORD of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called. Isaiah 54:5*

*But the LORD of hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness. Isaiah 5:16*

### **So is His Presence also Holy**

*And he said, Draw not nigh hither: put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou **standest is holy ground** (Exodus 3:5).*



*And it came to pass, when Joshua was by Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked, and, behold, there stood a man over against him with his sword drawn in his hand: and Joshua went unto him, and said unto him, Art thou for us, or for our adversaries? <sup>14</sup> And he said, Nay; but as captain of the host of the LORD am I now come. And Joshua fell on his face to the earth, and did worship, and said unto him, What saith my lord unto his servant? <sup>15</sup> And the captain of the LORD'S host said unto Joshua, Loose thy shoe from off thy foot; for the place **whereon thou standest is holy**. And Joshua did so (Joshua 5:13-15).*

When man lost the Holy Spirit, he lost the holiness of God, which was his birth right, because he was created in God's image. God expelled man from Eden (His presence) and placed cherubim at the entrance of the garden to protect His presence from sinful man.

## **CHERUBIM**

Cherubim are winged angels that are the guardians of the Lord's presence.

*Give ear, O Shepherd of Israel, thou that leadest Joseph like a flock; thou that dwellest between the cherubims shine forth. **Psalms 80:1***

*The LORD reigneth; let the people tremble: he sitteth between the cherubims; let the earth be moved. **Psalms 99:1***

*O LORD of hosts, God of Israel, that dwellest between the cherubims, thou art the God, even thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: thou hast made heaven and earth. **Isaiah 37:16***



The cherubim were particularly evident in the design of the Ark of the Covenant. Cherubims, with outspread wings, guarded the Mercy Seat, where God's presence dwelt on top of the Ark. When the priests entered the Most Holy Place, they had to get past the cherubim to get to God. If any person, contaminated by sin, approached God's presence, he would never get past the cherubims. Sinful people could not enter God's presence, lest they be consumed by HIM.

## **SERAPHIM**

Seraphim not only protected the holiness of God, but they also met Isaiah's need, when he recognized his sinfulness in the presence of a holy God. Thus, their role was both to protect God's presence and to preserve man, when he repented after recognizing his sinfulness.

*In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. <sup>2</sup> Above it stood the **seraphim**: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. <sup>3</sup> And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. <sup>4</sup> And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. <sup>5</sup> Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a **man of unclean lips**, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the LORD of hosts. <sup>6</sup> **Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: <sup>7</sup> And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.** Isaiah 6:1-7*





These seraphim and cherubim didn't protect man from God. They protected God's presence from man. Their task was to prevent man from entering God's presence. God's presence was still man's intended environment and therefore the place where he would function properly, despite his sin and his loss of holiness. Man was still the image of God. What has then changed? Man lost his ability to function and act like God! When man lost the Holy Spirit, he no longer had the capacity to function from the spiritual and moral character of God. Man was still spirit, just like God is Spirit, but he could no longer function in truth and righteousness, like God. This is why David, after committing sin with Bathsheba, desired God using these words:

*Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me: <sup>11</sup> Cast me not away from thy presence; and take not thy holy spirit from me. Psalm 51:10-11*

## **JESUS CAME TO OUR RESCUE**

While we were unable to return to His presence, because we were contaminated by SIN, Jesus died for us.

***While we were yet in weakness [powerless to help ourselves], at the fitting time Christ died for (in behalf of) the ungodly.*** <sup>7</sup> Now it is an extraordinary thing for one to give his life even for an upright man, though perhaps for a noble and lovable and generous benefactor someone might even dare to die. <sup>8</sup> But God shows and clearly proves His [own] love for us by the fact that ***while we were still sinners, Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One) died for us.*** <sup>9</sup> Therefore, since we are ***now justified (acquitted, made righteous, and brought into right relationship with God) by Christ's blood,*** how much more [certain is it that] we shall be saved by Him from the



*indignation and wrath of God. <sup>10</sup> For if **while we were enemies** we were **reconciled to God** through **the death of His Son**, it is much more [certain], now that we are reconciled, that **we shall be saved (daily delivered from sin's dominion) through His [resurrection] life.***

*Romans 5:6-10*

God rescued us, because He wanted His family back. He knows that we are malfunctioning, and He restored us to our original environment. He deals with all our sin, iniquity and rebellion, before He allows us near His Holy Place. Even if we do reach that Holy Place, we will find cherubim and seraphim hovering around God to prevent us from approaching Him before our sin is atoned for. Restoring you to your garden home has been God's plan all along. This proves how valuable we are to God, despite our sin.

## **RECONNECTED**

The only way we can become reconnected to God, is to accept His gift of salvation through Jesus Christ. He alone can cleanse us from all sin. The very moment Adam disobeyed God in the Garden of Eden, sin entered into the whole world through one person.

*Therefore, even as through one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin, and so death passed on all men inasmuch as all sinned Romans 5:12 MKJV)*

David wrote: "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity, and in sin my mother conceived me" (Psalm 51:5).

Because of the fall, the seed of the women became corruptible and was contaminated. The human race was born in iniquity and in sin. It was the Father's long-range restoration plan to restore man back to his original state as before the fall. Yahshua made it very clear to Nikodemus:



*"Unless you are born of water and the Spirit, you will never enter God's kingdom. <sup>6</sup> For the natural realm only gives birth to things that are natural, but the spiritual realm gives birth to supernatural life!" John 3:5-6 TPT*

We were born from a corruptible seed, the flesh. But Yahshua gave us a second chance. He came to earth so that we can have a born-again experience, this time from an incorruptible seed. That means to be born from above, from the spirit.

*"You shouldn't be amazed by my statement, 'You all must be born from above!' <sup>8</sup> For the Spirit-Wind blows as it chooses. You can hear its sound, but you don't know where it came from or where it's going. So it is the same with those who are Spirit-born!" John 3:7-8 TPT*

This born-again experience is a supernatural experience, orchestrated by the Holy Spirit. It comes from an incorruptible seed, which is the Word of God. The Holy Spirit is the sound, the voice, which brings the conviction that we are sinners in need of a Savior.

*Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever. 1 Peter 1:23 KJV*

Before coming into the holiness of Yehôvâh Elohim, we first need a transformation – a born-again experience, from incorruptible seed, to cleanse us. At that very moment something supernatural happens. Our sin nature changes to a new creation man. Only then do we have boldness to approach the throne. Glory to God! The only way we can stay connected is to live our lives in His presence on a daily basis. With this background let us move on to a complete and more detailed discussion on three of the baptisms the Bible teaches the believer about.



Some information will be repeated in order for the truth to be set firmly in the heart of the believer.

## **THE PACKAGE DEAL**

Bible scholars use different names for these “*baptisms*” in the New Testament. They also have different opinions on baptisms. It is the purpose of this book, though, to seek the Biblical truth to help believers better understand baptisms. The truth sets us free! Therefore, we will stick to what the Bible teaches and not to any individual person’s opinion.

*The word baptism is the Greek word “**baptizō**”, which means to wash, to dip, to be fully immersed by someone into something! There must be “someone” to perform the baptism and there has to be an end result - “something” into which the person is baptized. Thus, you are baptized **by someone into something.***

*In ancient times this word, “baptizō”, was also used when someone took a garment or a cloth and put it into a vessel with dye to saturate it with the new color. When the cloth was extracted from the dye, it was a brand new, different color. The original word literally means “to dip and to dye”. This is what happens when we come unto Christ. We are dipped into the blood of Jesus. It is the Blood that saturates us, cleanses us and changes us to never be the same again. We are dipped and dyed and then placed into Christ.*

Baptisms is a doctrinal foundation for the believer. When Paul refers to only “one Lord, one faith and **one baptism**” (Ephesians 4:5), he speaks of the one baptism that is specifically essential for salvation. All the other



baptisms we find in the Bible, as explained in the above-mentioned passages, are essential for other things to ensure total freedom in the believer's life. In my own meditation on these Scriptures, the Holy Spirit lead me to the following illustration of the package deal of our baptisms.

**Example:**

This "**package deal**" can be explained using a very expensive and exclusive automobile on earth, namely the Bugatti la voiture noire of almost 19 million US Dollar, with a top speed of 490 km/h. It has 12 radiators to cool down the engine, which can generate an incredible 1500 hp. The tires were specially designed to handle the top speed of 490 km/h. It's unique body design and interior qualities distinguish it from any other automobile. All aspects mentioned are part of the complete Bugatti package. Without this engine or these specific tires and body design the automobile will be incomplete and cannot be known as the Bugatti la voiture noire!

*What the Lord revealed to me is that most Christians do come unto salvation, which is the baptism by the Holy Spirit in the body of Christ unto salvation.*

*Salvation also comes with a **price tag** - the most expensive price ever paid for this "**brand new vehicle**", which is the new creation man (2 Corinthians 5:17).*

The believer now looks like a Bugatti and is totally distinguished from any other car on the road (from all unbelievers). But when you open the bonnet, there is no engine inside. Fitting any other engine into the car will change the characteristics of the Bugatti and it will not be able to reach 490 km/h. The engine refers to the **Holy Spirit**



**baptism** unto power. That is **Dunamis power**, which is resurrection power!

Just as the Bugatti has specially designed tires, to keep it on the road, likewise must believers have special designed tires, to keep up and to be able to apply Dunamis resurrection power. Any other tire fitted on the Bugatti will burst at the speed of 490 km/h, with catastrophic consequences.

What a pity that most believers consider water baptism (*immersion*) not necessary, because they think: "I am already saved"! Although it is true that you are saved and "look like a Bugatti", a very important necessity is missing, namely the **tires**. Before we bury our bodies in the water, we do not have appropriate tires fitted to keep us on the road. If the specially designed tires are replaced by any other tire (*sprinkling of water, for instance*), it will not be able to stand the heat!

The believer is a new creation man in Christ Jesus and does not resemble any other human race or creature on earth. As the characteristics and aerodynamic design of the Bugatti distinguish it from all other cars, likewise the Christian believer is distinguished from the unbeliever. We are designed to operate in supernatural power and speed to be the light of this world. We need a specially designed engine, which is the baptism by Jesus in the Holy Spirit to receive His Dunamis resurrection power. Only then can the believer be distinguished from all other unbelievers and outrun them. If the believer does not bury his old body by water immersion, the tires will come off eventually, resulting in a devastating "crash".



With this background it is possible to put together the package deal God ordained for the human race – a full package deal, fully equipped and ready for any assignment on planet earth. The seven different baptisms are outlaid as the package deal in the following table. It is important to know that you must be baptized **BY** someone. There must be a substance **IN** which you are baptized, and you must be baptized **INTO** something, which is the end result of the baptism.



<b>Baptism</b>	<b>BY</b>	<b>IN</b>	<b>INTO</b>	<b>PACKAGE DEAL</b>
<b>MOSES</b>	Adonai	Water	<b>Leadership</b>	Typology – Dream to become a born-again believer
<b>John’s</b>	John the Baptist	Water	<b>Repentance</b>	Receiving Keys
<b>Born Again</b>	Holy Spirit	The Body of Christ	<b>Salvation</b>	Body
<b>Water</b>	Believer	Water	<b>Fulfill Righteousness</b>	Tires
<b>Jesus</b>	Jesus	Holy Spirit	<b>Power</b> (Dunamis)	Engine
<b>Fire</b>	Jesus	Fire	<b>Purification</b>	Fuel
<b>Suffering</b>	Holy Spirit	Suffering	<b>Inherit Kingdom</b>	Service / Maintenance



Remember that John's baptism of repentance is not sufficient or necessary anymore. Baptism into Jesus Christ is essential.

*And Paul said, John truly baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying to the people that they should believe into Him coming after him, that is, into Jesus Christ. Acts 19:4 MKJV*

According to my understanding there is nothing wrong with being baptized in water unto repentance, but it is not essential for salvation. There is only one baptism that is essential for salvation and that is when the Holy Spirit baptizes us in the body of Christ unto salvation.

Let us discuss these three essential baptisms for the New Testament believer.

## **Born-Again Baptism**

Many Bible scholars refer to this baptism as the baptism of the Holy Spirit. When Paul says that there is one Lord, one Faith and one Baptism, he refers to the baptism of the Holy Spirit. Many members of the body of Christ do not regard this as a baptism, but the Bible refers to this as our baptism into **salvation**, which is performed by the **Holy Spirit**. This is not water baptism, nor is it an act of man. We are saved by grace through faith. Adonai orchestrates this baptism to be executed by the Holy Spirit Himself, so that no one will ever boast in his salvation. Salvation is never through our own efforts or works, nor will any person receive any glory for another person's conversion. **Nothing we do could ever earn us this salvation.**

*<sup>7</sup> Throughout the coming ages we will be the visible display of the infinite riches of his grace and kindness, which was showered upon us in Jesus Christ. <sup>8</sup> **For by grace you have been saved by faith. Nothing you did could ever***



---

***earn this salvation, for it was the love gift from God that brought us to Christ! <sup>9</sup> So no one will ever be able to boast, for salvation is never a reward for good works or human striving. Ephesians 2:7-9 TPT***

Our first mandatory baptism is performed **by** the Holy Spirit, **in** the Body of Christ **unto** Salvation.

## **OUR NEW BIRTH**

Few people, I believe, truly understand that new birth could only take place, after Jesus' first appearance. Jesus explains to Nicodemus that we cannot **see** the kingdom of God, except we be born again (John 3:3). Interpreting "see" as being able to "visualize/imagine", I always use the example of erecting a house. I first need to visualize the house in my mind, before that house can manifest in the physical realm. Likewise, before the kingdom of God can manifest in the physical realm, it must first be visible in our mind. Jesus continues that, except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot **enter** into the kingdom of God (John 3:5).

*Scriptures are clear that we cannot ENTER, unless we come out of the water, which implies baptism INTO Christ. This is the only way to die with Christ, be buried with Him and be resurrected with Christ.*

At Pentecost, 50 days after Jesus' resurrection, the Holy Spirit were poured out onto 120 men in the upper room. After that, as Paul explains, the baptism of John was no longer valid.

Now that the Holy Spirit has been poured out onto all flesh, He brings us to the place where we truly believe that Yehôvâh Elohim {*The plural form of Eloah, referring to the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit*} do exist and that the Messiah is the only One who can bring us back into right standing before the Father {*believing unto righteousness*}. We now openly confess it with our mouths and make it unto salvation. This



happens supernaturally. It is something our human mind cannot comprehend. Only the Holy Spirit can baptize you into the body of Christ.

*For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. Romans 10:10 KJV*

Paul explains to the Corinthians: "**For we were all baptized by one Spirit so as to form one body**--whether Jews or Gentiles, slave or free--and we were all given the one Spirit to drink" (1 Corinthians 12:13 NIV). At the exact moment we accept Adonai as our Lord and Savior, in a twinkling of an eye, we are all baptized by one Spirit into one body!

*For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ. Galatians 3:27 KJV*

This is an act of the Holy Spirit, who supernaturally, by Himself, without our participation, take us and put us into the body of Christ. This is called baptism by the Spirit into the body of Christ. This is what Paul meant when he wrote about one body, one Spirit and one baptism:

***There is one body, and one Spirit, even as ye are called in one hope of your calling; <sup>5</sup> One Lord, one faith, one baptism, <sup>6</sup> One God and Father of all, who is above all, and through all, and in you all. Ephesians 4:4-6 KJV***

This baptism accompanies salvation, but there is nothing you can do to receive this baptism, except to repent and call on Jesus as your Lord and Savior. The Holy Spirit takes over from there. From that moment on you are in Christ. This is grace at work in its fullness!

**Congratulations** on your new life!



*You are a **new creation man**: "Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things become new." 2 Corinthians 5:17*

**Perfectly made**: "That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works" (2 Timothy 3:17) and having now the mind of Christ; "For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ" (1 Corinthians 2:16).

You now have "**The measure of Faith**", which is the same faith Jesus had on earth! ("...according as God hath dealt to every man **THE** measure of faith" Romans 12:3). Your newborn spirit is as perfect as Christ, vacuum packed and **sealed** with the Holy Spirit and it will never change again.

"In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were **sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise.**" (Ephesians 1:13)

"Lay down the old man which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; put on the new self, created after the likeness of God in true righteousness and holiness." (Ephesians 4:22, 24)

*"I am writing these things to all of you, my little children, **because your sins have been forgiven in the name of Jesus our Savior.** <sup>13</sup> I am saying these things to you older men because you really know Christ, the one who has been alive from the beginning. And you young men, I am talking to you **because you have won your battle with Satan.** And I am writing to you younger boys and girls because you, too, have **learned to know God our Father**" (1 John 2:12-13 TLB).*

*Stop loving this evil world and all that it offers you, for when you love these things you show that you do not really*



love God; <sup>16</sup> **for all these worldly things, these evil desires—the craze for sex, the ambition to buy everything that appeals to you, and the pride that comes from wealth and importance—these are not from God. They are from this evil world itself.** <sup>17</sup> And this world is fading away, and these evil, forbidden things will go with it, but whoever keeps doing the will of God will live forever. 1 John 2:15-17 TLB.

Dear children, **this world's last hour has come.** You have heard about the antichrist who is coming—the one who is against Christ—and already many such persons have appeared. This makes us all the more certain that the end of the world is near. <sup>19</sup> These "against-Christ" people used to be members of our churches, but they never really belonged with us or else they would have stayed. When they left us it proved that they were not of us at all. <sup>20</sup> But you are not like that, for the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you know the truth. <sup>21</sup> So I am not writing to you as to those who need to know the truth, but **I warn you as those who can discern the difference between true and false** (1 John 2:18-21).

Those who obey their **human nature cannot please God.** <sup>9</sup> But you do not live as your human nature tells you to; instead, **you live as the Spirit** tells you to---if, in fact, God's Spirit lives in you. Whoever does not have the Spirit of Christ does not belong to him. <sup>10</sup> But if Christ lives in you, the Spirit is life for you because you have been put right with God, even though your bodies are going to die



*because of sin. <sup>11</sup> If the Spirit of God, who raised Jesus from death, lives in you, then he who raised Christ from death will also give life to your mortal bodies by the presence of his Spirit in you (Romans 8:8-11 GNB).*

*Those who are children of God do not continue to sin, for God's very nature is in them; and because God is their Father, **they cannot continue to sin** (1 John 3:9 GNB).*

As a new creature, a born-again believer, you can come to Jesus when you are thirsty. Come and drink from the living waters and streams of living water will pour out from your innermost being.

*On the last and most important day of the festival Jesus stood up and said in a loud voice, "Whoever is thirsty should come to me, and <sup>38</sup> whoever believes in me should drink. As the scripture says, 'Streams of life-giving water will pour out from his side" John 7:37-38.*

This is the first baptism, the initial and the essential baptism. It is performed by the Holy Spirit so that you can make it unto salvation.

## **SAUL OF TARSUS**

The conversion of Saul from Tarsus is Scriptural proof of the steps required to become a follower and disciple of Yahshua.

Saul had been persecuting the early church. On his way to Damascus the Lord appeared to him on the road. In his own words, Paul said the following of himself:

*"I am a Jewish man who was born in Tarsus, a city of Turkey. However, I grew up in this city and was properly trained in the Mosaic law and tutored by Rabbi Gamaliel according to our ancestral customs. I've been extremely passionate in my desire to please God, just as all of you are today <sup>4</sup> I've hunted down and killed the followers of*



*this Way. I have seized them and thrown them into prison, both men and women. <sup>5</sup> All of this can be verified by the high priest and the Supreme Council of Elders. For they even wrote letters to our fellow Jews of Damascus, authorizing me to arrest them and bring them back to Jerusalem as prisoners to be punished. <sup>6</sup> "As I was on the road approaching Damascus, about noon, a brilliant heavenly light suddenly appeared, flashing all around me. <sup>7</sup> As I fell to the ground I heard a voice say, 'Saul, Saul . . . why are you persecuting me?'*

**<sup>8</sup> "I answered, 'Who are you, my Lord?'**

*"He said to me, 'I am Jesus, the Victorious. I am the one you are persecuting.'<sup>9</sup> "Those who were with me saw the brilliant light, but they didn't hear the voice of the one who spoke to me.*

**<sup>10</sup> "So I asked, 'Lord, what am I to do?'**

*"And the Lord said to me, 'Get up and go into Damascus, and there you will be told about all that you are destined to do.'<sup>11</sup> "Because of the dazzling glory of the light, I couldn't see—I was left blind. So they had to lead me by the hand the rest of the way into Damascus. Acts 22:3-11  
TPT*

Saul had a life changing encounter with the Lord on the road to Damascus. When he cried out: "Who are you, Lord?", it resembled almost the same protocol as when Peter had an experience with the Lord, when He asked his disciples: "Who do you say I am?"

**Again, there was a confrontation!**



After a **confrontation** of who the Lord really is, there will be a **revelation!** The Lord answered Saul, saying that He was the victorious one, Jesus of Nazareth, whom Saul persecuted. On that revelation, Saul responded with an **acknowledgment**. He embraced the revelation by asking: "What shall I do?"

Notice Paul's repentance and the change of his heart. After his conversion, he did not hesitate to boldly make a public confession of his faith. Yahshua commanded Saul to get up and to go into the city of Damascus. There He would tell him what to do.

The Holy Spirit baptized Saul without the intervention of any physical person. It was an act of grace. When the moment came, even the hard-hearted Saul received a changed heart!

Adonai sent another believer to Saul, called Ananias. Paul explains what happened:

*<sup>12</sup> "A Jewish man living there named Ananias came to see me. He was a godly man who lived according to the law of Moses and was highly esteemed by the Jewish community.*

*<sup>13</sup> He stood beside me and said, 'Saul! My brother, Saul—open your eyes and see again!' At that very instant I opened my eyes and I could see! <sup>14</sup> Then he said to me, 'The God of our ancestors has destined you to know his plan and for you to see the Holy One and to hear his voice.*

*<sup>15</sup> For you will be his witness to every race of people and will share with them everything that you've seen and heard' <sup>16</sup> So now, what are you waiting for? Get up, be baptized, and wash away your sins as you call upon his name.' Acts 22:12-16 TPT*





The Lord Himself commanded Ananias to go to the street called Straight (Acts 9:11) and ask for Saul of Tarsus. Ananias had to inform Saul that he was a chosen vessel unto God, to bear His name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel (Acts 9:15).

*And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, even Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, **and be filled with the Holy Ghost.** <sup>18</sup> And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized. Act 9:17-18 KJV*

Ananias laid hands on Saul to receive back his sight. The message he had for Saul was clear: "What are you waiting for, Saul? Get up, be baptized and wash away your sins as you call upon His name!"

*Why do we tarry? Why do we postpone baptism? New believers should immediately be baptized! There is no scriptural indication to first attend a discipleship course, to bear fruit or to comply to any other requirements before being baptized to wash away your sins.*

Not only did Ananias lay hands on Saul to receive his sight, but also to receive the Holy Ghost. Then he arose and was baptized. Notice the urgency with which Ananias demanded of Saul not to delay, but to be baptized and have his sins washed away.

*<sup>16</sup> So now, what are you waiting for? Get up, be baptized, and wash away your sins as you call upon his name.' Acts 22:16 TPT*

The early church had a clear understanding that conversion and a born-again experience was a package deal. Peter made it very clear that, just after the outpouring of the Holy Ghost, the people were cut to the heart.



<sup>37</sup> *When they heard this they were crushed and realized what they had done to Jesus. Deeply moved, they said to Peter and the other apostles, "**What do we need to do, brothers?**"*

<sup>38</sup> *Peter replied, "**Repent and return to God, and each one of you must be baptized in the name of Jesus, the Anointed One, to have your sins removed. Then you may take hold of the gift of the Holy Spirit.** <sup>39</sup> *For God's promise of the Holy Spirit is for you and your families, for those yet to be born and for everyone whom the Lord our God calls to himself."**

<sup>40</sup> *Peter preached to them and warned them with these words: "Be rescued from the wayward and perverse culture of this world!" Acts 2:37-40 TPT*

It is clear that we have to:

Repent,  
Have faith in Christ,  
Be baptized for the remission and washing away of sins,  
Receive the Holy Ghost.

We have to follow and obey what the scriptures teach us and not what man's opinions, traditions or denominations expect of us to do. Ask the Holy Spirit to reveal the truth to you as you read the following:

*And that **repentance and remission of sins** should be proclaimed in His name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. Luke 24:47 MKJV*

*He who believes and is **baptized will be saved**, but he who does not believe will be condemned. Mark 16:16 MKJV*  
*Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ to remission of sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. Acts 2:38 MKJV*



## **WHY DO YOU DELAY?**

Ananias asked Paul why he tarried. He needed to be baptized! The incident where Philip explained the gospel to an Ethiopian man on the desert route to Gaza proves that we should not tarry! Directly after the Holy Spirit had convinced this eunuch to believe in the Messiah, he was very eager to be baptized!

*<sup>36</sup> And as they continued along on the way, they came to some water, and the eunuch exclaimed, **See, [here is] water! What is to hinder my being baptized?***

*<sup>37</sup> And Philip said, **If you believe with all your heart [if you have a conviction, full of joyful trust, that Jesus is the Messiah and accept Him as the Author of your salvation in the kingdom of God, giving Him your obedience, then] you may. And he replied, I do believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.***

*<sup>38</sup> And he ordered that the chariot be stopped; and both Philip and the eunuch went down into the water, and [Philip] baptized him. Acts 8:36-38 AMPC*

If you believe with your heart and confess with your mouth (Romans 10:10) you immediately qualify for the believer's baptism. This means being baptized by a believer in water into righteousness.

Peter wrote:

*"And baptism, which is a figure [of their deliverance], does now also save you [from inward questionings and fears], not by the removing of outward body filth [bathing], but by [providing you with] the answer of a good and **clear conscience** (inward cleanness and peace) before God [because you are demonstrating what you believe to be yours] through the resurrection of Jesus Christ". 1 Peter 3:21 AMPC*



The same verse in The Passion Bible says:

*"This was a prophetic picture of the immersion that now saves you—not a bathing of the physical body but rather the response of a good conscience before God through the resurrection of Jesus Christ,<sup>22</sup> who is now in heaven at the place of supreme authority next to God. The very powers of heaven, including every angel and authority, now yield in submission to him". 1 Peter 3:21-22*

It can't be clearer than this! When we go down in the water, our old nature is buried, and we receive a clear conscience before God. That is our right standing before Adonai. We arise from the water into a new resurrected life as a new creation man.

**We often do not obey the fundamental doctrine of Christ.  
Today I am a "cry in the wilderness" to  
prepare the way for the Messiah and make His paths straight  
(Mark 1:3).**

--- o0o ---



## The Significance of Our Baptism

### WE NEED A BORN-AGAIN EXPERIENCE

*Jesus answered, I assure you, most solemnly I tell you unless a man is born of water and [even] the Spirit, he cannot [ever] enter the kingdom of God. John 3:5 [Ezek. 36:25-27.]*

### WE DIED WITH JESUS AND WERE RAISED WITH HIM. HE DISARMED THE EVIL PRINCIPALITIES AND POWERS.

*In Him also you were circumcised with a circumcision not made with hands, but in a [spiritual] circumcision [performed by] Christ by **stripping off the body of the flesh** (the whole corrupt, carnal nature with its passions and lusts). <sup>12</sup> [Thus you were circumcised when] **you were buried with Him in [your] baptism**, in which you were also **raised with Him** [to a new life] through [your] faith in the working of God [as displayed] when He raised Him up from the dead. <sup>13</sup> And you who were dead in trespasses and in the uncircumcision of your flesh (your sensuality, **your sinful carnal nature**), [God] **brought to life together with [Christ]**, having [freely] **forgiven us all our transgressions**, <sup>14</sup> Having cancelled and blotted out and wiped away the handwriting of the note (bond) with its legal decrees and demands which was in force and stood against us (hostile to us). This [note with its regulations, decrees, and demands] He set aside and cleared completely out of our way by nailing it to [His] cross. <sup>15</sup> [God] **disarmed the principalities and powers that were ranged against us** and made a bold display and*



*public example of them, in triumphing over them in Him and in it [the cross]. Colossians 2:11-15*

## **WE SHOULD CONSIDER OURSELVES DEAD TO SIN, BUT ALIVE WITH GOD!**

*Are you ignorant of the fact that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus **were baptized into His death?***

*<sup>4</sup> We **were buried therefore with Him by the baptism into death**, so that just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glorious [power] of the Father, so we too might [habitually] live and behave in newness of life. <sup>5</sup> For if we have become one with Him by sharing a death like His, **we shall also be [one with Him in sharing] His resurrection [by a new life lived for God].** <sup>6</sup> **We know that our old (unrenewed) self was nailed to the cross with Him** in order that [our] body [which is the instrument] of sin might be made ineffective and inactive for evil, that we might **no longer be the slaves of sin.** <sup>7</sup> For when a man dies, he is freed (loosed, delivered) from [the power of] sin [among men]. <sup>8</sup> **Now if we have died with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with Him,** <sup>9</sup> Because we know that Christ (the Anointed One), being once raised from the dead, will never die again; death no longer has power over Him. <sup>10</sup> For by the death He died, He died to sin [ending His relation to it] once for all; and the life that He lives, He is living to God [in unbroken fellowship with Him]. <sup>11</sup> Even so consider yourselves also dead to sin and your relation to it broken, but alive to God [living in unbroken fellowship with Him] in Christ Jesus. Romans 6:3-11*



### **BE CLOTHED WITH CHRIST**

For in Christ Jesus you are all **sons of God through faith**.<sup>27</sup> For as many [of you] as were baptized into Christ [into a spiritual union and communion with Christ, the Anointed One, the Messiah] have put on (**clothed yourselves with**) **Christ**.<sup>28</sup> There is [now no distinction] neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is not male and female; for you are all **one in Christ Jesus**. Galatians 3:26-28

### **WE SHOULD HAVE THE MIND OF CHRIST**

*For who has known or understood the mind (the counsels and purposes) of the Lord so as to guide and instruct Him and give Him knowledge? **But we have the mind of Christ (the Messiah) and do hold the thoughts (feelings and purposes) of His heart.** 1 Corinthians 2:16 [Isaiah 40:13.]*

*I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service.<sup>2</sup> And be not conformed to this world: but be ye **transformed by the renewing of your mind**, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God. Romans 12:1-2*

### **THERE IS ONLY ONE LORD, ONE FAITH, ONE BAPTISM**

*[There is] one body and one Spirit--just as there is also one hope [that belongs] to the calling you received<sup>5</sup> [There is] **one Lord, one faith, one baptism**,<sup>6</sup> One God and Father of [us] all, Who is above all [Sovereign over all], pervading all and [living] in [us] all.<sup>7</sup> Yet grace (God's unmerited favor) was given to each of us individually [not*



*indiscriminately, but in different ways] in proportion to the measure of Christ's [rich and bounteous] gift. Ephesians 4:4-7*

### **WE ARE BAPTIZED INTO ONE BODY**

*For by [means of the personal agency of] one [Holy] Spirit we were all, whether Jews or Greeks, slaves or free, baptized [and by baptism united together] into one body, and all made to drink of one [Holy] Spirit. 1 Corinthians 12:13*

### **WE CLEANSE THE BODY WITH PURE WATER**

*Let us all come forward and draw near with true (honest and sincere) hearts in unqualified assurance and absolute conviction engendered by **faith** (by that leaning of the entire human personality on God in absolute trust and confidence in His power, wisdom, and goodness), having our hearts sprinkled and purified from a guilty (evil) conscience and our **bodies cleansed with pure water.** Hebrews 10:22*

*Jesus answered, I assure you, most solemnly I tell you, unless a man is born of water and [even] the Spirit, he cannot [ever] enter the kingdom of God. [Ezek. 36:25-27.]*

*<sup>6</sup> What is born of [from] the flesh is flesh [of the physical is physical]; and what is born of the Spirit is spirit. John 3:5-6*

### **WE BECOME NOW SONS AND DAUGHTERS OF THE KINGDOM**

You are now part of the family and kingdom of God Almighty. You are part of the body of Christ!





*For [the Spirit which] you have now received [is] not a spirit of slavery to put you once more in bondage to fear, but you have received the **Spirit of adoption [the Spirit producing sonship] in [the bliss of] which we cry, Abba (Father)! Father!** Romans 8:15*

*Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is **a new creature: old things are passed away;** behold, all things are become new. 2 Corinthians 5:17*

### **SIGNS FOR THOSE WHO BELIEVE**

*And these attesting signs will accompany those who believe: in My name they will drive out demons; they will speak in new languages: <sup>18</sup> They will pick up serpents; and [even] if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them; they will lay their hands on the sick, and they will get well <sup>19</sup> So then the Lord Jesus, after He had spoken to them, was taken up into heaven and He sat down at the right hand of God. Mark 16:17-19 [Ps. 110:1]*

### **PETER'S TEACHING AFTER HE HAD RECEIVED THE HOLY SPIRIT**

#### **RELEASED FROM SINS**

*Now when they heard this they were stung (cut) to the heart, and they said to Peter and the rest of the apostles (special messengers), Brethren, what shall we do? <sup>38</sup> And Peter answered them, **Repent** (change your views and purpose to accept the will of God in your inner selves instead of rejecting it) and be **baptized**, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of and*



**release from your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. Act 2:37-38**

*Therefore those who accepted and welcomed his message **were baptized**, and there were added that day about 3,000 souls. Act 2:41*

### **BAPTISM IS IMPORTANT TO GOD**

If baptism was not important to God, the Spirit would have transported Philip directly after he had preached to the eunuch, but the Spirit took Philip away only **AFTER** the man had been baptized. Also, keep in mind that even Jesus was baptized, knowing that JESUS had no SIN!

*Then **Philip** opened his mouth, and beginning with this **portion of Scripture he announced to him the glad tidings (Gospel) of Jesus and about Him.** <sup>36</sup> And as they continued along on the way, they came to some water, and the eunuch exclaimed, See, [here is] water! **What is to hinder my being baptized?** <sup>37</sup> And Philip said, If you believe with all your heart [if you have a conviction, full of joyful trust, that Jesus is the Messiah and accept Him as the Author of your salvation in the kingdom of God, giving Him your obedience, then] you may. And he replied, I do believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. <sup>38</sup> And he ordered that the chariot be stopped; **and both Philip and the eunuch went down into the water, and [Philip] baptized him.** <sup>39</sup> And when they came up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord [suddenly] **caught away Philip**; and the eunuch saw him no more, and he went on his way rejoicing. Acts 8:35-39*



**PETER WAS STILL SPEAKING, WHEN THE HOLY SPIRIT ALREADY FELL ON THE PEOPLE, EVEN BEFORE THEY WERE BAPTIZED WITH WATER**

*While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell on all who were listening to the message. <sup>45</sup> And the believers from among the circumcised [the Jews] who came with Peter were surprised and amazed because the free gift of the Holy Spirit had been bestowed and poured out largely even on the Gentiles. <sup>46</sup> For they heard them talking in [unknown] tongues (languages) and extolling and magnifying God. Then Peter asked, <sup>47</sup> **Can anyone forbid or refuse water for baptizing these people, seeing that they have received the Holy Spirit just as we have?** Acts 10:44-47*

**PAUL MINISTERED TO PEOPLE AND STRAIGHT AWAY, AFTER THEY BELIEVED, HE BAPTIZED THEM IN THE SAME HOUR**

*And he took them the same hour of the night and bathed [them because of their bloody] wounds, and he **was baptized immediately and all [the members of] his [household].** Acts 16:33*

**PAUL'S TESTIMONY OF HIS OWN BAPTISM**

*And instantly something like scales fell from [Saul's] eyes, and he recovered his sight. Then he arose and was **baptized.** Act 9:18*

**OTHER EXAMPLES OF PEOPLE WHO WERE BAPTIZED**

*But Crispus, the leader of the synagogue, believed [that Jesus is the Messiah and acknowledged Him with joyful*



*trust as Savior and Lord], together with his entire household; and many of the Corinthians who listened [to Paul also] **believed and were baptized.** Acts 18:8*

*Came to see me, and standing by my side said to me, Brother Saul, look up and receive back your sight. And in that very instant I [recovered my sight and] looking up saw him. <sup>14</sup> And he said, The God of our forefathers has destined and appointed you to come progressively to know His will [to perceive, to recognize more strongly and clearly, and to become better and more intimately acquainted with His will], and to see the Righteous One (Jesus Christ, the Messiah), and to hear a voice from His [own] mouth and a message from His [own] lips; <sup>15</sup> For you will be His witness unto all men of everything that you have seen and heard. <sup>16</sup> And now, why do you delay? **Rise and be baptized, and by calling upon His name, wash away your sins.** Act 22:13-16*

Because of wrong doctrine, many born-again people believe they have already received the Holy Spirit and that the Holy Spirit already lives inside of them. The scripture teaches us differently. John 20:22 says: When he had said this, he **breathed on them and told them, "Receive the Holy Spirit.**

This must have been an act of salvation, because just before Jesus ascended to heaven, He commanded the very same group of people not to leave Jerusalem, but to wait for the Holy Spirit!

*While he was meeting with them, he ordered them, "**Don't leave Jerusalem. Instead, wait for what the Father has promised, about which you heard me speak. For John baptized with water, but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit a few days from now.**" Acts 1:4*



*But you will **receive power** when the **Holy Spirit comes on you**, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth." Acts 1:8*

Notice that the scripture says we will "receive power", when we receive the Holy Spirit. The body of Christ has become powerless, because of the absence of the baptism of the Holy Spirit. We need to tap into the source to not only speak the gospel, but to demonstrate God's kingdom with signs and wonders.

***For the kingdom of God is not in word but in power.***

***1 Corinthians 4:20***

We cannot exercise our authority, nor can we do what Jesus commanded us to do, namely to heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead and cast out devils (Mat 10:8), unless we receive the Holy Ghost and His power!

*How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the **Holy Ghost and with power**: who went about doing good, and **healing** all that were **oppressed of the devil**; for God was with him. Acts 10:38*

*And Stephen, **full of faith and power**, did great **wonders** and **miracles** among the people. Acts 6:8*

Don't resist the power ordained by God! Receive the Holy Spirit and the power and start demonstrating it as Jesus commanded us to do!

*Let every **soul be in subjection to the higher powers**: for there is no power but of God; and the **powers that be are ordained of God**.<sup>2</sup> Therefore he that **resisteth the power**, withstandeth the ordinance of God: and they that withstand shall receive to themselves judgment.<sup>4</sup> And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in **demonstration of the Spirit and***



***of power:*** *That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God. Romans 13:1-4*

## **The Believer's Baptism**

This baptism is performed by believers and is sometimes called the Believer's Baptism or the Christian Baptism. It is our water baptism and it follows salvation. If you were baptized before salvation took place, the baptism is of no value. The water baptism is the burial of the old man. The old man has to die, before you can be baptized. Those who did not go through a water baptism struggle for the rest of their lives to obey Adonai. Yahshua commanded us to be baptized!

Remember that we are laying down the foundation to restore the temple of God. Although some instructions given to us in the Bible are not essential for salvation, they are still requirements for living a holy and obedient life. Believers sometimes ignore these requirements, resulting in foundations giving in and houses collapsing. Yahshua commanded us to be immersed for a reason, namely that all righteousness will be fulfilled. Therefore, my beloved, this baptism is essential for receiving a clear ***conscience***. It gives us right standing before Adonai and enables us to walk in righteousness.

## **JOHN THE BAPTIST**

John the Baptist's ministry was brief, but crucial. He appeared on the scene as being a voice in the wilderness to prepare the way for the Messiah. He was the bridge between two dispensations: the dispensation of the law and the prophets, and the dispensation of grace and the gospel of Jesus Christ. His message was different from any preceding messages: "Repent and be baptized for the complete cancellation of sins.



<sup>2</sup> *It starts with Isaiah the prophet, who wrote:*

*Listen! I am sending my messenger ahead of you and he will prepare your way!*

<sup>3</sup> *He is a thunderous voice of one who shouts in the wilderness: "Prepare your hearts for the coming of the Lord Yahweh, and clear a straight path inside your hearts for him!"*

<sup>4</sup> *John the Baptizer was the messenger who appeared in the wilderness, preaching a **baptism of repentance for the complete cancellation of sins**.*<sup>5</sup> *A steady stream of people came to be dipped in the Jordan River as they publicly confessed their sins. They came from all over southern Israel, including nearly all the inhabitants of Jerusalem. Mark 1:2-5 TPT*

Take note that the Messiah could not come, until the hearts of the people were prepared for repentance. Likewise, shall the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Christ occur only when the hearts of people will be prepared for His return.

## **WATER BAPTISM**

The Bible teaches two water baptisms (remember IN and INTO).

---

---

*Firstly, the Baptism of John the Baptist {in water into repentance}, also referred to as the Baptism of repentance.*

*Secondly, the Baptism "in the name of the Lord Jesus", also referred to as the "Christian Baptism".*

***When they heard this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. Acts 19:5***

---



There is much confusion and a lack of true understanding of the New Testament believer's baptism in the body of Christ. In Ephesus Paul asked certain disciples if they had received the Holy Ghost, since they believed. They replied that they had never heard of the Holy Ghost. Paul asked them unto what then they were baptized, and they responded by saying unto John's baptism. Paul then explained that they had been baptized with the baptism of repentance, but they should still be baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. (Acts 19:1-10).

*Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus. <sup>5</sup> **When they heard this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. Acts 19:4-5***  
KJV

When someone is immersed, he is baptized in the name of Jesus, but it is important to realize that the person is also baptized INTO Christ.

***For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ. Galatians 3:26-27 KJV***

### **This baptism is essential to be a disciple of Christ!**

"Many denominations merely educate and accommodate their church members and never guide them into being disciples of Yahshua.

They mostly make disciples for their own ministries and not necessarily for the Kingdom of Yahshua.

Idle church members and disciples will always misrepresent the truth.

### **Scriptures are clear that we need to be Disciples of Christ!"**

Jesus, as an eight-day old baby, was circumcised. It is considered general knowledge that the water baptism came in the place of





circumcision. Yet, the same denominations believing this fact, are all silent about why this same circumcised baby was also immersed in water? Jesus did not even have any sin to repent for and yet He was baptized. This confirms what Paul tries to tell us, namely that the baptism in water, into repentance, is not any requirement for the New Testament believers.

Satan tries everything in his power to blind the believers to not see the glory of Christ, His image and His likeness!

*For the God of this world has blinded the unbelievers' minds [that they should not discern the truth], preventing them from seeing the illuminating light of the Gospel of the glory of Christ (the Messiah), **Who is the Image and Likeness of God.** 2 Corinthians 4:4*

Let us put on the full armor of light so that the glory of Christ can manifest in and through us!

*Besides this you know what [a critical] hour this is, how it is high time now for you to wake up out of your sleep (rouse to reality). For **salvation (final deliverance) is nearer** to us now than when we first believed (adhered to, trusted in, and relied on Christ, the Messiah). <sup>12</sup> The night is far gone and the day is almost here. **Let us then drop (fling away) the works and deeds of darkness and put on the [full] armor of light.** <sup>13</sup> Let us live and conduct ourselves honorably and becomingly as in the [open light of] day, not in reveling (carousing) and drunkenness, not in immorality and debauchery (sensuality and licentiousness), not in quarreling and jealousy. <sup>14</sup> **But clothe yourself with the Lord Jesus Christ** (the Messiah), and make no provision for*



*[indulging] the flesh [put a stop to thinking about the evil cravings of your physical nature] to [gratify its] desires (lusts). Romans 13:11-14*

Being "baptized", or rather "sprinkled", in a religious system as a baby is not only insufficient, but completely unscriptural and senseless. The Bible makes it very clear that faith in Jesus is a prerequisite for baptism. In Greek, the word baptism is "**Baptizo**", which means: "to immerse; to dunk, to submerge. It does not mean to sprinkle!" Also, a person is not scripturally baptized if it was done prior to true conversion. An infant or young child cannot be converted.

*And as they went on their way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, here is water; **what doth hinder me to be baptized?** <sup>37</sup> And Philip said, If thou **believest with all thine heart**, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. Acts 8:36-37 KJV*

*And Philip said If you believe with all your heart [**if you have a conviction, full of joyful trust, that Jesus is the Messiah and accept Him as the Author of your salvation in the kingdom of God, giving Him your obedience, then**] you may. And he replied I do believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. Acts 8:37 AMPC*

## **BLOOD OF JESUS**

We cannot be qualified to receive the presence of God into our lives, unless the blood of Jesus cleanses us and makes way for the return of God's Spirit to our human temples. The key to the continuing work of Jesus in each of us is the Holy Spirit. When the Spirit is alive in us, He restores the presence of God to our lives and leads us into the holiness



that was our birth right at creation. The Holy Spirit is God. He is the key for us to be returned into God's presence.

## **UNTO RIGHTEOUSNESS**

The Holy Spirit revealed to me a deep truth, regarding Jacob's struggle with the angel.

On the night that Jacob, whose name means "deceiver", struggled with the Angel, the Angel hit him on his thigh and since then Jacob was crippled.

*And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him. Genesis 32:25 KJV*

Jacob, the man in the flesh, overcame and his name was changed to Israel, which refers to the spiritual man. He then called out: "I have seen Adonai face to face, and my soul was saved" (verse 30). In contrast, Esau, which means "**reddish**" and which refers to the nature of Adam, the old man in the flesh, never overcame and his name was changed to Edom. Jacob and Esau became a typology\* of the man in the flesh (*Esau*) and the new spiritual man as an overcomer (*Jacob*), who now walks in righteousness (*Israel*). Very relevant that it was the Edomites who prevented Israel from entering the promised land!

**\* A typology is a Christian theology, involving the interpretation of some figures and events in the Old Testament as foreshadowing events in the New Testament.**



How is Jacob's struggle with the angel relevant to baptism? In Revelation Chapter 19 we find the key:

**And he has on his garment and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS. Revelation 19:16 JUB**

The angel hit Jacob on his thigh, after which he received a new name of righteousness. Jacob, as Israel, then represented the new creation man – the man in the spirit. It is no coincidence that the King of King's name is written on His thigh. He is our King of righteousness.

In his book, "Revelation Unveiled: Understanding the Heart of Jesus in the Imminent Day of the Lord", Russell Stendal wrote the following:

*"All of those who have come to maturity in the life of Christ will participate with Jesus as joint heirs in Christ. His garment is his covering, and the Holy Spirit covers all those who walk in his righteousness. **His thigh has to do with his ability to walk in righteousness.** He is able to cover us and cause us to walk in righteousness with him because he is KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS. He has all authority everywhere. The name written on his garment and on his thigh means that all of his promises will be fulfilled."*

Stendal, Russell M. Revelation Unveiled: Understanding the Heart of Jesus in the Imminent Day of the Lord (pp. 221-222). Aneko Press. Kindle Edition.

When Jesus came to John the Baptist to be baptized by him, John replied that he was not worthy to do so. Yahshua replied however, that John had to baptize Him, so that all righteousness could be fulfilled.

*But John forbid him, saying, I have need to be baptized of thee, and comest thou to me? <sup>15</sup> And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer it to be so now: for thus it becometh us*



*to fulfill all righteousness. Then he suffered him. Matthew  
3:14-15 KJV*

Yahshua was baptized to give us right standing before the Father. This act of His baptism restored the human race to its position before the fall. What a glorious day! What a divine revelation!

---

---

***Our baptism in water confirms that our old nature  
is now buried with Christ to fulfil all  
righteousness.  
We are therefore baptized IN water INTO  
righteousness, which gives us now our right  
standing before Christ Jesus.***

---

---

## **TO FULFIL ALL RIGHTEOUSNESS**

Jesus' baptism was for the fulfillment of all righteousness and at that event all three Godheads (*Triunity*) were present: the Son, Yahshua HaMashiach, the Holy Spirit, who descended like a dove, and the Father who presented Himself in an audible voice.

*And Jesus, after he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water; and, behold, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and "**lighting**" upon him; Matthew 3:16 JUB*

Notice that the "dove and lighting" were upon the Son, Yahshua. The New King James Translation used the word "**alight**". As a verb it means (**of a bird**) descending from the air and settling. As an adjective it means on fire, set on fire, burning.

***"The Spirit of Adonai descended like a dove from the sky and settled on Him and set Him on fire!"***



Glory to GOD! The Son was baptized INTO the Holy Ghost! The Father recorded in an audible voice: "This is my beloved Son!".

*And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. John 3:17 KJV*

The Father sees us now, after our baptism in water into Christ, as having the image we had before the fall.

James wrote:

*<sup>24</sup> You perceive **how God sees you in the mirror of the Word**, but then you go out and forget your divine origin.  
<sup>25</sup> But those who set their gaze deeply into the perfecting **law of liberty** are fascinated by and respond to the truth they hear and are strengthened by it—they experience God's blessing in all that they do! James 1:24-25*

For the believer, seeing the man "**in the mirror**" means seeing ourselves as God saw us from the beginning, even before the fall of Adam, which resulted in sin's devastation to human hearts. The man in the mirror is the new creation man. How we all fall short of seeing the new creation man in the mirror! The devil constantly reminds us of the past, of the old man in the flesh. This in itself is double-mindedness. Our baptism into Christ brings us back to this state of righteousness and gives us our right standing before the Father.

### **There is now nothing to add to this Gospel!**

James mentioned that we are brought into the perfect law of liberty. At last we have freedom, for Christ has set us free! We must always cherish this truth and firmly refuse to go back into the bondage of our past (Galatians 5:1 TPT).

*Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ: <sup>2</sup> By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God (Romans 5:1-2 KJV)*



Because of our baptism in water into Christ we are now justified, and we have peace with Adonai. The word justify in Greek is "**dikaioo**":

dikaioō

dik-ah-yo'-o

to render (that is, show or regard as) just or innocent: - free, justify, be righteous.

This means we are now:

Acquitted  
Declared not guilty  
Reckoned righteous  
Made righteous

This is huge! This is grace and mercy at its highest level!! We need to fully capture this profound truth. This is why Paul insists that there is just one Lord, one Faith and one Baptism. Many believers forfeit their right standing before God, because of a lack of knowledge or because they are not willing to be immersed in water into Christ Jesus!

After baptism into Christ, we are dead to sin. *Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.* (Romans 6:2-4). We are clothed with Christ and we are a new creation man.

*<sup>27</sup> For as many [of you] as were baptized into Christ [into a spiritual union and communion with Christ, the Anointed One, the Messiah] have put on (**clothed yourselves with**) **Christ**.* *<sup>28</sup> There is [now no distinction] neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is not male and female; for you are all **one in Christ Jesus**.* Galatians 3:27-28



When we are clothed with Christ, there is no distinction between male and female, rich or poor, nor between any ethnic races, as we are now one in Christ! We are indeed sons and daughters in a new family, which is the body of Christ.

Baptism is a commitment. We now identify with His death, burial and resurrection. Baptism in water into Christ represents our baptism into His death. We died with him, were raised with him and experience a completely different and new kind of life. The Holy Spirit raised Yahshua from the dead and we too will be raised from the dead by the Holy Spirit. We come to the end of our old Adam nature at baptism. When we rise out of the water, we become like Yahshua. His resurrection reversed the decision of a criminal death.

Before Yahshua ascended into heaven, He commanded his disciples: "Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: <sup>20</sup> Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen" (Matthew 28:19-20)

*He did not command them to gather church members. Church members misrepresent the truth we proclaim. If there is no commitment in your heart to be a disciple of Christ, you do not have the right to be baptized. The church baptizes people and then wait for them to make a commitment. The Bible requires a commitment first and then immediate baptism, after which teaching follows to equip them in the doctrine of Christ.*

"And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. <sup>16</sup> He that **believeth and is baptized** shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned." (Matthew 16:15-16 KJV)





He that believes and is baptized shall be saved.

This is what the Bible teaches us – no delay, no equipping first. Only when you believe and be baptized, shall you be saved. Bearing fruit follows baptism and is not a requirement to be saved. Believing that Christ died, was buried and raised from the dead on the third day is the only requirement.

Saints, I have been studying these scriptures now for many years and can't find proof of salvation without the result of baptism.

The following experiences should, however, precede baptism:

We must have heard the Gospel.

We must have repented.

We must believe the Gospel.

We must have a good conscience toward God.

Let us agree with each other that an infant cannot meet any of these four conditions. That settles in itself the inefficiency of the sprinkling of babies.

I believe that we baptize pagans most of the time. The only change that takes place with baptism is the transition from being dry to being wet. Three thousand believers were baptized immediately after Pentecost (Acts 2), because they believed and repented. The Ethiopian heard the gospel and were immediately baptized by Philip (Acts 8). Cornelius' household was immersed from above, received the Holy Spirit and were immediately baptized in water into Christ. They all understood the concept that their salvation depended on this one single mandatory baptism.



## **Act of Righteousness**

Let us spend some time to dig deep and lay down a good foundation regarding this topic. Paul explains in Romans 5 that we are justified, declared righteous and given a right standing with Adonai.

*Therefore, since we are justified (acquitted, declared righteous, and given a right standing with God) through faith, let us [grasp the fact that we] have [the peace of reconciliation to hold and to enjoy] peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One).  
Romans 5:1 AMPC*

“Therefore, since we are now justified (acquitted, made righteous, and brought into right relationship with God) by Christ’s blood, how much more [certain is it that] we shall be saved by Him from the indignation *and* wrath of God. <sup>10</sup> For if while we were enemies we were reconciled to God through the death of His Son, it is much more [certain], now that we are reconciled, that we shall be saved (daily delivered from sin’s dominion) through His [resurrection] life.” Romans 5:9-10 AMPC

We need water baptism to share in Yahshua’s resurrection life. *Therefore, as sin came into the world through one man, and death as the result of sin, so death spread to all men, no one being able to stop it or to escape its power] because all men sinned.* Romans 5:12 AMP

*For if because of one man’s trespass (lapse, offense) death reigned through that one, much more surely will those who receive [God’s] overflowing grace (unmerited favor) and the free gift of righteousness [putting them into right standing with Himself] reign as kings in life through the one Man Jesus Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One).*

<sup>18</sup> *Well then, as one man’s trespass [one man’s false step and falling away led] to condemnation for all men, **so one Man’s act of righteousness** [leads] to acquittal and right standing with God and life*



for all men. <sup>19</sup> For just as by one man's disobedience (failing to hear, heedlessness, and carelessness) the many were constituted sinners, so by one Man's obedience the many will be constituted righteous (made acceptable to God, brought into right standing with Him).

**<sup>20</sup> But then Law came in, [only] to expand and increase the trespass [making it more apparent and exciting opposition]. But where sin increased and abounded, grace (God's unmerited favor) has surpassed it and increased the more and superabounded,**

<sup>21</sup> So that, [just] as sin has reigned in death, [so] grace (His unearned and undeserved favor) might reign also through righteousness (right standing with God) which issues in eternal life through Jesus Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One) our Lord. Romans 5:17-21 AMPC

Paul continues to explain our right standing before God in the next chapter:

*What shall we say [to all this]? Are we to remain in sin in order that God's grace (favor and mercy) may multiply and overflow? Romans 6:1 AMPC*

Of course not! God forbid! May it never even be suggested in any Bible translation! The Passion Translation considers it is "a terrible thought". How can we take advantage of Adonai's grace?

**<sup>2</sup> What a terrible thought! We have died to sin once and for all, as a dead man passes away from this life. So how could we live under sin's rule a moment longer? <sup>3</sup> Or have you forgotten that all of us who **were immersed into union with Jesus, the Anointed One, were immersed into union with his death?** Romans 6:2-3 TPT**



Clearly there is death in sin. Our nature has changed. We are still human and still commit sin, but it is not our nature to sin any longer.

<sup>4</sup> *We were buried therefore with Him by the baptism into death, so that just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glorious [power] of the Father, so we too might [habitually] live and behave in newness of life.* <sup>5</sup> **For if we have become one with Him by sharing a death like His, we shall also be [one with Him in sharing] His resurrection [by a new life lived for God].**

<sup>6</sup> *We know that our old (unrenewed) self was nailed to the cross with Him in order that [our] body [which is the instrument] of sin might be made ineffective and inactive for evil, that we might **no longer be the slaves of sin.***

<sup>7</sup> *For when a man dies, he is freed (loosed, delivered) from [the power of] sin [among men].*

<sup>8</sup> **Now if we have died with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with Him,** <sup>9</sup> **Because we know that Christ (the Anointed One), being once raised from the dead, will never die again; death no longer has power over Him.**

<sup>10</sup> *For by the death He died, He died to sin [ending His relation to it] once for all; and the life that He lives, He is living to God [in unbroken fellowship with Him].<sup>11</sup> Even so consider yourselves also dead to sin and your relation to it broken, but alive to God [living in unbroken fellowship with Him] in Christ Jesus.* <sup>12</sup> **Let not sin therefore rule as king in your mortal (short-lived, perishable) bodies, to make you yield to its cravings and be subject to its lusts and evil passions.** <sup>13</sup> *Do not continue offering or yielding your bodily members [and faculties] to sin as*



*instruments (tools) of wickedness. But offer and yield yourselves to God as though you have been raised from the dead to [perpetual] life, and your bodily members [and faculties] to God, presenting them as implements of righteousness. <sup>14</sup>For sin shall not [any longer] exert dominion over you, since now you are not under law [as slaves], but under grace [as subjects of God's favor and mercy].*

**<sup>15</sup> What then [are we to conclude]?**

*Shall we sin because we live not under law but under God's favor and mercy? **Certainly not!** <sup>16</sup>Do you not know that if you continually surrender yourselves to anyone to do his will, you are the slaves of him whom you obey, whether that be to sin, which leads to death, or to obedience which leads to righteousness (right doing and right standing with God)? <sup>17</sup>But thank God, though you were once slaves of sin, you have become obedient with all your heart to the standard of teaching in which you were instructed and to which you were committed. <sup>18</sup>**And having been set free from sin, you have become the servants of righteousness (of conformity to the divine will in thought, purpose, and action).***

<sup>19</sup>*I am speaking in familiar human terms because of your natural limitations. For as you yielded your bodily members [and faculties] as servants to impurity and ever-increasing lawlessness, so now yield your bodily members [and faculties] once for all as servants to righteousness (right being and doing) [which leads] to **sanctification.***

<sup>20</sup>*For when you were slaves of sin, you were free in regard to righteousness.*



*<sup>21</sup> But then what benefit (return) did you get from the things of which you are now ashamed? [None] for the end of those things is death.*

***<sup>22</sup> But now since you have been set free from sin and have become the slaves of God, you have your present reward in holiness and its end is eternal life.***

*<sup>23</sup> For the wages which sin pays is death, but the [bountiful] free gift of God is eternal life through (in union with) Jesus Christ our Lord. Romans 6:4-23 AMPC*

Our water baptism brings us now unto a new MASTER of righteousness.

*Arise and be baptized and wash away your sins, calling on the name of the Lord. Acts 22:16 MKJV*

Sin has no dominion over us anymore!

*"Are you ignorant of the fact that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into His death?"  
Romans 6:3 AMPC.*

This is our commitment to be executed on the stake for the remission of sin.

*For since we are permanently grafted into him to experience a death like his, then we are permanently grafted into him to experience a resurrection like his and the new life that it imparts (Romans 6:5 TPT).*

Don Krow told the story of a friend who led a witch to the Lord one evening. The next morning all the other witches came running to him, asking very anxiously:

**"Did you baptize the witch! Did you baptize the witch?"**

They knew when baptism took place, it was over. The transfer from one domain to another domain took place! The same happened in Jewish



tradition. When family members were baptized, they were expelled from the family. Baptism was the cutting off point. We as New Testament believers are sometimes so arrogant, because of our lack of knowledge! We do not realize that water baptism is not merely a symbol, but an essentiality to walk in righteousness.

***At last we have freedom, for Christ has set us free!  
We must always cherish this truth and firmly refuse  
to go back into the bondage of our past. Galatians  
5:1***

*Through our union with him we have experienced  
circumcision of heart. All of the guilt and power of sin has  
been cut away and is now extinct because of what Christ,  
the Anointed One, has accomplished for us.*

*<sup>12</sup> For we've been buried with him into his death. Our  
"baptism into death" also means we were raised with him  
when we believed in God's resurrection power, the power  
that raised him from death's realm. Colossians 2:11-12  
TPT*

*For in Christ Jesus you are all sons of God through faith. <sup>27</sup> For as many  
[of you] as were baptized into Christ [into a spiritual union and  
communion with Christ, the Anointed One, the Messiah] have put on  
(clothed yourselves with) Christ.*

*<sup>29</sup> And if you belong to Christ [are in Him Who is Abraham's  
Seed], then you are Abraham's offspring and [spiritual]  
heirs according to promise. Galatians 3:26-27; 29 AMPC*

In conclusion we can say that when we go in the water for repentance of sin and with faith in Christ Jesus, we appeal to Adonai for a clear conscience. We come out of the water of spiritual circumcision of the old



nature and now we put on Christ (clothe ourselves with the Anointed One). Read the following scriptures to discover further Biblical truths of baptism:

Acts 8:12-15  
Acts 8:36-38  
Acts 9:18  
Acts 10:47  
Acts 16:15  
Acts 16:33  
Acts 19:5

This brings us now to the next baptism, which is not essential for salvation, but essential to receive power.

*Our flesh will always manifest and try to convince us this is not necessary. What do I need power for? Power is the precise reason why Satan does not want you to be baptized by Jesus in the Holy Spirit unto power! Receiving the Dunamis power, or resurrection power, is to receive power to stand against the wiles of the devil.*

## **Baptism by Jesus**

Most denominations call baptism by Jesus the baptism in the Holy Spirit. Yahshua was immersed in water and received His water baptism to fulfill all righteousness. As He came out of the water, He was baptized in the Holy Spirit, who descended upon Him like a dove and set Him on fire. Yehôvâh Elohim created man in His image and likeness, and since the fall it is the Father's desire to restore us and to unite us back unto Him. Therefore, we must put on His likeness. Paul explains:

*Instead, clothe yourself with the presence of the Lord Jesus Christ. And don't let yourself think about ways to indulge your evil desires. Romans 13:14 NLT*





*And all who have been united with Christ in baptism have put on Christ, like putting on new clothes. Galatians 3:27  
NLT*

John the Baptist said:

*I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: **he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire.** Matthew 3:11 KJV*

Here we clearly see that Yahshua is the Baptizer and the medium is the Holy Spirit. Jesus repeats John's words, before His ascension into the heavens:

*For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall **be baptized with the Holy Ghost** not many days hence.  
Acts 1:5 KJV*

This occurred on the day of Pentecost in the upper room, when 120 received the second baptism. (They had already received their first baptism and were already in Christ.) Notice that this second baptism was an act performed by Yahshua Himself. This baptism, however, is not a requirement for salvation.

Because many wrongly believe that this baptism is optional, they do not realize how essential it is for believers. The earlier churches never treated this baptism as optional, although it was not essential for salvation. It was required for another reason. If you need spiritual power, then you need this baptism of Jesus into the Holy Ghost. Jesus baptizes us into the power of the Holy Spirit, and it is freely available to every believer.



## **A SYMBOL OF GOD'S APPROVAL**

The Holy Spirit baptism is a symbol of God's approval. Immediately after the baptism of Christ, the Spirit fell upon Him. It was God's declaration that Jesus was His Son with whom He was "well pleased."

In Acts 10 the gospel of Christ had not yet been extended to include the Gentiles. As a sign to show that God has granted salvation to both the Jews and the Gentiles, the Holy Spirit fell upon the centurion, Cornelius, and all those who heard the words of Peter (Acts 10:30-48). Upon seeing the sign of God's approval of the Gentiles, Peter remarks: "*Can anyone withhold water for baptizing these people, who have received the Holy Spirit just as we have?*" (verse 47). Immediately they underwent baptism in the name of Jesus Christ. Therefore, the Spirit was poured out on "all flesh", both Jews and Gentiles, fulfilling the prophecy of Joel 2:28.

Jesus continues in Acts to tell his disciples why they would be baptized into the Holy Spirit.

***But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth. Acts 1:8 KJV***

The word **power** in Greek is "**Dunamis**", which means miraculous power or might.

G1411 (Strong)  
dunamis  
doo'-nam-is

*From G1410; force (literally or figuratively); specifically miraculous power (usually by implication a miracle itself): - ability, abundance, meaning, might (-ily, -y, -y deed), (worker of) miracle (-s), power, strength, violence, mighty (wonderful) work.*



Believers need this power to fulfil their assignment to heal the sick, cleanse the lepers and to raise the dead.

*And as ye go, preach, saying, The kingdom of heaven is at hand. <sup>8</sup> Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give.*

*Matthew 10:7-8 KJV*

Yahshua emphasized and confirmed that we need this power to overcome the enemy: **“Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you”**. Luke 10:19 KJV

When we are baptized by Jesus in the Holy Spirit and receive His Dunamis power, this power is now active within our human bodies.

*<sup>11</sup> And if the Spirit of Him Who raised up Jesus from the dead dwells in you, [then] He Who raised up Christ Jesus from the dead will also restore to life your mortal (short-lived, perishable) bodies through His Spirit Who dwells in you. Romans 8:11 AMPC*

Notice that this power enables our mortal, short-lived, perishable bodies to be restored. Saints, we need resurrection power to heal the sick, to raise the dead, to cleanse the lepers and to overcome the enemy! We need this Dunamis power to take authority over the enemy. Without this Dunamis power, we cannot execute our authority, as the sons of the chief of the priests discovered:

***And there were seven sons of one Sceva, a Jew, and chief of the priests, which did so. <sup>15</sup> And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye? <sup>16</sup> And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and***



***prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded. Acts 19:14-16 KJV***

The demons overcame them, and they fled naked and wounded. We need the Dunamis power to stand and to hold our ground against the enemy. I am convinced that many believers suffer, because they have never received the baptism by Yahshua in the Holy Ghost.

How do we know if a believer did in fact receive the baptism of Yahshua?

*He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned. <sup>17</sup> And these signs shall follow them that believe; **In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; <sup>18</sup> They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.** Matthew 16:16-18 KJV*

You will know it is the power of the Holy Spirit at work, when a believer speaks in tongues and the sick are recovered, when he lays hands on them.

This baptism by Jesus is so important that all four Gospels recorded it:

*I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: **he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire.** Matthew 3:11 KJV*

*I indeed have baptized you in water, but He shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit. Mark 1:8 KJV*

*John answered all, saying, I indeed baptize you with water, but He who is mightier than I comes, the thong of whose sandals I am not worthy to loose. He shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire. Luke 3:16*



*And I did not know Him, but He who sent me to baptize with water, that One said to me, Upon whom you shall see the Spirit descending, and remaining upon Him, He is the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit. John 1:33*

Let us not forget that Jesus is the Baptizer of the Holy Spirit. He Himself commanded His disciples to go back to Jerusalem and to wait for the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

## **IN ONE ACCORD**

When we read Acts 2 we see that on the day of Pentecost they were all in one accord.

*And in the fulfilling of the day of Pentecost, they were all with one accord in one place. Acts 2:1 KJV*

God gave us a promise in the Old Testament that He will return a pure language to the people.

***For then will I turn to the people a pure language, that they may all call upon the name of the LORD, to serve him with one consent. Zephaniah 3:9 KJV***

*"Then I will give to the peoples [clear and pure speech from] purified lips [which reflect their purified hearts], That all of them may call on the name of the Lord, To serve Him shoulder to shoulder (united). Zephaniah 3:9 AMP*

The ESV Translated it as:

*"For at that time I will change the speech of the peoples to a pure speech, that all of them may call upon the name of the Lord and serve him with **one accord**". Zephaniah 3:9 **ESV***

I will change the speech of the people to a pure speech and they will SERVE ME with "**ONE ACCORD!**"



The Lord is faithful! When He ascended to heaven, He promised the outpouring of the Holy Spirit. When the day of Pentecost came, they were all with **one accord** in one place. In Acts 2:1 The Lord says that when He comes back, He will restore a pure language for His people. This means that He will give back one language without any profanity.

**Submit your spiritual tongue to the Lord every day!!**

## **HOLY SPIRIT**

Jesus told His disciples to not depart from Jerusalem, but to wait for the Holy Ghost, as He promised. This promise was fulfilled on the day of Pentecost, 50 days after His resurrection. While they were all in one accord, a sound from heaven came like a mighty wind and filled the whole house. Tongues of fire came upon each individual and filled them with the Holy Spirit. They all spoke in their own language. The baptism in the Holy Ghost came from above and immersed them from above. Streams of living water came out of their innermost beings and out of their hearts. Their mouths uttered spiritual words as the Spirit spoke to their spirit.

*Anyone who believes in me may come and drink! For the Scriptures declare, 'Rivers of living water will flow from his heart.'" John 7:38 NLT*

*For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks.*

*Matthew 12:34 KJV*

We cannot hold back, when the Holy Ghost immerses us! The heart and the mouth overflows! This is where God and man must co-operate. Adonai will immerse and fill you, but you must do the speaking.



## **QUENCHING THE SPIRIT**

Do not quench the Spirit, when He deposits a word into your heart. Do not withhold, when He gives you a prophecy or any command to fulfil. Christians sometimes bottle up the words that are within them. We then quench what the Holy Spirit deposits into us and do not give free expression to our spiritual emotions.

*Don't hold back! Let the Holy Spirit utter through your inner most belly what He wants to minister to the Body of Christ.*

## **THE SEAL**

Yahshua immerses us into the Holy Ghost. He deposits into us and then seals us with the Holy Spirit.

*And He has sealed us and having given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts. 2 Corinthians 1:22 KJV*

*He is given to us like an engagement ring, as the first installment of what's coming! He is our hope-promise of a future inheritance which seals us until we have all of redemption's promises and experience complete freedom—all for the supreme glory and honor of God!  
Ephesians 1:14 TPT*

Paul uses imagery of a marriage to explain this seal. It is like the engagement ring a bridegroom gives his fiancé to indicate that he intends on marrying her. The engagement ring seals the commitment until the marriage ceremony and supper take place. Paul ends this verse by stating that there is a promise to experience total and complete freedom.

The moment we believe in our heart and confess with our mouth that Yahshua is our Lord and Savior, we are sealed



with the Holy Ghost. Complete freedom comes with soul salvation as Peter explains:

*"Through our faith, the mighty power of God constantly guards us until our full salvation is ready to be revealed in the last time" (1 Peter 1:5 TPT).*

Peter continues:

***<sup>9</sup> For you are reaping the harvest of your faith—the full salvation promised you—your souls' victory! 1 Peter 1:9***

*The KJV says: "obtaining the end of your faith, the salvation of your souls".*

In here we find Adonai's promise that we belong to Him. He bought us out of slavery and put His seal on us, never to be sold as slaves again. This down payment also confirms that He will be back with His reward to pay the rest. Remember the parable of the good Samaritan. The innkeeper (host) was paid two denarii to take care of the wounded man, with a promise that the Samaritan will come back to repay the innkeeper for any other expenses incurred (Luke 10:35).

Also, this down payment sets you apart for His special use.

*And so those whom God **set apart, he called; and those he called, he put right with himself, and he shared his glory with them.** Romans 8:30 GNTA*

This seal is something audible, visible and public and it cannot be a secret. It all begins when we receive our language.

*<sup>17</sup> And these signs shall follow them that believe; **In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues;** <sup>18</sup> **They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.** Matthew 16:17-18 KJV*





---

---

**This is the seal that the Apostles and other believers received.  
No other seal is needed.**

---

---

The apostles waited in the upper room for the Holy Ghost, as they had not yet received the seal. The moment they received the Holy Ghost they started to speak in tongues and was rewarded for waiting.

Peter, as a Jew, was sent by the Holy Spirit to the house of Cornelius, a Gentile. It was forbidden for a Jew to enter the house of a Gentile at that time. Peter thought that he would share the gospel to them and afterwards baptize them in water. But while Peter was still speaking, the Holy Ghost fell on the household of Cornelius. Peter, and all who came with him, were astonished that the Holy Spirit fell, even before water baptism.

*While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell on all those hearing the Word. <sup>45</sup> And those of the circumcision, who believed (as many as came with Peter), were astonished because the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out on the nations also. <sup>46</sup> For they heard them speak with tongues and magnify God. Then Peter answered, <sup>47</sup> **Can anyone forbid water that these, who have received the Holy Ghost as well as we, should not be baptized?** Acts 10:44-47 KJV*

When they, too, received the seal, Peter realized that their water baptism could not be forbidden. In here we find another Biblical truth, namely to not look for fruit in a person's life, as a prerequisite for baptism. Bearing fruit is not a requirement for any believer to be baptized by Jesus in the Holy Ghost into Dunamis power, nor by a believer in water unto righteousness. We can conclude, according to these Scriptures, that there are two ways to administer the baptism of the Holy Ghost:



It can fall on people directly from heaven.

It can be received by the laying on of hands by believers.

In Acts 8 Philip preached the gospel and believers were baptized in water. John and Peter were sent to Samaria to lay hands on the converts to receive the Holy Spirit (Acts 8:15). In Acts 9 Ananias laid hands on Saul to receive his sight and to receive the Holy Ghost (Acts 9:17). In Acts 19 Paul found disciples who were already baptized by John's baptism. They were disciples of John, and Paul clearly indicated that they had not yet been baptized into Jesus Christ. We should not merely be disciples of ministries or of churches. We need to be disciples of Jesus. Paul baptized them into Jesus and laid hands on them. Then the Holy Ghost came on them and they spoke with tongues, and they prophesied (Acts 19:3-6).

## **PURPOSE**

The purpose of this baptism is to receive supernatural power, or resurrection power, also known as Dunamis power. Many believers forfeit this power, because they do not receive the baptism of the Holy Ghost.

The English for Dunamis is "dynamite", which causes an explosion. Likewise, this spiritual "dynamite" causes an explosion within the believer to be a witness for Yahshua, and to be able to raise the dead, heal the sick and cleanse the lepers.

### **Sinners can discern the presence of the power!**

The disciples demonstrated this power, when they preached the gospel. Paul wrote: "*For the kingdom of God does not consist in talk but in power*" (1 Corinthians 4:20 ESV). Saints, we need to go back to the basics. Paul said that the only thing worth talking about is that which the Holy Spirit revealed to him.



*18-19 And I will not be presumptuous to speak of anything except what Christ has accomplished through me. For many non-Jewish people are coming into faith's obedience by the power of the Spirit of God, which is displayed through mighty signs and amazing wonders, both in word and deed. Starting from Jerusalem I went from place to place as far as the distant Roman province of Illyricum, fully preaching the wonderful message of Christ. Romans 15:18-19 TPT*

There are three main reasons why we need to tend to the gospel: Yahshua proclaims it. It has been confirmed by eye-witnesses and The Holy Spirit bears supernatural testimony by signs and wonders.

### **Warning Against Neglecting Salvation**

*For this reason we must pay closer attention to the things we have heard, or we may drift away, <sup>2</sup> because if the message spoken by angels was reliable, and every violation and act of disobedience received its just punishment, <sup>3</sup> how will we escape if we neglect a salvation as great as this? It was first proclaimed by the Lord himself, and then it was confirmed to us by those who heard him, <sup>4</sup> while God added his testimony through signs, wonders, various miracles, and gifts of the Holy Spirit distributed according to his will. Hebrews 2:1-4 ISV*

## **UNITY**

The main reason for baptism in the Holy Spirit is to bring unity within the body of Christ.



*For by one Spirit all of us, Jews and Greeks, slaves and free, were baptized **into one body** and were all privileged to drink from one Spirit (1 Corinthians 12:13 ISV).*

When the Holy Ghost fell on the disciples on Pentecost, they were in one accord, meaning there was unity among them. They were one in Spirit and one in body to produce unity. Today, however, many believers within the body of Christ are out to bring division, confusion, strife and envy.

Paul wrote about this to the congregation of Corinth:

*"I urge you, my brothers and sisters, for the sake of the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, to agree to live in unity with one another and put to rest any division that attempts to tear you apart. Be restored as one united body living in perfect harmony. Form a consistent choreography among yourselves, having a common perspective with shared values. <sup>11</sup> My dear brothers and sisters, I have a serious concern I need to bring up with you, for I have been informed by those of Chloe's house church that you have been destructively arguing among yourselves. <sup>12</sup> And I need to bring this up because each of you is claiming loyalty to different preachers. Some are saying, "I am a disciple of Paul," or, "I follow Apollos," or, "I am a disciple of Peter the Rock," and some, "I belong only to Christ." <sup>13</sup> But let me ask you, is Christ divided up into groups? Did I die on the cross for you? At your baptism did you pledge yourselves to follow Paul?" 1 Corinthians 1:10-13 TPT*

Paul continues on the subject:

*"Brothers and sisters, when I was with you I found it impossible to speak to you as those who are spiritually*



*mature people, for you are still dominated by the mind-set of the flesh. And because you are immature infants in Christ, <sup>2</sup> I had to nurse you and feed you with "milk," not with the solid food of more advanced teachings, because you weren't ready for it. In fact, you are still not ready to be fed solid food, <sup>3</sup> for you are living your lives dominated by the mind-set of the flesh. Ask yourselves: Is there jealousy among you? Do you compare yourselves with others? Do you quarrel like children and end up taking sides? If so, this proves that you are living your lives centered on yourselves, dominated by the mind-set of the flesh, and behaving like unbelievers. <sup>4</sup> For when you divide yourselves up in groups—a "Paul group" and an "Apollos group"—you're acting like people without the Spirit's influence". 1 Corinthians 3:1-4 TPT*

Saints, my heart is broken before the Lord, because of disunity in the body of Christ.

*"I don't want to find you in disunity, with jealousy and angry outbursts, with selfish ambition, slander, gossip, arrogance, and turmoil. <sup>21</sup> I'm actually afraid that on my next visit my God will humble me in front of you as I shed tears over those who keep sinning without repenting of their impurity, sexual immorality, and perversion". 2 Corinthians 12:20-21 TPT*

## **MY PERSONAL WARNING TO THE READER**

None of us should ever be involved in any activities causing **division** or splits in the body of Christ. If you encounter any person or ministry causing confusion, division, strife or envy



in an attempt to divide any church or discredit any ministry or person – FLEE!

**“Let there be no strife between us”**, as Abraham said to his nephew, Lot, when they decided to split up:  
*“Then Abram said unto Lot, Let there be no strife, I pray thee, between me and thee and between my pastors and thine, for we are brethren” Genesis 13:8 JUB).*

Abraham knew what envy and strife would do, just as I now also teach the body of Christ that strife opens up the door for “every evil work”, as James 3:16, KJV, states. I do not allow, nor tolerate this in my own life. Sometimes the Lord Himself separates people and scatters them into the nations as laborers in the field for the end time harvest (1 Peter 1:1 TPT). Let us then labor in HIS field without strife, without bringing division and confusion within the body of Christ. When people break loose from a group or a ministry to fulfill God’s assignment for them, let us bless one another, release one another with love to be harvesters for the Lord. For in the fullness of time, when the Gentiles have come in, the nations of Israel will be saved.

*“For I do not want you, brothers and sisters, to be ignorant of this mystery—lest you be wise in your own eyes—that a partial hardening has come upon Israel until the fullness of the Gentiles has come in” Romans 11:25.*

Dear reader, please look at Paul and Barnabas as an example. Since Paul’s conversion they had ministered together and at a point in time there was a huge disagreement between them.

***Paul and Barnabas Disagree***



<sup>36</sup> After some days, Paul said to Barnabas, "Let's travel to the regions where we've preached the word of God and see how the believers are getting along." <sup>37</sup> Barnabas wished to take Mark (also known as John) along with them, <sup>38</sup> but Paul disagreed. He didn't think it was proper to take the one who had deserted them in south-central Turkey, leaving them to do their missionary work without him. <sup>39</sup> **It became a heated argument between them, a disagreement so sharp that they parted from each other.** Barnabas took Mark and sailed to Cyprus. <sup>40</sup> And Paul chose Silas as his partner. After the believers prayed for them, asking for the Lord's favor on their ministry, they left <sup>41</sup> for Syria and southeast Turkey. Every place they went, they left the church stronger and more encouraged than before. Acts 15:36-41 TPT

Paul and Barnabas used to operate like two focused and goal oriented cart horses. Then, the TLV states:

*"A sharp disagreement took place, so that they split off from one another" Acts 15:39 TLV).*

To fully understand what had happened we have to look at the end result. Peter understood something, when he wrote that we will be scattered into the nations as laborers in the field.

- **Paul and Barnabas did not take the problem personally. They did not allow their disagreement to alienate them as friends and as brothers.**
- **Paul and Barnabas aimed for an effective solution to their disagreement.**



The solution was separation. Going on two separate missions solved the problem. The problem did not continue to fester.

- **Neither Paul nor Barnabas appears to have acted out of self-interest or self-will.**
- **Neither Paul nor Barnabas desired to make their disagreement into a Biblical issue, in which one was "right" and the other was "wrong."**
- **Both Paul and Barnabas seemed to be acting in accordance to their own spiritual gifts and calling.**
- **The separation of Paul and Barnabas was a cooperative action, not a competitive one.**
- **Time bore witness to the fact that both Paul and Barnabas acted in a way that was beneficial to themselves, to Mark, to each other, and to the gospel.**
- **It appears that Silas was then a better partner in ministry to Paul.**

One of the strongest gifts of Barnabas was his gift of encouragement (Acts 4:36). Barnabas first came alongside Paul at a time when Paul was a newly born believer, and when none of the apostles would associate with him and feared him. Barnabas took Paul to ministry with him in Antioch, where they ministered for a year (Acts 11:25-26). As of Acts 13:9 and following, the need for Barnabas as Paul's companion seemed to be diminishing. In Chapter 15, Mark needed Barnabas' gift of encouragement much more than Paul did. This strong difference of opinion and of approach was the one means by which God could separate





these two “inseparable” friends, brothers, and servants. The separation from Barnabas paved the way for the selection of Silas as a new partner (and others, like Timothy and Luke).

I am convinced that, for the second missionary journey, Silas was a more suitable partner than Barnabas. For example, Silas, like Paul, was a Roman citizen (or at least appears to have been). How difficult it would have been for Paul to protest against his unfair treatment as a Roman citizen in Philippi with Barnabas not being a Roman citizen as well (Acts 16:37). Paul and Silas, reading the decree of the Jerusalem Council, had more impact than it would have, had Paul and Silas read it.

***God orchestrated a change of team members in a most unusual, but effective way.***

A prominent theme in the Book of Acts is

**UNITY IN THE MIDST OF DIVERSITY.**

***God sometimes reorganizes team members for different missions. We should be mature enough to operate in UNITY, in the midst of DIVERSITY. We should focus on the goal, which is gathering the end time harvest.***

While still dwelling in the outer courts some of our actions are being tolerated by the Lord, but the moment we are transformed into the Holy of Holies, those same actions are just not acceptable any longer. Let Adonai be the judge!



**"If we are not able to demonstrate the message we bring to the world, the message does not yet belong to us and we have no authority to continue delivering the message."**

Be an example of the message you preach!

Peter says:

**"They promise them freedom while they themselves are slaves of destructive habits — for a person is a slave of anything that has conquered him." 2 Peter 2:19 GNB**

*"Drop everything else and listen to my voice, my dearest friend, for this is what Elohim is saying to you:*

*"Today, when I speak, don't even think about turning a deaf ear to me like they did when they tested me at Meribah and Massah, the place where they argued with me, their Creator. So for forty long years I was disgusted and grieved by them. I described them as wicked wanderers" Psalm 95:9-10 TPT. "They were wandering from one land to another and from one kingdom to another." (Psalm 105:13)*

Paul wrote to the converts in Thessalonica and he boasted about them, because they wholeheartedly accepted the message that he brought them. *"This is why we continually thank God for your lives, because you received our message wholeheartedly"* (1 Thessalonians 2:13 TPT) and **"Yes, you are our glorious pride and joy!"** 1 Thessalonians 2:20 TPT.

In contrast, Paul wrote to the Galatians:

**"I fear for you, that perhaps I have labored over you in vain" - Galatians 4:11**



Was my own hard work to you, dear believer, in vain?

**HAVE I LABORED OVER YOU IN VAIN?**

The Lord deals with us in love. He releases mercy upon mercy, grace upon grace, but we often continue stubbornly with anger outbursts, constant conflict and strive, inappropriate language, etc. A time might come when He will give you only one more chance! Do not waste His mercy!

Let us learn a lesson from Israel who wandered to and fro in the desert for 40 years. Their bodies were scattered in the wilderness, because of their rebellion and stubborn spirit. There might come a day in our own lives that Adonai will make a vow:

***"So for 40 years I was disgusted & grieved by them. I described them as wicked wanderers. So, I made a vow in my anger, they will never enter the resting place I've planned for them.***

***Psalm 95:10-11 TPT***

***So, let us never be hard-hearted or stubborn like they were.***

I instruct you today to stay away from all foolish and immature arguments. Those disputes will only generate more conflict.

<sup>23</sup> Stay away from all the foolish arguments of the immature, for these disputes will only generate more conflict. <sup>24</sup> For a true servant of our Lord Jesus will not be argumentative but gentle toward all and skilled in helping others see the truth, having great patience toward the immature. <sup>25</sup> Then with



meekness you'll be able to carefully enlighten those who argue with you so they can **see God's gracious gift of repentance and be brought to the truth.** <sup>26</sup> This will cause them to rediscover themselves and escape from the snare of Satan who caught them in his trap so that they would carry out his purposes. 2 Timothy 2:23-26 TPT

<sup>15</sup> Remember what you were taught from your childhood from the holy scrolls which can impart to you wisdom to experience everlasting life through the faith of Jesus, the Anointed One! <sup>16</sup> God has transmitted his very substance into every scripture, **for it is God-breathed. It will empower you by its instruction and correction, giving you the strength to take the right direction and lead you deeper into the path of godliness.** <sup>17</sup> Then you will be God's servant, fully mature and perfectly prepared to fulfill any assignment God gives you. 2 Timothy 3:15-17 TPT

In love and with boldness I give this instruction to the reader today for it is only the truth that can set us free!

**"Aspire to lead a calm and peaceful life as you mind your own business and earn your living, just as we've taught you. <sup>12</sup> By doing this you will live an honorable life, influencing others and commanding respect of even the unbelievers. Then you'll be in need of nothing and not dependent upon others."** 1 Thessalonians 4:11-12 TPT



## Requirements for Baptism

There are 7 requirements for baptism in the Holy Spirit:

- Repentance.
- Baptism in water should precede this baptism.
- Be thirsty for the Spirit.
- Come to Jesus to receive the Spirit.
- Ask Him for it.
- Receive it in faith.
- Yield your tongue to utter your new language.

The Book of Acts is not a historical book, but a book of patterns. Read the following scriptures and ask the Holy Spirit to lead you in the Biblical truths of the baptism in the Holy Ghost.

- Acts 2:2
- Acts 8:14-17
- Acts 9:17-19
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 19:5-6

## The Essence of The Holy Spirit Baptism

### JESUS HIMSELF RECEIVED THE HOLY SPIRIT

John gave further evidence, saying, I have seen the **Spirit descending as a dove out of heaven**, and it dwelt on Him [never to depart]. John 1:32

### THE HOLY SPIRIT ALSO LED JESUS

THEN JESUS, full of and controlled by the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was **led in [by] the [Holy] Spirit** Luke 4:1

*Then Jesus went back full of and under the **power of the [Holy] Spirit** into Galilee, and the fame of Him spread through the whole region round about <sup>15</sup> And He Himself*



*conducted [a course of] teaching in their synagogues, being recognized and honored and praised by all. Luke 4:14-15*

### **JESUS' FIRST MIRACLE WAS PERFORMED ONLY AFTER RECEIVING THE HOLY SPIRIT**

On the third day there was a wedding at Cana of Galilee, and the mother of Jesus was there. Jesus also was invited with His disciples to the wedding. John 2:1-2

*And when the manager **tasted the water** just now **turned into wine**, not knowing where it came from-- though the servants who had drawn the water knew--he called the bridegroom John 2:9*

### **AFTER RECEIVING THE HOLY SPIRIT, JESUS PERFORMED MANY GREAT WORKS**

*So Jesus came again into Cana of Galilee, where he made the water wine. And there was a certain nobleman, whose son was **sick** at Capernaum. <sup>47</sup> When he heard that Jesus was come out of Judaea into Galilee, he went unto him, and besought him that he would come down, and heal His Son: for he was at the **point of death**. <sup>48</sup> Then said Jesus unto him, Except ye see **signs and wonders, ye will not believe**. John 4:46-48*

*And came down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee, and taught them on the sabbath days. <sup>32</sup> And they were astonished at his doctrine: for his **word was with power**. <sup>33</sup> And in the synagogue there was a man, which had a spirit of an **unclean devil**, and **cried out with a loud voice**, <sup>34</sup>*



*Saying, Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art; the Holy One of God: <sup>35</sup> And Jesus rebuked him, saying, **Hold thy peace, and come out of him. And when the devil had thrown him in the midst, he came out of him, and hurt him not: <sup>36</sup> And they were all amazed, and spake among themselves, saying, What a word is this! for with **authority and power he commandeth the unclean spirits, and they come out.*****  
Luke 4:31-36

*Now when the sun was setting, all they that had any sick with divers **diseases** brought them unto him; and he **laid his hands on every one of them, and healed them: <sup>41</sup> And devils also came out of many, crying out, and saying, Thou art Christ the Son of God. And he rebuking them suffered them not to speak: for they knew that he was Christ. Luke 4:40-41***

*And immediately he rose up before them, and **took up that whereon he lay, and departed to his own house, glorifying God. Luke 5:25***

### **JESUS COMMANDED HIS DISCIPLES TO GO AND PREACH THE GOSPEL AND TO BAPTIZE THE PEOPLE.**

*And He said to them, **Go into all the world and preach and publish openly the good news (the Gospel)** to every creature [of the whole human race]. <sup>16</sup> **He who believes** [who adheres to and trusts in and relies on the Gospel and Him Whom it sets forth] and is **baptized will***



**be saved** [from the penalty of eternal death]; but he **who does not believe** [who does not adhere to and trust in and rely on the Gospel and Him Whom it sets forth] **will be condemned**. Mark 16:15-16

### **JESUS GAVE US AUTHORITY**

Take ye heed, watch and pray: for ye know not when the time is: <sup>34</sup> For the Son of man is as a man taking a far journey, who left his house, and **gave authority to his servants**, and to every man his work, and commanded the porter to watch. Mark 13:33-34

For even though I boast rather freely about our **power and authority**, which the **Lord gave** for your upbuilding and not for demolishing you, yet I shall not be put to shame [for exceeding the truth], 2 Corinthians 10:8

### **THESE SIGNS WILL ACCOMPANY THEM**

And these attesting signs will accompany those who believe: in **My name they will drive out demons**; they will **speak in new languages**; They will **pick up serpents**; and [even] if they **drink anything deadly**, it will **not hurt them**; they will lay their **hands on the sick**, **and they will get well**. Mark 16:17-18

### **JESUS DEPARTS TO HEAVEN**

So then the Lord Jesus, after He had spoken to them, was taken up into heaven and He sat down at the right hand of God. [Ps. 110:1.] Mar 16:19





**AFTER THE WATER BAPTISM, HE WHO IS MIGHTIER WILL COME  
AND BAPTIZE YOU WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT**

*John answered them all by saying, **I baptize you with water**; but He Who is mightier than I is coming, the strap of Whose sandals I am not fit to unfasten. He will **baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire.** Luke 3:16*

After we are born again and baptized in water, we should receive the Power of the Holy Spirit!

God doesn't intend for you to live for Him on your own; He wants to live through you by the supernatural power of the Holy Spirit!

*And when he had said this, he breathed on them, and saith unto them, **Receive ye the Holy Ghost:** John 20:22*

**BEFORE JESUS ASCENDED TO HEAVEN, HE INSTRUCTED HIS  
DISCIPLES TO WAIT UNTIL THEY RECEIVE THE HOLY SPIRIT**

*And while being in their company and eating with them, He commanded them not to leave Jerusalem but to wait for what the Father had promised, Of which [He said] you have heard Me speak. [John 14:16, 26; 15:26<sup>1-5</sup> For John baptized with water, but not many days from now you shall be baptized with (placed in, introduced into) the Holy Spirit. Acts 1:4-5.*

*And I will ask the Father, and He will give you **another Comforter** (Counselor, Helper, Intercessor, Advocate, Strengtheners, and Standby), that He may remain with you forever-- John 14:16*



But the **Comforter** (Counselor, Helper, Intercessor, Advocate, Strengthener, Standby), the Holy Spirit, Whom the Father will send in My name [in My place, to represent Me and act on My behalf], He will teach you all things. And He will cause you to recall (will remind you of, bring to your remembrance) everything I have told you. John 14:26

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT CAME UPON THEM!**

And when the day of **Pentecost** (50 days after Jesus' resurrection) was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place. And there appeared to them **tongues resembling fire, which were separated and distributed and which settled on each one of them.**

<sup>4</sup> And they were **all filled (diffused throughout their souls) with the Holy Spirit** and began to speak in other (different, foreign) languages (tongues), as the Spirit kept giving them clear and loud expression [in each tongue in appropriate words]. Acts 2:1-4

### **PHILIP WENT TO SAMARIA TO PREACH THE GOSPEL**

Now those who were scattered abroad went about [through the land from place to place] preaching the glad tidings, the Word [the doctrine concerning the attainment through Christ of salvation in the kingdom of God]. <sup>5</sup> **Philip** [the deacon, not the apostle] went down to the city of **Samaria** and proclaimed the Christ (the Messiah) to them [the people]; [Acts 6:5.] <sup>6</sup> And great crowds of people with one accord listened to and heeded what was said by Philip, as they heard him and **watched the miracles and wonders** which he kept performing [from time to time]. <sup>7</sup>



***For foul spirits came out of many who were possessed by them, screaming and shouting with a loud voice, and many who were suffering from palsy or were crippled were restored to health*** <sup>8</sup> *And there was great rejoicing in that city. Act 8:4-8*

### **PETER & JOHN WENT TO THE SAMARITANS, SO THAT THEY MIGHT RECEIVE THE HOLY SPIRIT**

*Now when the apostles (special messengers) at Jerusalem heard that [the country of] Samaria had accepted and welcomed the Word of God, they sent **Peter and John** to them,<sup>15</sup> And they came down and prayed for them **that the Samaritans might receive the Holy Spirit;*** <sup>16</sup> *For He had not yet fallen upon any of them, but they had only been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus: <sup>17</sup> **Then [the apostles] laid their hands on them one by one, and they received the Holy Spirit.*** Act 8:14-17

### **THE HOLY SPIRIT GIVES US A NEW LANGUAGE**

- Salvation saves us. Baptism with the Holy Spirit empowers us!
- We receive the Language of the Spirit!

*And they were all filled (diffused throughout their souls) with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other (different, foreign) languages (tongues), as the Spirit kept giving them clear and loud expression [in each tongue in appropriate words]. Acts 2:4*



---

## THE HOLY SPIRIT CAME, WHILE PETER WAS PREACHING THE GOSPEL TO THE GENTILES

While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy **Spirit fell on** all who were listening to the message. <sup>45</sup> And the believers from among the circumcised [the Jews] who came with Peter were surprised and amazed, because the free **gift of the Holy Spirit had been bestowed and poured out largely even on the Gentiles.** <sup>46</sup> For they heard them talking in [unknown] tongues (languages) and extolling and magnifying God. Then Peter asked. Act 10:44-46

## PAUL LAID HANDS ON THEM

WHILE APOLLOS was in Corinth, Paul went through the upper inland districts and came down to Ephesus. There he found some disciples. <sup>2</sup> And he asked them, **Did you receive the Holy Spirit** when you believed [on Jesus as the Christ]? And they said, **No, we have not even heard that there is a Holy Spirit.** <sup>3</sup> And he asked, Into what [baptism] then were you baptized? They said, Into **John's baptism.** <sup>4</sup> And Paul said, John baptized with **the baptism of repentance**, continually telling the people that they should believe in the One Who was to come after him, that is, in Jesus [having a conviction full of joyful trust that He is Christ, the Messiah, and being obedient to Him]. <sup>5</sup> **On hearing this they were baptized [again, this time] in the name of the Lord Jesus.** <sup>6</sup> And as Paul laid his hands upon them, **the Holy Spirit came on them; and they spoke in [foreign, unknown] tongues (languages) and prophesied.** Acts 19:1-6



## **PAUL SPOKE IN TONGUES**

*Now I wish that you might all speak in [unknown] tongues, but more especially [I want you] to **prophecy** (to be inspired to preach and interpret the divine will and purpose). He who prophesies [who is inspired to preach and teach] is greater (more useful and more important) than he who speaks in [unknown] tongues, unless he should interpret [what he says], so that the church may be edified and receive good [from it]. 1 Corinthians 14:5*

## **PRIVATE AND SECRET LANGUAGES SPOKEN TO GOD**

*For one who speaks in an [unknown] tongue **speaks not to men but to God**, for no one understands or catches his meaning, because in the [Holy] Spirit he utters secret truths and hidden things [not obvious to the understanding]. 1 Corinthians 14:2*

## **PRAYING AND SINGING IN THE SPIRIT LEAVES THE HUMAN UNDERSTANDING UNFRUITFUL**

*For if I pray in an unknown tongue, **my spirit prayeth**, but my **understanding is unfruitful**. <sup>15</sup> What is it then? I will **pray with the spirit**, and I will **pray with the understanding also**: I will **sing with the spirit**, and I will **sing with the understanding also**. 1 Corinthians 14:14-15*

## **BUILDING YOURSELF UP**

*But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost. Jude 1:20*



## **PRAYING IN TONGUES IS PART OF THE BELIEVERS' ARMOR**

*With all prayer and petition pray [with specific requests] **at all times** [on every occasion and in every season] **in the Spirit**, and with this in view, stay alert with all perseverance and petition [interceding in prayer] for all God's people. Ephesians 6:18 AMP*

The King James says: "Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints".

*Therefore, my brothers, desire the ability to prophesy, and do not prevent others from speaking in other languages.  
1 Corinthians 14:39 ISV*

## **THE POWER SOURCE**

The Holy Spirit is the Power Source. When we reject Him, we will not see or experience miracles, healings, demons cast out or speaking in tongues!

- Accept Him by receiving the baptism in the Holy Spirit. Open yourself up to God's supernatural power, which works in various wonderful ways. You must receive the Source in order to have His power!
- **This is essential and not optional!**
- Power is released when speaking in tongues.
- This is how you will get revelations and tap into the Holy Spirit who lives inside of you to renew your mind.

## **THE TOWER OF BABEL**

Genesis 11:1 says: "And the **whole earth was of one language**, and of one speech."



And they said, Go to, **let us build us a city and a tower**, whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth. <sup>5</sup> And the **LORD came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men builded**. And the LORD said, Behold, the people is one, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do: and **now nothing will be restrained from them**, which they have imagined to do. Genesis 11:4-6

Go to, let us go down, and there **confound their language**, that they may not understand one another's speech. Genesis 11:7

**In Acts, on the day of Pentecost, they were all with "one accord". God Almighty prophesied in Zephaniah that He will change the speech of the people to a pure speech and they will serve Him with one accord**

And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with **one accord** in one place. Acts 2:1 KJV

"For at that time I will change the speech of the peoples to a pure speech, that all of them may call upon the name of the Lord and serve him with **one accord**. Zep 3:9 ESV

## **Circumcision of the Heart**

From the beginning Adonai has been requiring not only circumcision of the flesh, but the circumcision of the heart. The reader may ask: But what does heart circumcision has to do with baptisms? I have discovered



that these seven baptisms have everything to do with heart circumcision, a principle ordained by Adonai.

*Therefore, circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be no longer stiff-necked. Deuteronomy 10:16*

*And Jehovah your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your seed, to love Jehovah your God with all your heart and with all your soul, so that you may live. Deuteronomy 30:6*

*Circumcise yourselves to Jehovah, and take away the foreskins of your heart, men of Judah and people of Jerusalem; lest My fury come forth like fire, and burn so that none can put it out; because of the evil of your doings. Jeremiah 4:4*

Circumcision of the foreskin was required in the Old Testament to be a token of the covenant between Adonai and His people

*And you shall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin. And it shall be a token of the covenant between Me and you. Genesis 17:11*

When a believer goes through the process of all these baptisms, heart circumcision takes place and we are sealed by the Blood of the Lamb, as a token of the covenant between Adonai and the new-born believer. Paul explains:

*And He gave him the covenant of circumcision. And so Abraham fathered Isaac and circumcised him the eighth*





*day. And Isaac fathered Jacob, and Jacob the twelve patriarchs. Act 7:8 KJV*

*And those of the circumcision, who believed (as many as came with Peter), were astonished because the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out on the nations also. Act 10:45 KJV*

Furthermore, Paul wrote to the Romans that circumcision of the flesh only profits if you keep the law. In this current dispensation of grace, we as Gentiles are not functioning under the Mosaic Law anymore, as God has now engraved His laws in our hearts.

*For circumcision truly profits if you keep the Law, but if you are a transgressor of the Law, circumcision becomes uncircumcision. Romans 2:25 KJV*

“This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them.” (Hebrews 10:16 KJV)

This is profound – it can only happen when heart circumcision took place.

So, what brings us into Adonai’s covenant? Not being a Jew, nor the circumcision of the flesh, but circumcision of the heart, in spirit and not in letter.

*For he is not a Jew who is one outwardly, nor is circumcision that outwardly in flesh; <sup>29</sup> but he is a Jew who is one inwardly, and circumcision is of the heart; in spirit and not in letter; whose praise is not from men, but from God. Romans 2:28 KJV*

“And he (*speaking of Abraham*) received a sign of circumcision, a **seal of the righteousness** of the faith while still uncircumcised; so that he



might be the father of all those believing through uncircumcision, for righteousness to be imputed to them also; <sup>12</sup> and a father of circumcision to those not of the circumcision only, but also to those walking by the steps of the faith of our father Abraham during uncircumcision.” (Romans 4:11-12 KJV)

Abraham received his righteousness, that is his right standing before God, even before his outward circumcision in the flesh, so that he might be even the father of the uncircumcised (Gentiles). We as Gentiles now receive our circumcision of the heart by faith in Christ Jesus.

## **INHERIT GOD’S KINGDOM**

We are all well aware of many born-again believers who are still enslaved by many evil practices. Paul is clear that those who are still engaging in these evil practices will not inherit the Kingdom of God.

*Surely you must know that people who practice evil cannot possess God’s kingdom realm. Stop being deceived! People who continue to engage in sexual immorality, idolatry, adultery, sexual perversion, homosexuality <sup>10</sup> fraud, greed, drunkenness, verbal abuse, or extortion—these **will not inherit God’s kingdom realm**. <sup>11</sup> It’s true that some of you once lived in those lifestyles, but now you have been purified from sin, made holy, and given a perfect standing before God—all because of the power of the name of the Lord Jesus, the Messiah, and through our union with the Spirit of our God.*

<sup>12</sup> *It’s true that our freedom allows us to do anything, but that doesn’t mean that everything we do is good for us. I’m free to do as I choose, but I choose to never be enslaved to anything.* <sup>13</sup> *Some have said, “I eat to live and*



*I live to eat!" But God will do away with it all. The body was not created for illicit sex, but to serve and worship our Lord Jesus, who can fill the body with himself.*  
*1 Corinthians 6:9-13 TPT*

Carefully read again verse 11. Paul emphasizes that "some of you once lived". Per implication it means that there are still those who, as believers, live this evil kind of lifestyle. For those who walked away from such a lifestyle, now have been purified from sin, made holy.

Saints, few understand the believer's journey unto full salvation ("The Apocalypse of our Full Salvation" is a new Book available to be downloaded for free from our website. It explains this full salvation, as written by Peter in his first epistle). The beginning of faith is the salvation of your spirit, but Peter mentions in 1 Peter 1:9 (TPT) that we are reaping the harvest of our faith, the full salvation of our souls!

## **Baptism of Fire**

Sanctification and purification are not the same. Sanctification means to be set apart, to be holy and whole for a special use in the Kingdom of God. Then follows purification in the soul realm to get rid of all the filthiness in our lives, just as Paul explained it in 1 Corinthians 6. I find it very interesting that, in the Bible, fire has connection to the functions of a two-edge sword.

*For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any **twoedged sword**, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.*  
*Hebrews 4:12 KJV*



Likewise, “**fire**” also purifies, but in the case of a reprobated heart (*that is an unconverted heart*), it destroys. There are a few examples in the Bible:

Notwithstanding many warnings, the people of Sodom and Gomorrah continued with their immoral lifestyle, and brimstone and fire destroyed them all (Genesis 19:24).

When Moses stretched forth his rod, Jehovah sent thunder and hail upon the land of Egypt, because of their unrighteous deeds (Exodus 9:23). Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, each took his censer and put fire in it, and put incense on it, and offered **strange fire** before Jehovah (Leviticus 10:1) and fire went out from Jehovah and devoured them, and they died before Jehovah (Leviticus 10:2).

Adonai will not tolerate idolatry! We, as New Testament believers, are ignorant about our modern idol worship and think we can get away with it. But the day is approaching that, very soon, Adonai will announce who His sons and daughters are, and those who played with strange fire (idol worship) will mourn, as there will be a weeping and gnashing of teeth.

“In the seventeenth year of Pekah the son of Remaliah Ahaz the son of Jotham king of Judah began to reign. But he walked in the way of the kings of Israel. Yes, and he made his son to **pass through the fire**, according to the abominations of the nations whom Jehovah cast out from before the sons of Israel.” (2 Kings 16:1, 3)

“And they caused their sons and their daughters to pass through the fire. And they used divination and incantations, and sold themselves to do evil in the sight of Jehovah, to provoke Him to anger.” (2 Kings 17:17)

These deeds of offering children to the King of Molech were pagan rituals, and these deeds are still in practice today. When children are sacrificed to religion, homosexuality surfaces on the horizon in the bloodline. This is the harvest of this pagan ritual of passing our children



through strange fire. This is an abomination of desolation before Yehôvâh Elohim.

With this background, it now makes much more sense that Abraham did not hesitate to offer his only begotten son, Isaac, as this ritual was in the order of the day. The difference was that Abraham believed that God would raise his son from the dead, because of the promise and covenant made by Jehovah, that, in Isaac, He would establish His everlasting Covenant with Abraham.

*And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering and laid it on Isaac his son. And he took the fire in his hand, and a knife. And they both went together. <sup>7</sup> And Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said, My father. And he said, Here am I, my son. And he said, Behold the fire and the wood. But where is the lamb for a burnt offering? Genesis 22:6- 7*

It was a flame of **fire** at the burning bush that prepared the meeting place between Moses and Jehovah as holy ground (Exodus 3:2). At that burning bush, God communicated with Moses and declared Moses' destiny. Not only did God use the burning bush (**fire**) to communicate with Moses, but it was the pillar of **fire** that gave light to his people and lead the way to the promised land.

*And Jehovah went before them by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the right away, and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light, to go by day and night. <sup>22</sup> He did not take away the pillar of the cloud by day, nor the pillar of fire by night, from before the people. Exodus 13:21-22*

Notice how Jehovah came down in **fire** on the Mount of Sinai.

*And Mount Sinai was smoking, all of it, because Jehovah came down upon it in fire. And the smoke of it went up like*



*the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mountain quaked greatly. Exodus 19:18*

He is indeed a consuming and devouring fire!

*And the sight of the glory of Jehovah was like **devouring fire** on the top of the mountain in the eyes of the sons of Israel. Exodus 24:17*

*For Jehovah your God is a **consuming fire**, a jealous God. Deuteronomy 4:24*

**"Our God is a consuming fire."** Hebrews 12:29

*And the **fire of Jehovah** fell and burned up the burnt sacrifice and the wood, and the stones and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench. 1 Kings 18:38*

Elijah understood this **fire**. He called upon it and three times it devoured fifty men, who approached him on the Mount.

*And Elijah answered and said to the commander of fifty, If I am a man of God, then let **fire come down from the heavens** and burn up you and your fifty. And there came down fire from the heavens and burned up him and his fifty. 2 Kings 1:10*

God's **fire** is also for our **protection**. Yes, it devours all the filthiness in us, but the voice of Jehovah goes through flames of fire for our correction (Psalm 29:7). He even makes His angels spirits, His ministers a flaming **fire** (Psalm 104:4). Paul quoted this when he wrote:

*And of the angels He says, "Who makes His angels spirits and His ministers a flame of fire." Hebrews 1:7 KJV*



“But who can endure the day of His coming? And who shall stand when He appears? For He is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.” (Malachi 3:2)

*For behold, the day is coming, burning like a fire pot; and all the proud, and every doer of wickedness, shall be chaff. And the coming day will set them ablaze, says Jehovah of Hosts, which will not leave root or branches to them.  
Malachi 4:1 KJV*

That day, when the burning **fire** comes over the proud and haughty, the chaff will be burned away, and it will be a joyful day, when the sun of righteousness arises!

*But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall. Malachi 4:2  
KJV*

**And you shall come free! Oh, Glory to God! My dear friend, I hope you capture this divine Biblical truth! The main aim of our “baptism with fire” is to be set free from all bondages and enslavements!**

Yahshua warns us that His axe is laid to the root of the tree. When there is no fruit, the tree will be cut down and cast into the fire, as John, the Baptist, declared:

*And now also, the axe is laid to the root of the trees. Therefore every tree which does not bring forth good fruit is cut down and cast into the fire. <sup>11</sup> I indeed baptize you with water to repentance. But He who comes after me is mightier than I, whose sandals I am not worthy to carry.  
**He shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with***



**fire;** <sup>12</sup> whose fan is in His hand, and He will cleanse His floor and gather His wheat into the storehouse; but He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire. Matthew 3:10-12 KJV

Notice that the winnowing fan (a tool that separates the chaff from the grain) is already in His hand to cleanse us. He brings in the harvest, but He burns the chaff with unquenchable fire.

*Every tree that does not bring forth good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. Matthews 7:19*

Each one's work shall be revealed in the last days.

*For the Day shall declare it, because it shall be **revealed by fire**; and the fire shall try each one's work as to what kind it is. (1 Corinthians 3:13, emphasize is mine).*

Peter declared that even our faith will be tested and proven by **fire**.

*So that the trial of your faith (being much more precious than that of gold that perishes, **but being proven through fire**) might be found to praise and honor and glory at the revelation of Jesus Christ, 1 Peter 1:7 KJV*

### **The Fire of the Lord is our Dunamis Power**

Yahshua confirmed to His disciples that it would be for their own good that He would depart and return to His Father's home. He then asked the Father to send the Holy Spirit to abide with them and also with us. The Holy Spirit is our Helper, who will teach us all things! Glory to God! "And now I will send the Holy Spirit, just as my Father promised. But stay here in the city until the Holy Spirit comes and fills you with power from heaven." Luke 24:49 NLT





*But the Helper, the Holy Spirit whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things, and remind you of all that I said to you. John 14:26 NASB*

In Strong's the word "**power**", as in Luke 24:49, is Dunamis, which is the resurrection power that is in us (Romans 8:11; Ephesians 1:19-21). When 120 men waited in the Upper Room in Jerusalem for the Holy Ghost (as Yahshua had promised), "*they saw **tongues like flames of fire** that separated, and one rested on each of them*" (Acts 2:3 ISV). It was those tongues like FIRE that separated them from the rest. They each received their unique tongue and power (Dunamis, resurrection power) to preach the Gospel, to raise the dead, to heal the sick and to cleanse the lepers. My dear friend, we too need the baptism of FIRE to receive the same resurrection power, in order to be ready for our own ministry and assignment.

To conclude this section of baptism with fire, let us reflect on John's vision of the resurrected Messiah, who announced, "I was dead, but look—I am alive forever and ever! Moreover, I hold the keys of death and Sheol." (Revelation 1:18 TLV)

"His head and hair were white like wool, as white as snow. And **His eyes were like a flame of fire**" (Revelation 1:14), "and to the angel of the church in Thyatira write: The Son of God, He who has **His eyes like a flame of fire** and His feet like burnished metal, says these things." (Revelation 2:18)

*And His eyes were like a flame of fire, and on His head many crowns. And He had a name written, one that no one knew except Himself. Revelation 19:12*



I believe these “eyes like a flame of fire” is also the two-edged sword, which penetrates and divides the soul and the spirit, the thoughts and the attitudes of the heart, to purifies us with the baptism of FIRE.

*Adonai’s two-edged sword penetrates even to dividing soul and spirit, joints and marrow; it judges the thoughts and attitudes of the heart. Hebrews 4:12 NIV*

## **Victory**

How marvelous it is to discover that this **fire** leads us to the see of glass, mingled with fire, and brings us into victory, while singing the Victor’s song of Moses!

*And I saw as it were a sea of glass, mingled with fire. And those who had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God.*

*<sup>3</sup> And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying, Great and marvelous are Your works, Lord God Almighty, just and true are Your ways, O King of saints. Revelation 15:2-3 MKJV*

In order for us to stand on the sea of glass, mingled with FIRE, to be victorious over the beast, his image, his mark and over his name, the Baptism of Fire does the following:

- Sanctifies.
- Purifies.
- Protects.
- Guides and leads.



---

**GLORY TO GOD FOR HIS ALL-CONSUMING FIRE!**

## **The Shulamite Bride**

The conversation between the Bridegroom and the Bride begins with the phrase: "**LET HIM**". When we study the Book of Song of Songs in the Passion Translation, we discover that we indeed need to "let go" and "LET HIM" do all the work.

*To enter the doorway of Jesus' heart we must begin by saying: "Let Him." We bring Him a yielded heart and then "let Him" do the rest. God's loving grace means that He will be enough for us. We can "let Him" be everything to us. We enter not by doing, but by yielding.*

Then may your awakening breath  
blow upon my life until I am fully yours.  
Breathe upon me with your Spirit wind.  
Stir up the sweet spice of your life within me.  
Spare nothing as you make me your fruitful garden.

Hold nothing back until I release your fragrance.

Come walk with me as you walked  
with Adam in your paradise garden.  
Come taste the fruits of your life in me".

Songs 4:16-5:1 TPT

"Spare nothing as you make me your fruitful garden" is nothing else but the baptism of **fire**. Through **fire** (a painful process), Adonai spares nothing, so that only purity, holiness and His fragrance (out of His garden of delight) will come through. He does that for us, so that we can stand on the sea of glass, in victory over the beast, his image, his name and his mark.



The scene of a garden and the “breath of the Spirit wind” point us back to Eden. Now this paradise is found in His Bride (Jerimiah 31:12 and John 15:1-2). Paul wrote to the Ephesians:

*<sup>5-6</sup> For it was always in his perfect plan to adopt us as his delightful children, through our union with Jesus, the Anointed One, so that his tremendous love that cascades over us would glorify his grace—for the same love he has for the Beloved, Jesus, he has for us. And this unfolding plan brings him great pleasure!*

*<sup>7</sup> Since we are now joined to Christ, we have been given the treasures of redemption by his blood—the total cancellation of our sins—all because of the cascading riches of his grace: <sup>8</sup> This super abundant grace is already powerfully working in us releasing all forms of wisdom and practical understanding: <sup>9</sup> And through the revelation of the Anointed One, **he unveiled his secret desires to us—the hidden mystery of his long-range plan, which he was delighted to implement from the very beginning of time**. <sup>10</sup> And because of God’s unfailing purpose, this detailed plan will reign supreme through every period of time **until the fulfillment of all the ages finally reaches its climax—when God makes all things new in all of heaven and earth through Jesus Christ**. Ephesians 1:5-10*

Adonai is busy transforming everything back to its original state in the Garden of Eden, before the fall, and we must sit back and “**LET HIM**” do the work.



**Don't you dare think for one moment about turning a deaf ear to the Bridegroom, when He is doing His work inside of you.**

*Promise me that you will not disturb my love until you are ready to arise. Songs 2:7 TPT*

## Baptism of Suffering

Let me tell you a mystery! Our suffering for Christ has a major purpose! It is part of the one package deal, as a believer. It is part of our full restoration. This suffering does not refer to suffering as a result of living a life of unrighteousness, but it refers to us willingly suffering for Him, because of our love for Him.

The reader might ask, but what is the exact purpose of the baptism of suffering?

Let us first look at some scriptures to help us make a conclusion.

Paul is one example of a believer who suffered for Christ. I believe he had all authority to lead us, the New Testament believers, into this concept, when he wrote:

*"We are bound to thank God always for you, my brothers, as it is right, because your faith grows exceedingly, and the love of each one of you abounds toward one another; <sup>4</sup> so much so that we ourselves glory in you in the churches of God, **for your patience and faith in all your persecutions and tribulations which you endure.** <sup>5</sup> For this is a manifest token of the righteous judgment of God, that you **may be counted worthy of the kingdom of God for which you also suffer** (2 Thessalonians 1:3-5 TPT).*



Paul gave us a hint of the purpose of our suffering – to be counted worthy to be part of the Kingdom! Many believe that when we give our hearts to Jesus and confess with our mouths, that we have arrived, and we go to heaven. But, Romans 10:10 is only the beginning of the restoration plan. Being born-again gives us access to enter the gates, where we then dwell in the Outer Courts. After being born-again, starts the sanctification process, by which we are transformed into the Holy of Holies. Paul explains:

*"This entire building is under construction and is continually growing under his supervision until it rises up completed as the holy temple of the Lord himself. <sup>22</sup> This means that God is transforming each one of you into the Holy of Holies, his dwelling place, through the power of the Holy Spirit living in you!" Ephesians 2:21-22 TPT*

We all need to be transformed into the Holy of Holies. Henceforth, a process is laying ahead of us, after salvation, to move us unto spiritual maturity and get rid of all the filthiness.

What an encouragement it is to realize that He, Yahshua HaMashiach, "always comes alongside us to comfort us in every suffering, so that we can come alongside those who are in any painful trial. We can bring them this same comfort that God has poured out upon us. <sup>5</sup> And just as we experience the abundance of Christ's own sufferings, even more of God's comfort will cascade upon us through our union with Christ (2 Corinthians 1:4-5).

Notice that we are comforted by Him so that we, in turn, can come alongside those in painful trials. Yahshua does not comfort us to sit back, having a nice cup of tea under the shadow trees, but to be out there to help, to assist and to strengthen those in pain and in suffering.



Paul continues:

“If troubles weigh us down, that just means that we will receive even more comfort to pass on to you for your **deliverance!** For the comfort pouring into us empowers us to bring comfort to you. And with this comfort upholding you, you can endure victoriously the same suffering that we experience. <sup>7</sup> Now our hope for you is unshakable, because we know that just as you share in our sufferings you will also share in God’s comforting strength.”  
(2 Corinthians 1:6-7)

Here we find the next hint Paul gave us, which is that suffering for Christ is to share now in His strength. It seems that our suffering in Christ brings strength to endure all kinds of trails, so that we will one day stand victoriously on the sea of glass, mingled with fire, singing the Victor’s Song of Moses!

Brothers and sisters, you need to know about the severe trials we experienced while we were in western Turkey. All of the hardships we passed through crushed us beyond our ability to endure, and we were so completely overwhelmed that we were about to give up entirely. <sup>9</sup> It felt like we had a death sentence written upon our hearts, and we still feel it to this day. It has taught us to lose all faith in ourselves and to place all of our trust in the God who raises the dead. <sup>10</sup> He has rescued us from terrifying encounters with death. And now we fasten our hopes on him to continue to deliver us from death yet again, <sup>11</sup> as you labor together with us through prayer. Because there are so many interceding for us, our deliverance will cause even more people to give thanks to God. What a gracious gift of mercy



surrounds us because of your prayers! (2 Corinthians 1:8-11).

There is a need for fellow believers to pray for one another, during trials and persecutions. It is a pity that so many believers (*and especially those in leadership positions*) are ashamed of their own trials and do not make it known, so that the Body of Christ can intercede for them and support them. On the other hand, there are unfortunately few to be trusted with the knowledge of these shameful sufferings and trials. Many fellow believers are more into backstabbing and gossiping, than into standing alongside those who suffer, and interceding for them.

### **Paul Boasts in His Sufferings for Christ**

*Are these "super-apostles" of yours Hebrews? I am too. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they descendants of Abraham? Me too! <sup>23</sup> Are they servants of the Anointed One? I'm beside myself when I speak this way, but I am much more of a servant than they. I have worked much harder for God, taken more beatings, and been dragged to more prisons than they. I've been flogged excessively, multiple times, even to the point of death.*

*<sup>24</sup> Five times I've received thirty-nine lashes from the Jewish leaders. <sup>25</sup> Three times I experienced being beaten with rods. Once they stoned me. Three times I've been shipwrecked; for an entire night and a day I was adrift in the open sea. <sup>26</sup> In my difficult travels I've faced many dangerous situations: perilous rivers, robbers, foreigners, and even my own people. I've survived deadly peril in the city, in the wilderness, with storms at sea, and with spies posing as believers. <sup>27</sup> I've toiled to the point of exhaustion and gone through many sleepless nights. I've frequently*





*been deprived of food and water, left hungry and shivering out in the cold, lacking proper clothing.*

*<sup>28</sup> And besides these painful circumstances, I have the daily pressure of my responsibility for all the churches, with a deep concern weighing heavily on my heart for their welfare. <sup>29</sup> I am not aloof, for who is desperate and weak and I do not feel their weakness? Who is led astray into sin and I do not burn with zeal to restore him?*

2 Corinthians 11:22-29 TPT

As if his own suffering was not enough, Paul still had a deep compassion for the welfare and suffering of his fellow believers. Let this be an example for us today! Rather than talking behind a fellow believer's back, let us have compassion for one another's welfare.

"For your thoughts [heart] will always be focused on your treasure. We are so in idol worshipping today, that we do not see fellow believers as our highest priority in life. And I believe therefore that this is the main reason that members of the Body of Christ are suffering.

But keep on storing up treasures for yourselves in heaven, where moths and rust do not destroy and where thieves do not break in and steal, <sup>21</sup> because where your treasure is, there your heart will be also." Matthew 6:20-21 TPT

Compare these verses (Matthews 6:20-21) to 2 Corinthians 11. Paul's heart and thoughts were on people - on the welfare of the congregation!

"Once, when I was in Damascus, the governor under King Aretas had his troops searching for me to have me arrested, <sup>33</sup> but I was stuffed in a basket and lowered down through a window and managed to escape." 2 Corinthians 11:32-33 TPT



*We are like common clay jars that carry this glorious treasure within, so that this immeasurable power will be seen as God's, not ours.* <sup>8</sup> *Though we experience every kind of pressure, we're not crushed. At times we don't know what to do, but quitting is not an option.* <sup>9</sup> *We are persecuted by others, but God has not forsaken us. We may be knocked down, but not out.* <sup>10</sup> ***We continually share in the death of Jesus in our own bodies so that the resurrection life of Jesus will be revealed through our humanity.*** <sup>11</sup> *We consider living to mean that we are constantly being handed over to death for Jesus' sake so that the life of Jesus will be revealed through our humanity.* <sup>12</sup> *So, then, death is at work in us but it releases life in you (2 Corinthians 4:7-12 TPT).*

**Our Baptism of Suffering is to share in the death, burial and resurrection of Christ Jesus!**

**Let no one cause me any further trouble, Paul said to the Galatians when he shared with them all his sufferings.**

<sup>12</sup> *All those who insist that you be circumcised are recruiting you so they can boast in their own achievement.*

***They seek to avoid the persecution that comes with preaching the liberating message of the cross of Messiah!*** <sup>13</sup> *Not even those who are circumcised keep every detail of the written law. Yet they push you to be circumcised so that they can boast that you have become like them.*

<sup>14</sup> *May my only boast be found in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ. In him I have been crucified to this natural realm; and the natural realm is dead to me and no longer dominates my life.*

<sup>15</sup> *Whether a man is circumcised or uncircumcised is meaningless to me. What really matters is the transforming power of this new creation life.*  
<sup>16</sup> *And all those who live in agreement with this standard will have true*



*peace and God's delight, for they are the Israel of God.* Galatians 6:12-15 TPT

Notice how Paul carefully addressed these false teachers who tried to bring the Gentile believers under the old Mosaic Law. They desired to avoid persecution! When we, as believers, are in agreement with the world system, there is no persecution. Take for example the current Covid situation with the pressure to wear masks and be vaccinated. Those in disagreement are facing severe pressure and persecution. They are threatened to lose the benefits of this world e.g. buying and selling, medical aids and flying overseas to visit family.

**"From now on, let no one cause me to suffer further, for I am carrying the very scars of our Lord Jesus in my body. Galatians 6:17**

**The ASV translated it as:**

**[(ASV) Henceforth let no man trouble me; for I bear branded on my body the marks of Jesus.]**

**Galatians 6:17**

### **Living by the Power of the Holy Spirit!**

"So now the case is closed. There remains no accusing voice of condemnation against those who are joined in life-union with Jesus, the Anointed One. <sup>2</sup> For the "law" of the Spirit of life flowing through the anointing of Jesus has liberated us from the "law" of sin and death. <sup>3</sup> For God achieved what the law was unable to accomplish, because the law was limited by the weakness of human nature." Romans 8:1-3 TPT

*Yet God sent us his Son in human form to identify with human weakness. Clothed with humanity, God's Son gave his body to be the sin-offering so that God could once and for all condemn the guilt and power of sin.*



<sup>4</sup> So now every righteous requirement of the law can be fulfilled through the Anointed One living his life in us. And we are free to live, not according to our flesh, but by the dynamic power of the Holy Spirit!

<sup>7</sup> In fact, the mind-set focused on the flesh fights God's plan and refuses to submit to his direction, because it cannot! <sup>8</sup> For no matter how hard they try, God finds no pleasure with those who are controlled by the flesh.

<sup>9</sup> But when the Spirit of Christ empowers your life, you are not dominated by the flesh but by the Spirit. And if you are not joined to the Spirit of the Anointed One, you are not of him.

<sup>10</sup> Now Christ lives his life in you! And even though your body may be dead because of the effects of sin, his life-giving Spirit imparts life to you because you are fully accepted by God. <sup>11</sup> Yes, God raised Jesus to life! And since God's Spirit of Resurrection lives in you, he will also raise your dying body to life by the same Spirit that breathes life into you!

<sup>12</sup> So then, beloved ones, the flesh has no claims on us at all, and we have no further obligation to live in obedience to it. <sup>13</sup> For when you live controlled by the flesh, you are about to die. But if the life of the Spirit puts to death the corrupt ways of the flesh, we then taste his abundant life.

Romans 8:4, 7, 9, 10, 12 TPT

### **Sons and Daughters Destined for Glory**

<sup>14</sup> The mature children of God are those who are moved by the impulses of the Holy Spirit. <sup>15</sup> And you did not receive the "spirit of religious duty," leading you back into the fear of never being good enough. But you have received the "Spirit of full acceptance," enfolding you into the family of God. And you will never feel orphaned, for as he rises up within us, our spirits join him in saying the words of tender affection, "Beloved Father!"



<sup>16</sup> For the Holy Spirit makes God's fatherhood real to us as he whispers into our innermost being, "You are God's beloved child!" <sup>17</sup> And since we are his true children, we qualify to share all his treasures, for indeed, we are heirs of God himself. And since we are joined to Christ, we also inherit all that he is and all that he has. We will experience being co-glorified with him provided that we accept his sufferings as our own.

**Notice how Paul linked our sonship with suffering. Even the entire universe is eagerly awaiting to see the unveiling of Adonai's glorious sons and daughters!**

<sup>18</sup> **I am convinced that any suffering we endure is less than nothing compared to the magnitude of glory that is about to be unveiled within us.** <sup>19</sup> **The entire universe is standing on tiptoe, yearning to see the unveiling of God's glorious sons and daughters!** <sup>20</sup> For against its will the universe itself has had to endure the empty futility resulting from the consequences of human sin. But now, with eager expectation, <sup>21</sup> all creation longs for freedom from its slavery to decay and to experience with us the wonderful freedom coming to God's children. <sup>22</sup> To this day we are aware of the universal agony and groaning of creation, as if it were in the contractions of labor for childbirth. <sup>23</sup> And it's not just creation. We who have already experienced the firstfruits of the Spirit also inwardly groan as we passionately long to experience our full status as God's sons and daughters—including our physical bodies being transformed. <sup>24</sup> For this is the hope of our salvation. Romans 8:14-24 TPT

"Having determined our destiny ahead of time, he called us to himself and transferred his perfect righteousness to everyone he called. And those who possess his **perfect righteousness** he co-glorified with his Son!" Romans 8:30 TPT



**In Romans 8:30 we find a mystery hidden to be revealed to those seeking deeper truths. We explained in our discussion of the different baptisms that the believer's baptism in the Name of Jesus is to *fulfil* all righteousness. This is not the same as receiving our right standing. It is a fulfillment. Fulfillment means to achieve something desired, promised or predicted. The explanation of this mystery is as follows: Those who possess HIS perfect righteousness will be His sons and daughters. Yehôvâh Elohim is busy with a work of restoration and we are now reaping the harvest of our faith – the salvation of our souls!**

**Glory to Adonai!**

**An even better understanding of the concept of righteousness can be found in the discussion on "Justification".**

### **The Triumph of God's Love**

*<sup>31</sup> So, what does all this mean? If God has determined to stand with us, tell me, who then could ever stand against us? <sup>32</sup> For God has proved his love by giving us his greatest treasure, the gift of his Son. And since God freely offered him up as the sacrifice for us all, he certainly won't withhold from us anything else he has to give.*

*<sup>33</sup> Who then would dare to accuse those whom God has chosen in love to be his? God himself is the judge who has issued his final verdict over them — **"Not guilty!"***

*<sup>34</sup> Who then is left to condemn us? Certainly not Jesus, the Anointed One! For he gave his life for us, and even more than that, he has conquered death and is now risen, exalted, and enthroned by God at his*



*right hand. So how could he possibly condemn us since he is continually praying for our triumph? Romans 8:31-34*

**Paul explains that our troubles, pressures and problems, our persecutions and trials are not set up for our destruction, but for something else!**

**It is for us "to inherit the Kingdom of God"!**

This process of fulfillment of righteousness and the inheritance of the Kingdom starts with our new-born experience, as Paul explains: "*He is given to us like an engagement ring, as the first installment of what's coming! He is our hope-promise of a **future inheritance** which seals us until we have all of redemption's promises and experience complete freedom—all for the supreme glory and honor of God!*" (Ephesians 1:14 TPT).

**Let the reader not miss this revelation:**

**We are sealed UNTIL we have all of redemption's promises and UNTIL we experience complete FREEDOM!**

This means that Adonai is leading us out of Egypt, through the Red Sea, out of the wilderness, over the Jordan River. He is destroying the giants in Jericho for us to inherit the Promised Land. Now we can enter into our dominion rest.

**Paul continues:**

<sup>35</sup> ***Who could ever divorce us from the endless love of God's Anointed One? Absolutely no one! For nothing in the universe has the power to diminish his love toward us. Troubles, pressures, and problems are unable to come between us and heaven's love. What about persecutions, deprivations, dangers, and***



**death threats? No, for they are all impotent to hinder omnipotent love,<sup>36</sup> even though it is written: All day long we face death threats for your sake, God.**

**We are considered to be nothing more than sheep to be slaughtered!**

**<sup>37</sup> Yet even in the midst of all these things, we triumph over them all, for God has made us to be more than conquerors, and his demonstrated love is our glorious victory over everything!**

<sup>38</sup> So now I live with the confidence that there is nothing in the universe with the power to separate us from God's love. I'm convinced that his love will triumph over death, life's troubles, fallen angels, or dark rulers in the heavens. There is nothing in our present or future circumstances that can weaken his love. <sup>39</sup> There is no power above us or beneath us—no power that could ever be found in the universe that can distance us from God's passionate love, which is lavished upon us through our Lord Jesus, the Anointed One! Romans 8:31-39 TPT

A few years ago, the Holy Spirit used the epistle of the Apostle Peter to lead me to the apocalypse of full salvation. Since then this revelation has been growing and growing. I realize that the Body of Christ does not acknowledge the importance of this profound Biblical truth.

Peter wrote:

“Through our faith, the mighty power of God constantly guards us until our **full salvation** is ready to be revealed in the last time.

<sup>6</sup> May the thought of this cause you to jump for joy, even though lately you've had to put up with the grief of many trials. <sup>7</sup> But these only reveal the sterling core of your faith, which is far more valuable than gold that perishes, for





even gold is refined by fire. Your authentic faith will result in even more praise, glory, and honor when Jesus the Anointed One is revealed.

<sup>8</sup> You love him passionately although you have not seen him, but through believing in him you are saturated with an ecstatic joy, indescribably sublime and immersed in glory.

<sup>9</sup> **For you are reaping the harvest of your faith—the full salvation promised you—your souls’ victory!”**

1 Peter 1:5-9 TPT

Peter continues:

### **Persecuted for Doing Good**

Why would anyone harm you if you’re passionate and devoted to pleasing God?<sup>14</sup> But even if you happen to **suffer** for doing what is right, you will have the joyful experience of the blessing of God. And

Don’t be intimidated or terrified  
by those who would terrify you.

<sup>15</sup> But give reverent honor in your hearts to the Anointed One and treat him as the holy Master of your lives. And if anyone asks about the hope living within you, always be ready to explain your faith<sup>16</sup> with gentleness and respect. Maintain a clean conscience, so that those who slander you for living a pure life in Christ will have to lie about you and will be ashamed because of their slander.<sup>17</sup> For it is better to suffer for doing good, if it is in God’s plan, than for doing evil. 1 Peter 3:13-17 TPT

### **Christ’s Victory**

<sup>18</sup> *Christ suffered and died for sins once and for all—the innocent for the guilty—to bring you near to God by his body being put to death and by being raised to life by the Spirit.* <sup>19</sup> *He went in the spiritual realm and made a proclamation to the spirits in prison* <sup>20</sup> *because of their*



*disobedience of long ago. For during the time of Noah God patiently waited while the ark was being prepared, but only a few were brought safely through the floodwaters: a total of eight souls.* <sup>21</sup> **This was a prophetic picture of the immersion that now saves you**—not a bathing of the physical body but rather the response of a good conscience before God through the resurrection of Jesus Christ, <sup>22</sup> who is now in heaven at the place of supreme authority next to God. The very powers of heaven, including every angel and authority, now yield in submission to him. 1 Peter 3:18-22 TPT

**Notice that even the event of Noah was a typology of our water baptism for the remission of sin, to receive a good conscience before God and receive a new resurrected life in Christ!**

**Glory to God! This brings victory over our last enemy - Death!**

**O, death where are your sting? 1 Corinthians 15:55**

### **Suffering and Glory**

*Beloved friends, if life gets extremely difficult, with many tests, don't be bewildered as though something strange were overwhelming you.* <sup>13</sup> *Instead, continue to rejoice, for you, in a measure, have shared in the sufferings of the Anointed One so that you can share in the revelation of his glory and celebrate with even greater gladness!* <sup>14</sup> *If you are insulted because of the name of Christ, you are greatly blessed, because the Spirit of glory and power, who is the Spirit of God, rests upon you.*

**Our suffering is not because of living an unrighteous life!**

<sup>15</sup> **Let none of you merit suffering as a murderer, or thief, or criminal, or as one who meddles in the affairs of others.** <sup>16</sup> *If you*



*suffer for being a Christian, don't consider it a disgrace but a privilege. Glorify God because you carry the Anointed One's name. <sup>17</sup> For the time is ripe for judgment to begin in God's own household. And if it starts with us, what will be the fate of those who refuse to obey the gospel of God?*

<sup>18</sup> *And:*

*If the righteous are barely saved,  
what will become of the wicked and godless?*

<sup>19</sup> *So then, those who suffer for following God's will should enfold their lives into the Creator, who will never fail them, and continue to always do what is right. 1 Peter 4:12-19 TPT*

### **Look how Peter is bringing everything together! Our Baptism of Suffering is bringing us unto restoration!**

"Resist him and be firm in the faith, because you know that your brothers throughout the world are undergoing the same kinds of suffering. <sup>10</sup> After you have suffered for a little while, the God of all grace, who called you by the Messiah Jesus to his eternal glory, **will restore you**, establish you, strengthen you, and support you. <sup>11</sup> Power belongs to him forever and ever! Amen" (1 Peter 5:9-11 ISV).

### **Love and Purity**

*Now, because of your obedience to the truth, you have purified your very souls, and this empowers you to be full of love for your fellow believers. So express this sincere love toward one another passionately and with a pure heart. <sup>23</sup> For through the eternal and living Word of God you have been born again. And this "seed" that he planted within you can never be destroyed but will live and grow inside of you forever. For: <sup>24</sup> Human beings are frail and temporary, like grass, and the glory of man fleeting*



*like blossoms of the field.*

*The grass dries and withers and the flowers fall off,*

*<sup>25</sup> but the Word of the Lord endures forever!*

*And this is the Word that was announced to you! 1 Peter 1:22-25 TPT*

**In conclusion to our “Baptism of Suffering”, Paul explains:**

“We feel a personal responsibility to continually be thanking God for you, our spiritual family, every time we pray. And we have every reason to do so because your faith is growing marvelously beyond measure. The unselfish love each of you share for one another is increasing and overflowing! <sup>4</sup> We point to you as an example of unwavering faith for all the churches of God.

**We boast about how you continue to demonstrate unflinching endurance through all the persecutions and painful trials you are experiencing.”**

2 Thessalonians 1:3-4 TPT

Do you demonstrate unflinching endurance? Do you show courage in the face of dangers, difficulty, persecutions and painful trials? Or do you show fear and hesitation? Do you persevere bravely or are you constantly moaning and complaining, while going through difficult experiences?

If you truly can say “Yes” to the positive side of the questions above, it will make you worthy to inherit the kingdom of God!

**All of this prove that God’s judgment is always perfect and is intended to make you worthy of inheriting the kingdom of God, which is why you are going through these troubles. 2 Thessalonians 1:5 TPT**



All our trials and persecutions on earth is a test for each and every believer to overcome, not only to be set apart from the rest, but also to receive the qualification to participate in the first resurrection. When we endure to the end, we will receive the victor's crown, which is the reward waiting for us in the heavens!

**It is crucial to pass the test!**

James explains:

"My fellow believers, when it seems as though you are facing nothing but difficulties, see it as an invaluable opportunity to experience the greatest joy that you can! <sup>3</sup> For you know that when your faith is tested it stirs up power within you to endure all things. <sup>4</sup> And then as your endurance grows even stronger it will release perfection into every part of your being until there is nothing missing and nothing lacking.

<sup>12</sup> If your faith remains strong, even while surrounded by life's difficulties, you will continue to experience the untold blessings of God! True happiness comes as you pass the test with faith and receive the victorious crown of life promised to every lover of God!" James 1:2-4; 12.

**Paul says:**

Isn't it obvious that all runners on the racetrack keep on running to win, but only one receives the victor's prize? Yet each one of you must run the race to be victorious. <sup>25</sup> A true athlete will be disciplined in every respect, practicing constant self-control in order to win a laurel wreath that quickly withers. But we run our race to win a victor's crown that will last forever. <sup>26</sup> For that reason, I don't run just for exercise or box like one throwing aimless punches, <sup>27</sup> but I train like a champion athlete. I subdue my body and get it under my control, so that after preaching the good news to others I myself won't be disqualified. 1 Corinthians 9:24-27



Both Paul and James point us to the victor's prize – a crown waiting for us in heaven, if we endure to the end! We have to remain faithful and pass the test. Paul was very concerned that he himself might be disqualified. He was not concerned about losing his salvation, but about being disqualified to receive his reward, his crown.

Therefore, our Baptism of Suffering is to:

- Inherit the Kingdom.
- Become Sons and Daughter of Adonai.
- Transfer His perfect Righteousness to us.

--- o0o ---



#### **4. LAYING ON OF HANDS**

Our hands are crucial instruments in God's service, during our daily walk. We touch, we comfort, we make contact with each other. Therefore, they have spiritual purposes to embrace. We are Adonai's vessels and God needs our bodies to abide in us. He uses our hands, mouths, ears, minds, emotions and feelings to express Himself to the world. God needs our hands to transmit His power and His authority to others. The laying on of hands brings continuity in the body of Christ, between a senior- and a junior pastor, between one generation and another. In the spiritual context it transmits blessings, authority, wisdom, the Holy Spirit, spiritual gifts and ministries.

#### **ADONAI IS THE ONE WHO APPOINTS**

God's kingdom is not based on any earthly principles. Most earthly systems are based on a voting system. The kingdom of heaven is not based on a voting system, but Adonai appoints who He elects. No man can appoint God's apostles, Prophets, Pastors, Evangelists and Teachers. What a pity that the voting system operates even in the institutional churches, when pastors are being appointed. This often has catastrophic results! **Adonai should always be the One who appoints! He says:**

*You did not choose me, **but I chose you and appointed you so that you might go and bear fruit, fruit that will last and so that whatever you ask in my name the Father will give you. John 15:16 NIV***

#### **PURPOSE**

What is the exact purpose of the laying on of hands?

It is:

To recognize, but not to appoint.  
To set apart.



- To transfer authority.
- To equip with spiritual gifts and authority.

We find many examples in both the Old and New Testament of people laying hands on others.

## **OLD TESTAMENT**

### **EPHRAIM & MANASSEH**

In Genesis 48 Joseph brought his two sons, Ephraim & Manasseh, to his father, Joseph. It was a common act of respect for parents to ask the grandparents for their blessing on the grandchildren. According to tradition the older son had to receive the father's right-hand blessing. But, in this case, Jacob insisted that the blessing will go first to the younger brother, Ephraim. He therefore crossed his hands, placing his right hand on Ephraim and the left on Manasseh. Jacob's blessings determined the future of these two sons of Joseph.

### **ELIJAH**

Adonai ordained the laying on of hands to transfer power, gifts, authority and blessings from one person to another. Hands are an instrument of the Lord. The hand of the Lord Himself came upon Elijah and he was empowered to outrun the chariots of the king. 1 Kings 18:46.

### **SIGNET RING**

*"And I will make you like my signet ring, for I have chosen you," declares the LORD Almighty. Haggai 2:23*

We are God's signet ring on His right hand. *A signet ring was used instead of, or together with, a signature, to give authentication to an official document.* He uses us as His signet ring to approve His works in





the body of Christ (*Download our book "To be His Signet Ring" on our website; [www.berashithministry.co.za](http://www.berashithministry.co.za)*).

### **ISAAC AND JACOB**

Isaac was supposed to bless Esau, his oldest son. But Jacob and his mother, Rebecca, betrayed him by pretending that Jacob was Esau. They covered his arms with animal skin, which made the blind Isaac to believe that he was the hairy Esau. Isaac's blessing was transferred to Jacob instead of to Esau. Once the blessing was transferred through the hands of Isaac, it could not be reversed. This blessing was later passed on from Jacob to his own 12 sons. Please read Genesis 49 to see how Jacob blessed and prophesied over each of his sons. These blessings again determined the destiny of each of his sons. Judah, for e.g. means praise. Jacob spoke the following blessing over his son, Judah:

*"Your brothers will praise you, Your hand will be on the neck of your enemies. Your father's sons will bow down to you, Judah, you are a lion cub. You have come back from the kill, my son. He lies down and rests like a lion. He is like a lioness. Who dares to disturb him? A scepter will never depart from Judah nor a ruler's staff from between his feet until Shiloh comes and the people obey him. Genesis 49:8-10*

*It is no coincidence that Yahshua is well-known as the lion of Judah!*

### **MOSES**

Adonai commanded Moses to lay hands on Joshua, thus transferring authority to him. *Notice that God appointed Joshua. He was not elected by a committee!*



*"Select Nun's son Joshua. The Spirit is in that man." the LORD answered Moses. "You are to lay your hand on him<sup>19</sup> and make him stand in front of Eleazar the priest and the entire community. Then you are to set him in charge right before their eyes,<sup>20</sup> turning over your authority to him so that the entire community of Israel knows to obey him. Numbers 27:18-20 KJV*

Moses understood that authority could only be passed to Joshua by the laying on of hands.

*And thou shalt put **some of thine honor upon him**, that all the congregation of the children of Israel may be obedient.<sup>21</sup> So Moses did what the LORD had commanded him. He took Joshua, made him stand in the presence of Eleazar the priest and the entire community,<sup>23</sup> laid his hands on him, and charged him, just as the LORD had commanded, using Moses' authority. Numbers 27:20-23 KJV*

Notice verse 20, which states that only some of Moses' authority should be put on Joshua and not all.

*Give to him some of your authority so that the whole community of Bnei-Yisrael will obey him. Numbers 27:20 TLV*

In the Book of Deuteronomy, we read that Joshua was full of the spirit of wisdom, after Moses had laid hands on him.

*Now Nun's son Joshua was full of the spirit of wisdom, because Moses had placed his hands on him, so Israelis listened to him and did what the LORD had commanded Moses. Deuteronomy 34:9 KJV*



Moses also had to lay hands on Aaron and his sons to receive divine impartation. Again, they were appointed by Adonai Himself and not by human election.

## **ELISHA**

Elisha received a double portion of blessing from Elijah. We read in 2 Kings 13:14-18 that Elisha, on his sick bed, put his hands upon the hands of the king, who held a bow and arrows. The king then shot an arrow toward the enemy to hit the target.

Even after Elisha's death his anointing was so strong that when they buried him and his bones touched a dead man, the man raised from the dead and stood up on his feet.

*And Elisha died, and they buried him. And the bands of the Moabites invaded the land at the coming in of the year. 21 And it came to pass, as they were burying a man, that, behold, they spied a band of men; and they cast the man into the sepulchre of Elisha: and when the man was let down, and touched the bones of Elisha, he revived, and stood up on his feet. 2 Kings 13:20-21 KJV*

## **NEW TESTAMENT**

The people of the New Testament understood the laying on of hands. They even brought their little children to Yahshua.

*Then were there brought unto him little children, that he should put his hands on them, and pray. Matthew 19:13  
KJV*

Mark 10:16 recorded that Yahshua took these little children in His arms and blessed them.



## **THE LAYING ON OF HANDS FOR HEALING**

### **JAIRUS**

When Jairus saw Yahshua in the synagogue, he begged the Messiah to come and lay hands on his dying daughter to heal her.

*"... and begged him urgently, saying, "My little daughter is dying. Come and lay your hands on her so that she may get well and live." Mark 5:23 ISV*

### **NAZARETH**

In his own hometown, Yahshua could not do mighty works because of the unbelief of the people, but he still laid His hands on the sick to heal them. (Mark 6:5)

### **THE BLIND MAN**

Jesus led a blind man out of the city, spat into his eyes, placed his hands on him and asked the man: "Do you see anything"? (Mark 8:23). Interesting that the man replied: "I see men as trees, walking (verse 24), implying that he could not yet see clearly. Yahshua had to put his hands on the man's eyes twice before his sight was restored (verse 25).

### **THE WOMAN WITH A DISABLING SPIRIT**

When Yahshua laid his hands on a woman with a disabling spirit, she was immediately made straight and glorified God (Luke 13:13).

In Mark 16 Yahshua gave us the great commission to go into the world and preach the gospel to every creature (verse 15). Then He said:

*They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; **they shall lay hands on the sick**, and they shall recover. Verse 18*



It is clear that Jesus commanded us to lay hands on the sick to receive their healing. James confirms:

*Are there any sick among you? Then ask the elders of the church to come and pray over the sick and anoint them with oil in the name of our Lord. <sup>15</sup> And the prayer of faith[s] will heal the sick and the Lord will raise them up, and if they have committed sins they will be forgiven. James 5:14-15 TPT*

*Now when the sun was setting, all they that had any sick with divers diseases brought them unto him; and **he laid his hands on every one** of them, and healed them. <sup>41</sup> And devils also came out of many, crying out, and saying, Thou art Christ the Son of God. And he rebuking them suffered them not to speak: for they knew that he was Christ. Luke 4:40-41 KJV*

Just before Yahshua's ascension, He led his disciples out of town, as far as Bethany. He lifted up his hands and blessed them (Luke 24:50). Jesus understood the fundamental principle of laying on of hands to heal the sick and to bless the people.

Although these are ample proof from scriptures, many people still do not believe in the laying on of hands to heal the sick. The reason why so many houses are collapsing, is the absence of an essential and fundamental foundation! This foundation includes the laying on of hands!

**“What are you using your hands for?”**  
**Yahshua needs your hands to heal His people!**



## **THE LAYING ON OF HANDS FOR THE IMPARTATION OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

John and Peter were sent to Samaria to lay their hands on the converts, so that they could receive the Holy Ghost.

*Then laid they their hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost. Acts 8:17 KJV*

They were immersed from above.

## **THE LAYING ON OF HANDS TO COMMISSION SERVANTS OF THE CHURCH**

Acts 6 states that the disciples could not do all the work themselves anymore. Extra helpers had to be appointed to assist them. Acts 6:3 says: "...whom we may appoint over this business". The helpers were appointed and not elected. The Greek word for deacon is a "servant" or a "helper". God only promotes the meek of heart, those who are willing to serve.

**"Are you serving others or are you waiting to be served?"**

## **LAYING ON OF HANDS TO SEPARATE PEOPLE FOR A SPECIFIC TASK**

In Acts 13 the Holy Ghost said: "*separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them*" (verse 2). Take note that as they worshiped, the Holy Spirit spoke. This implies that someone prophesied under the influence of the Holy Ghost. He appointed the best disciples for the job!

In Acts 14 a city was divided.

Paul and Barnabas preached the gospel with severe tribulation and prosecution. They appointed elders in all the churches by the laying on of hands.



*Confirming the souls of the disciples, and exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God. <sup>23</sup> And when they had **ordained them elders in every church**, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed. Acts 14:22-23*

Paul wrote to Timothy and gave him special instructions for the appointing of elders. These elders had to adhere to strict requirements. "Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honor, especially they who labor in the word and doctrine" (Timothy 5:17 KJV). Very few elders today are worthy of double honor, being underlaid in word and doctrine! We should be very careful to only appoint people who fit the profile as described in Titus and Timothy.

#### **LAYING ON OF HANDS FOR THE TRANSFERENCE OF GIFTS**

Paul reminded Timothy not to neglect the spiritual gifts he received, when Paul laid his hands upon Timothy.

*<sup>6</sup>I'm writing to encourage you to fan into a flame and rekindle the fire of the spiritual gift God imparted to you when I laid my hands upon you. 2 Timothy 1:6 TPT*

Note how these gifts were imparted by Adonai, using Paul's hands.

The laying on of hands was so important to the early believers that Paul longed to go to Rome to impart unto the believers some spiritual gifts.

*For I long to see you, that I may impart unto you some spiritual gift, to the end ye may be established. Romans 1:11 KJV*



---

**THE LAYING ON OF HANDS FOR PROPHECY (VERSUS FORTUNE-TELLING)**

The laying on of hands to receive prophecy should not be confused with fortune-telling. In Macedonia Paul met a woman, operating by the spirit of divination.

*<sup>16</sup> As we were on our way to the place of prayer, we were met by a slave girl who was possessed by a spirit of divination [claiming to foretell future events and to discover hidden knowledge], and she brought her owners much gain by her fortune-telling. <sup>17</sup> She kept following Paul and [the rest of] us, shouting loudly, These men are the servants of the Most High God! They announce to you the way of salvation! <sup>18</sup> And she did this for many days. Then Paul, being sorely annoyed and worn out, turned and said to the spirit within her, I charge you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her! And it came out that very moment.*

*<sup>19</sup> But when her owners discovered that their hope of profit was gone, they caught hold of Paul and Silas and dragged them before the authorities in the forum (marketplace), [where trials are held]. <sup>20</sup> And when they had brought them before the magistrates, they declared, These fellows are Jews and they are throwing our city into great confusion. <sup>21</sup> They encourage the practice of customs which it is unlawful for us Romans to accept or observe! <sup>22</sup> The crowd [also] joined in the attack upon them, and the rulers tore the clothes off of them and commanded that they be beaten with rods. <sup>23</sup> And when they had struck them with many blows, they threw them into prison, charging the jailer to keep them safely. Acts 2:16-23 TPT*





A warning to the reader: Be very conscious about who lays hands on you! If a person is in bondage, e.g. under the influence of the Jezebel spirit, pornography etc., those spirits may be transferred to you. Be very sensitive to the warning of the Holy Spirit. Grow unto spiritual maturity to be able to distinguish between good and evil. Paul could immediately identify the spirit of divination. This spirit on the other hand also immediately identified Paul and his travelers as people of God.

---

**The marks of the crucifixion remained in the hands of Christ, even after His resurrection – visible to eternity! In my own spirit I sense that this depicts just how important the acts of our hands are!**

---

--- o0o ---



---

## 5. RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD

The Greek word "**anastasis**" is translated into English as **resurrection**. When breaking this word up into two parts, we get "**ana**", which means "to repeat something" and "**stasis**" meaning "to stand".

*Thus, anastasis means to stand up or upright again or to arise again. In this case rising from the dead – resurrection.*

Jesus said: "I am the resurrection, and the life; he that believe in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live (John 11:25). What He meant is:

**"I AM STANDING UP IN POWER"**

***This implies that even if you are knocked down and flat on the ground, He has the power to put you back up on your feet again! He is the "anastasis", the Resurrection! He is our power to stand up!***

The most important principle of the doctrinal foundation, in my opinion, is the resurrection. Without resurrection, there is no hope, no Christianity, no faith. It is the central Doctrine of the Faith. If we have hope in Christ, only while we are living this earthly life, then we are of all men most miserable, Paul said to the Corinthians. We have a better hope, and that hope is in the resurrection of Christ Jesus.

*<sup>19</sup> If the only benefit of our hope in Christ is limited to this life on earth, we deserve to be pitied more than all others!*

*<sup>20</sup> But the truth is, Christ is risen from the dead, as the firstfruit of a great resurrection harvest of those who have died. 1 Corinthians 15:19-20 TPT*

We will later have a complete discussion on this resurrection harvest. Christ was risen from the dead, and He never died again. There will be yet another harvest of resurrection, but each according to its appropriate order.



*<sup>23</sup> But each one in his proper order: Christ, the firstfruits, then those who belong to Christ in his presence. 1 Corinthians 15:23 TPT*

Yahshua stood before the tomb of Lazarus and called him forth, and he came alive. But Lazarus died again! The Father resurrected His Son from the dead and He, our Messiah, will never die again! Glory to God! That is resurrection power!

Paul revealed this profound truth to us: *<sup>11</sup> Yes, God raised Jesus to life! **And since God's Spirit of Resurrection lives in you, he will also raise your dying body to life by the same Spirit that breathes life into you!*** Romans 8:11 TPT.

We have resurrection power in us. This is Dunamis power! Believers should not only acknowledge this Biblical truth, but they should also apply this "dynamite" power of Yehôvâh Elohim, that He put within us!

*The Messiah died for our sins, fulfilling the prophecies of the Scriptures.*

*<sup>4</sup> He was buried in a tomb and was raised from the dead after three days, as foretold in the Scriptures: <sup>5</sup> Then he appeared to Peter the Rock and to the twelve apostles: <sup>6</sup> He also appeared to more than five hundred of his followers at the same time, most of whom are still alive as I write this, though a few have passed away: <sup>7</sup> Then he appeared to Jacob and to all the apostles: <sup>8</sup> Last of all he appeared in front of me, like one born prematurely, ripped from the womb. 1 Corinthians 15:3-8 TPT*

Carefully read what Peter explains to us, when he too confirms that he was an eye-witness of the Messiah.



*<sup>16</sup> We were not retelling some masterfully crafted legend when we informed you of the power and appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ, for we saw his magnificence and splendor unveiled before our very eyes. <sup>17</sup> Yes, Father God lavished upon him radiant glory and honor when his distinct voice spoke out of the realm of majestic glory, endorsing him with these words: This is my cherished Son, marked by my love. All my delight is found in him! <sup>18</sup> And we ourselves heard that voice resound from the heavens while we were with him on the holy mountain. <sup>19</sup> **And so we have been given the prophetic word—the written message of the prophets, made more reliable and fully validated** by the confirming voice of God on the Mount of Transfiguration. And you will continue to do well if you stay focused on it. For this prophetic message is like a piercing light shining in a gloomy place until the dawning of a new day, when the Morning Star rises in your hearts.*

*2 Peter 1:16-19 TPT*

Peter wants us to realize that the prophetic word is more reliable and validated than any eye-witness. Let the reader take cognizance of this Biblical truth – the scriptures cannot be broken! (John 10:35)

## **Christ's Resurrection Confirmed in the Old Testament**

Let us look at the primary confirmation of Christ's resurrection in the prophetic scriptures of the Old Testament.

In Psalm 16 David speaks in the First Person:

*Because I set you, Yahweh, always close to me,  
my confidence will never be weakened,  
for I experience your wraparound presence every moment.*



<sup>9</sup> *My heart and soul explode with joy—full of glory!*

*Even my body will rest confident and secure.*

<sup>10</sup> ***For you will not abandon me to the realm of death, nor will you allow your Faithful One to experience corruption.***

<sup>11</sup> *Because of you, I know the path of life,*

*as I taste the fullness of joy in your presence.*

*At your right side I experience divine pleasures forevermore!*

*Ps 16:8-11 TPT*

The Jubilee Bible clearly states that He will not leave my (referring to Christ) soul in Sheol (verse 10).

*I have set the LORD always before me: because when he is at my right hand, I shall not be moved: <sup>9</sup> Therefore my heart is glad, and my glory rejoices: my flesh also shall rest secure: <sup>10</sup> For thou wilt not leave my soul in Sheol; neither wilt thou suffer thy Merciful One to see corruption: <sup>11</sup> Thou wilt show me the path of life: in thy presence is fullness of joy; in thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore.*

Now Peter spoke to the people on the day of Pentecost, just after the outpouring of the Holy Ghost and said: "...whom God has raised up, having loosed the pains of death because it was not possible for him to be held by it. <sup>25</sup> For David speaks concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved, <sup>26</sup> therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover even my flesh shall rest in hope <sup>27</sup> because thou wilt not leave my soul in Hades, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. <sup>28</sup> Thou hast made known to me the ways of life; thou shalt make me full of joy with thy countenance". Acts 2:24-28



We see that Peter quoted David in Psalm 16, referring to the prophetic word that Sheol (*Hebrew for Hades*) could not hold the Messiah, nor did His body see any corruption. Peter explains:

*Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day.*

*<sup>30</sup> Therefore being a prophet and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up the Christ to sit on his throne; <sup>31</sup> he, seeing this before, spoke of the resurrection of the Christ, that his soul was not left in Hades, neither did his flesh see corruption. <sup>32</sup> This Jesus God has raised up, of whom we all are witnesses. Acts 2:29-32*

Look at these profound words David wrote in Psalm 71. He now refers to "US", instead of "him".

*Even though you've let **us** sink down with trials and troubles,*

*I know you will revive **us** again,*

*lifting us up from the dust of death.*

*<sup>21</sup> Give **us** even more greatness than before.*

*Turn and comfort **us** once again. Psalm 71:20-21 TPT*

Clearly, we see that the Old Testament prophetic word declared that Christ would be raised from the dead and we would be raised with Christ one day.

What a glorious and victorious day that was, when the Father raised His Son from the dead and stripped all the powers and principalities of darkness!



*Then Jesus made a public spectacle of all the powers and principalities of darkness, stripping away from them every weapon and all their spiritual authority and power to accuse us. And by the power of the cross, Jesus led them around as prisoners in a procession of triumph. He was not their prisoner; they were his! Col 2:15 TPT*

The foundational New Testament scripture of the resurrection is recorded by Paul in his first epistle to the Corinthians.

*"For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins **according to the scriptures**; <sup>4</sup> And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day **according to the scriptures**. 1 Corinthians 15:3-4*

The apostles had access only to the Old Testament. They knew the Old Testament Scriptures. Paul referred to these prophetic words in the Old Testament.

Christ's resurrection is the cornerstone of our FAITH!

Hosea also prophesied that we will be revived after two days and that He will raise us up on the third day.

***Come, and let us return unto the LORD: for he hath torn, and he will heal us; he hath smitten, and he will bind us up. <sup>2</sup> After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight. Hosea 6:1-2 KJV***

This Old Testament prophecy not only brought facts, but also revealed inner spiritual significance of the facts stated and predicted. The first is the prediction that the resurrection of Christ would take place on the 3<sup>rd</sup> day. The second is that His resurrection would indeed also be our resurrection!



When the Father raised His Son from the dead, Yahshua stripped the enemy from all the powers and principalities. He quickened US together with Christ and raised US up together with Him. We are seated together with Christ in heavenly places. SAINTS, we are already victorious, because of Christ's resurrection!

*But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, <sup>5</sup> Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)<sup>6</sup> And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus Ephesians 2:4-6*

When we lay down the foundation, according to the doctrine of Christ, we have to acknowledge the importance of our baptism. The outward act of the above-mentioned scripture is our water baptisms.

***Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead. Colossians 2:12***

How can there be any doubt in the believer that, to be risen with Christ, there first must be a funeral! Our bodies have to be buried.

***Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. Romans 6:4***

When we believe in Him and are baptized, we are identified with His burial and resurrection and are seated with Him in the heavenly realm on the throne. There is, however, a condition: "If we follow on to know Him".

*Then shall we know, if we follow on to know the LORD: his going forth is prepared as the morning; and he shall*





*come unto us as the rain, as the latter and former rain unto the earth. Hosea 6:3 KJV*

Resurrection is only for those believers who pursue and follow on to know the Lord. Then follows the latter rain. Scriptures mention the early and the latter rain. The latter rain refers to the outpouring of the Holy Ghost. Jesus died and his body was buried, but on the third day Christ was raised up from the dead. Likewise, the believer must also participate in Christ's death, burial and resurrection. That takes place through our baptisms, as explained in Part 2. We too are now identified with Christ's resurrection. Christ ascended into the heavens and returned to His Father, but promised that He would never leave us, nor forsake us! He promised to send us the Holy Spirit to help us in our walk on earth. We can say that Christ ascended and at the same time returned to us in the form of the Holy Spirit.

*Let us pause here for a moment, until this profound truth sinks in deeply! We need to fully grasp and understand the importance of our baptisms in order to **participate in all the benefits that Christ's death, burial and resurrection provided for us.***

*I discovered exactly why the apostles preached only this pure message of the gospel, which is His death, burial and resurrection. Paul was very adamant, when he wrote to the Galatians that if anyone would preach any other gospel, let him be accursed.*

Christ commanded us to be a witness of this gospel and for this purpose we need the Holy Spirit.

*"But ye shall receive the virtue of the Holy Spirit which shall come upon you, and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem and in all*



*Judaea and in Samaria and unto the uttermost part of the earth.” Acts 1:8*

***Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ. <sup>8</sup> But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. Galatians 1:7-8 KJV***

## **THE WITNESSES**

“For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures; <sup>4</sup> And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures: <sup>5</sup> And that he was seen of Cephas, then of the twelve: <sup>6</sup> After that, he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once; of whom the greater part remain unto this present, but some are fallen asleep. <sup>7</sup> After that, he was seen of James; then of all the apostles. <sup>8</sup> And last of all he was seen of me also, as of one born out of due time.” 1 Corinthians 15:3-8 KJV

In the epistle of Paul to the Corinthians the follow facts were recorded:

Christ died, was buried and rose again.

It happened according to the scriptures and was already predicted in the Old Testament.

There were several eye-witnesses, as recorded in the New Testament:

Cephas (Peter) - Luke 24:33-34),

Twelve disciples - Acts 1:1-3; John 20:19-22

Two men on the road to Emmaus – Luke 24

Five hundred other men – 1 Corinthians 15:6

James, and other disciples – 1 Corinthians 15:7

Paul - 1 Corinthians 15:8



*And last of all he was seen of me also, as of one born out of due time.*

*<sup>9</sup> Yes, I am the most insignificant of all the apostles, unworthy even to be called an apostle, because I hunted down believers and persecuted God's church (1 Corinthians 15:8-9 KJV).*

Notice Paul's humble heart as he sees himself as the most insignificant, unworthy one, because he had persecuted the church of Christ. These are the facts proving that you have been SAVED! Henceforth, the apostle thoroughly preached only this message of the gospel of Jesus Christ!

His Death,  
His Burial and  
His Resurrection.

This gospel was tested in Old Testament prophecies and it was also tested by reliable witnesses. May the Lord open our eyes and ears for this revelation as Isaiah states:

***The Lord GOD hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back. <sup>6</sup> I gave my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair: I hid not my face from shame and spitting. Isaiah 50:5-6 KJV***

## **BEGOTTEN AGAIN / BORN AGAIN**

The Old Testament already prophesied and foresaw our born-again experience, that would follow after Christ's resurrection.

*After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight. Hosea 6:2*

We are identified with his death and resurrection. Even though we were dead, He made us alive, raised us up and seated us with Him.

*But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, <sup>5</sup> Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are*



*saved;)* <sup>6</sup> *And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus. Ephesians 2:4-6 KJV*

Notice that "alive together" is mentioned three times. It is written in the past tense, which confirms that it has already been accomplished. We are buried with Him in baptism (Romans 6:4; Colossians 2:12).

*For it is written: The first man, Adam, became a living soul. The last Adam became the life-giving Spirit. <sup>46</sup> However, the spiritual didn't come first. The natural precedes the spiritual. <sup>47</sup> The first man was from the dust of the earth; the second Man is Yahweh, from the realm of heaven. <sup>48</sup> The first one, made from dust, has a race of people just like him, who are also made from dust. The One sent from heaven has a race of heavenly people who are just like him. <sup>49</sup> Once we carried the likeness of the man of dust, but now let us carry the likeness of the man of heaven. 1 Corinthians 15:45-49 TPT*

In this passage we clearly see how we, as believers, are being transformed:

From the old creation to the new creation.  
From the First Man, who was a living being, to the Last Adam,  
who became a live giving spirit!  
The First Man was from the dust of the earth, but the Second  
Man was from heaven!  
He rose on the 3<sup>rd</sup> day and is now the Head of the new creation  
man!

"Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath **begotten us** again unto a **lively hope** by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, <sup>4</sup> To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you, <sup>5</sup> Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time." 1 Peter 1:3-5 KJV



The ISV states in verse 3 that, because of His great mercy He has **granted us a new birth**, resulting in an immortal hope, through the resurrection of Jesus, the Messiah, from the dead. "Has begotten us" means a new birth. This new birth came through the resurrection of Jesus.

Now we can see that, without the resurrection of Christ, there can be no new birth. A new birth cannot be established by man's effort! It is a gift of God, so that no man can boast in his salvation.

*"Salvation is not a reward for the good things we have done, so none of us can boast about it". Ephesians 2:9 NLT*

He has begotten us. In other words, He granted us a new birth, which is our living hope and a life in Christ Jesus. We pass over from the old nature into the new order. We become a new race, an Emmanuel race, with Messiah as the Head. We are now the "GOD WITH US" race! We have received a new source of life in Christ, who is in heaven.

***Christ's resurrection is your resurrection too. This is why we are to yearn for all that is above, for that's where Christ sits enthroned at the place of all power, honor, and authority!***<sup>2</sup> *Yes, feast on all the treasures of the heavenly realm and fill your thoughts with heavenly realities, and not with the distractions of the natural realm.*<sup>3</sup> *Your crucifixion with Christ has severed the tie to this life, and now your true life is hidden away in God in Christ.*<sup>4</sup> ***And as Christ himself is seen for who he really is, who you really are will also be revealed, for you are now one with him in his glory! Colossians 3:1-4***  
TPT

Meditate on the following:



We are now born from above, just as the second Adam is from above. Our resources are not from the earthly realm – every need is covered and provided for. O, how many of us struggle to grasp and to live this promise while living our earthly life. We are at rest, because we also sit enthroned with Christ and has all the power and authority given to us.

Why are you still so destructed by the earthly realities? Our thoughts are supposed to be filled with heavenly realities. Christ's death, burial and resurrection bring us into righteousness, we have received our right standing before the throne. For the believer, seeing the man "in the mirror" is seeing how God sees us from the beginning, even before the fall of Adam, which resulted in sin's devastation to human hearts.

The man in the mirror is the new creation man (*James 1:24 TPT*).

Paul wrote:

*<sup>16</sup> So no wonder we don't give up. For even though our outer person gradually wears out, our inner being is renewed every single day. <sup>17</sup> We view our slight, short-lived troubles in the light of eternity. We see our difficulties as the substance that produces for us an eternal, weighty glory far beyond all comparison, <sup>18</sup> because we don't focus our attention on what is seen but on what is unseen. For what is seen is temporary, but the unseen realm is eternal. 2 Corinthians 4:16-18 TPT*



## JUSTIFICATION

Because of His righteousness, we are justified. That means to be made right with Christ, after the first Adam had failed. Because of Christ's resurrection, we have right standing with Adonai. Let us have a look at the example of Abraham, as explained to us in Romans:

*He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; <sup>21</sup> And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform. <sup>22</sup> **And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness. <sup>23</sup> Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him; <sup>24</sup> But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead; <sup>25</sup> Who was delivered for our offenses, and was raised again for our justification.** Romans 4:20-25*

Paul understood this. He used Abraham as an example to tell the New Testament believer that righteousness was imputed onto Abraham, because of his faith and not for keeping any law. Now we too have to receive this righteousness through faith! We have to believe that Christ delivered us from all our offenses and justified us through His resurrection!

***Let us take note that we cannot earn our right standing before God for keeping any law or by doing anything right! It is solely because Christ was raised from the dead for our justification!***

Christ's resurrection brings justification to the believer. Righteousness was credited to us for free – we did not earn it! Now we must exercise the same faith that Abraham did to receive our righteousness. Christ paid in full the final penalty for our sins. God's justice was satisfied by



Jesus' death. By His resurrection, the Father provided complete righteousness to the believer. My dear brother and sister, if Christ was not alive, we would still be lost in our sins and our faith would be a fantasy (1 Corinthians 15:17 TPT). By His resurrection He reversed that unrighteous penalty to death.

*For God made the only one who did not know sin to become sin for us, so that we might become the righteousness of God through our union with him (2 Corinthians 5:21 TPT).*

This justification that Christ brought along, made us completely righteous. It is as if we have never sinned. Complete sinlessness is the only righteousness ever accepted in heaven.

## **COMMITMENT**

Many make it unto salvation, but few ever make a sincere commitment to the Christian life.

***But we receive the faith-righteousness that speaks an entirely different message:*** "Don't for a moment think you need to climb into the heavens to find the Messiah and bring him down, <sup>7</sup> or to descend into the underworld to bring him up from the dead."<sup>8</sup> *But the faith-righteousness we receive speaks to us in these words of Moses:*

*"God's living message is very close to you, as close as your own heart beating in your chest and as near as the tongue in your mouth."*

<sup>9</sup>*And what is God's "living message"? **It is the revelation of faith for salvation, which is the message that we preach. For if you publicly declare with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God***





***raised him from the dead, you will experience salvation. <sup>10</sup> The heart that believes in him receives the gift of the righteousness of God—and then the mouth confesses, resulting in salvation. Romans 10:6-10 TPT***

Here we find two requirements, namely believing in the heart, which brings us righteousness, and confessing with our mouth, which brings salvation. Notice the commitment to His Lordship, which is key for our salvation. Christ's victory over the enemy is also our victory over all enemies, yes, even DEATH. We have to realize that our bodies are perishing and that we have a better hope of resurrection. Christianity is the only religion that has an answer to the problem of death, because of Christ's resurrection.

John was the beloved disciple of Jesus. He knew the Messiah well as the carpenter's son, but when he saw the resurrected Messiah in a vision on the Isle of Patmos, he fell to the ground like a dead man (Revelation 1:10-18).

Revelation tells of his experience:

*I was in the spirit realm on the Lord's day, and I heard behind me a loud voice sounding like a trumpet, <sup>11</sup> saying to me:*

*Write in a book what you see and send it to the seven churches: to Ephesus, to Smyrna, to Pergamum, to Thyatira, to Sardis, to Philadelphia, and to Laodicea. <sup>12</sup> When I turned to see the voice that was speaking to me, I saw seven golden lampstands. <sup>13</sup> And walking among the lampstands, I saw someone like a son of man, wearing a full-length robe with a golden sash over his chest. <sup>14</sup> His head and his hair were white like wool—white as glistening*



snow. And his eyes were like flames of fire!<sup>15</sup> His feet were gleaming like bright metal, as though they were glowing in a fire, and his voice was like the roar of many rushing waters.<sup>16</sup> In his right hand he held seven stars, and out of his mouth was a sharp, double-edged sword. And his face was shining like the brightness of the blinding sun!<sup>17</sup> When I saw him, I fell down at his feet as good as dead, but he laid his right hand on me and I heard his reassuring voice saying:

**Don't yield to fear. I am the Beginning and I am the End,<sup>18</sup> the Living One! I was dead, but now look—I am alive forever and ever. And I hold the keys that unlock death and the unseen world.**

*Revelation 1:10-18 TPT*

In His own words, the Messiah declared: "I was dead, but now I am alive and hold the keys of death".

Do you want to experience resurrection or are you only living an earthly life, without any hope of an eternal future?

*Hades and Death are evil angels ruling over darkness. We read in Revelation 6:8 of the pale horse, and the name of him that sat on it was **death. Hades** followed him to kill.*

***Being satanic angels, Death claims the bodies of the dead and Hades claims their souls!***

*But Jesus went into those places and stripped them from all their power and principalities.*

*Then Jesus made a public spectacle of all the powers and principalities of darkness, stripping away from them every weapon and all their spiritual authority and power to*



*accuse us. And by the power of the cross, Jesus led them around as prisoners in a procession of triumph. He was not their prisoner; they were his! Col 2:15 TPT*

*Notice that death has already been defeated, but not yet destroyed. One day when Christ calls all of us unto resurrection, in a twinkling of an eye we will be changed and will receive our glorified bodies!*

*Until then he is destined to reign as King until all hostility has been subdued and placed under his feet. <sup>26</sup> And the last enemy to be subdued and eliminated is death itself. 1 Corinthians 15:25-26 TPT*

*And when that which is mortal puts on immortality, and what now decays is exchanged for what will never decay, then the Scripture will be fulfilled that says:*

*Death is swallowed up by a triumphant victory!*

*<sup>55</sup> So death, tell me, where is your victory? Tell me death, where is your sting? 1 Corinthians 15:54-55 TPT*

Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? *Shall* tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? (Romans 8:35 KJV). Not even death can separate us from His love!

Remember, in the promises of God, we receive provision.

*"Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God: and they that hear shall live" (John 5:25 KJV).*

Are you hearing His voice, that you might live and never experience death?



In John 8, Yahshua had a conversation with the Jewish traditional leaders, the Pharisees. He declared to them:

*<sup>51</sup> I speak to you this eternal truth: **whoever cherishes my words and keeps them will never experience death.***

What a pity that these leaders were so captive in their human customs and traditions, that they simply could not understand the Messiah's speech.

*<sup>52</sup> This prompted the Jewish leaders to say, "Now we know for sure that you're demon possessed! You just said that those who keep watch over your words will never experience death, but Abraham and all the prophets have died! <sup>53</sup> Do you think you're greater than our father Abraham and all the prophets? You are so delusional about yourself that you make yourself greater than you are!"  
John 8:51-52*

When we listen to the Messiah and obey His voice, we shall never see nor taste death. There are no more claims on us. We are not going down into the kingdom of darkness, but UPWARDS into the heavens. When Stephen, the first martyr, was stoned to death, he looked up and saw the heavens opened.

*And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God. <sup>57</sup> Then they cried out with a loud voice, and stopped their ears, and ran upon him with one accord, <sup>58</sup> And cast him out of the city, and stoned him: and the witnesses laid down their clothes at a young man's feet, whose name was Saul. <sup>59</sup> And they stoned Stephen, calling upon God, and saying, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit. Acts 7:56-59 TPT*



These words that Stephan cried out, was his final words.

“Christ is the Head of his body, which is the church. And since he is the beginning and the firstborn heir in resurrection, he is the most exalted One, holding first place in everything.” Colossians 1:18 TPT

*Holding the first place, implies that others will follow. Christ's resurrection means a birth from the dead. He emerged from the dead. When a baby is born, the head is the first part that becomes visible. Jesus is the Head of the church. Then the body, which is us, will follow Him in resurrection!*

## SEATED IN RULERSHIP

*<sup>4</sup> From John to the seven churches in western Turkey: May the kindness of God's grace and peace overflow to you from him who is, and who was, and who is coming, and from the seven spirits who are in front of his throne, <sup>5</sup> and from Jesus Christ the **Faithful Witness**, the Firstborn from among the dead and the ruling King, who rules over the kings of the earth! Revelation 1:4-5 TPT*

Here in Revelation, John reported seeing the 7 Spirits (Isaiah 11) and Yahshua, the firstborn from the dead, in front of the throne. I believe these Spirits minister to us to make it unto salvation! They are all faithful witnesses who now rule over the earth.

Resurrection leads to the throne and to rulership!

Christ, the First Born of the resurrection harvest, is already sitting on the throne, ruling over the earth! We, as His body, will follow! John confirms this in Chapter 20, when he describes thrones and they that sat upon them.



*"And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them". Revelation 20:4*

<sup>11</sup>You can trust these words: *"If we were joined with him in his death, then we are joined with him in his life! <sup>12</sup>If we are joined with him in his sufferings, then we will reign together with him in his triumph"*. But if we disregard him, then he will also disregard us. <sup>13</sup>But even if we are faithless, he will still be full of faith, for he never wavers in his faithfulness to us! (2 Timothy 2:11-13 TPT).

## **OVERCOMERS**

*"To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my Father in his throne."*  
Revelation 3:21 KJV

## **TO BE A WITNESS**

Just before Yahshua ascended into heaven, He declared that we will be His witnesses:

*But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you; and you will be my **witnesses** in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth."* Acts 1:8 NIV

It was only recently that my understanding broadened, and I realized that, just as the apostles were witnesses of Yahshua's death, burial and resurrection, we have to be witnesses too. When Yahshua ascended, the world could not see Him anymore, but we, as believers, can still see Him.

*Before long, the world will not see me anymore, but you will see me. Because I live, you also will live. John 14:19*  
NIV



Acts 1 reveals a worth to be noted aspect of resurrection. Yahshua shared with His disciples the order in which different groups of people will be resurrected.

What He in fact said, was: For the times and seasons only the Father knows, but let me tell you, before this can happen, I will return to the earth in the form of the Holy Ghost. Those to whom I will return, will receive power to be my witnesses that I am alive! Now, you go and be my witnesses around the world, that the Messiah had come, He died, He was buried, and He was raised from the dead. That is the gospel to be preached so that those who hear and accept (do) will be resurrected too.

*When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel? <sup>7</sup> And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power. <sup>8</sup> But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be **witnesses** unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth. Acts 1:6-8 KJV*

To be an effective witness, we need the infilling of the Holy Spirit. We need supernatural power to bear witness to this supernatural event. Not in our own power and knowledge will this be possible. That was the reason Jesus told His disciples to go back to Jerusalem and wait to receive this power given to them by the infilling of the Ruach HaKodesh. Only then would they be witnesses to Him.

Yahshua adjusted their priorities. He said to them that, before He would return for the restoration of Israel, they would first need to be witnesses



for Him. This is why all believers have to be witnesses to His resurrection.

When the disciples had to choose a replacement for Judas Iscariot, they made sure to choose a believer who could also be a witness of His resurrection.

*<sup>21</sup> "So then, we must choose his replacement from among those who have been with us from the very beginning, <sup>22</sup> from John's baptism until Jesus' ascension. And, like us, he must be a witness of his resurrection." Acts 1:21-22*

After the Holy Ghost came down and filled the 120 men in the upper room in Jerusalem, they bore witness and testified about the Lord's resurrection.

*The apostles gave powerful testimonies about the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and great measures of grace rested upon them all. Acts 4:33 TPT*

Saints, we need to also spread this message that Christ has risen from the dead! The church is preaching a contaminated message, leading many astray, instead of witnessing to them the resurrection of Yahshua.

### **Have you personally experienced the Messiah as your Risen Lord?**

#### **OUR HOPE**

The doctrine of Christ points us to the resurrection of the dead and to eternal judgment. The moment we understand this, the veil is lifted, and it becomes possible to see and to understand that Christ will indeed come back to take us where He is – His Father's house!

Paul was on trial in front of Felix, only because he believed in the resurrection of the dead (Acts 24:21). In verse 15 Paul mentioned to Felix that his hope was not in him, Felix, who had the power to free him





from prison, but his hope was in God – the hope of a resurrection from the dead. Felix was able to put Paul’s body to death, but Paul’s hope was in His God, who would resurrect him from the dead.

*15 And my hope is in God, the same hope that even my accusers have embraced, the hope of a resurrection from the dead of both the righteous and the unrighteous. Acts 25:15 TPT*

Paul quotes Jesus on the resurrection of the dead, both of the righteous and of the unrighteous.

*25 "I speak to you eternal truth: **Soon the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who listen will arise with life!** 26 For the Father has given the Son the power to impart life, even as the Father imparts life. 27 The Father has transferred to the Son the authority to judge, because he is the Son of Man.*

*28 "So don't be amazed when I tell you these things, for there is a day coming when all who have ever died will hear my voice **calling them back to life,** 29 and they will come out of their graves! **Those who have done what is good will experience a resurrection to eternal life. And those who have practiced evil will taste the resurrection that brings them to condemnation!***

*John 5:25-29 TPT*

When Paul referred to the righteous and the unrighteous, it was an indication that the righteous would be resurrected to eternal life, but the unrighteous to eternal condemnation. Paul received a revelation and explained in 1 Corinthians 15 that Christ had risen from the dead as the first fruit of a great resurrection harvest and that each one (the righteous and the unrighteous) would be resurrected in his proper order!



*<sup>20</sup> But the truth is, Christ is risen from the dead, as the first fruit of a great resurrection harvest of those who have died.*

*<sup>21</sup> For since death came through a man, Adam, it is fitting that the resurrection of the dead has also come through a man, Christ. <sup>22</sup> Even as all who are in Adam die, so also all who are in Christ will be made alive. <sup>23</sup> But each one in his proper order: Christ, the first fruits, then those who belong to Christ in his presence. 1 Corinthians 15:20-23 TPT*

In John 14:19 Jesus assured his disciples, still living and standing alive in front of Him: **“You will come alive too”**.

*<sup>19</sup> Soon I will leave this world and they will see me no longer, but you will see me, because I will live again, and you will come alive too. John 14:19 TPT*

**This means, saints, that on that day, when His voice calls us to be resurrected, not all of us will be dead.** This is confirmed in his epistle to the Corinthians:

*<sup>51</sup> **Listen, and I will tell you a divine mystery: not all of us will die, but we will all be transformed.** 1 Corinthians 15:51 TPT*

Please read 1 Corinthians 15 in the Passion Translation to understand Paul’s clear explanation that the first man (Adam) was from the dust of the earth and the second Man (Lord Jehovah) from the realm of heaven. The first Adam has a race of earthly people just like him and the One sent from heaven has a race of heavenly people just like Him. There are earthly bodies and heavenly bodies. Flesh and blood are not able to inherit God’s kingdom realm, neither will that which is decaying be able to inherit what is incorruptible.

Now Paul says that not all of us will die, but we all will be changed and transformed. This will happen when we slip out of this perishable body



into the imperishable to receive our new heavenly bodies, able to inherit the kingdom of God.

*<sup>52</sup> It will happen in an instant—in the twinkling of his eye. For when the last trumpet is sounded, the dead will come back to life. We will be indestructible and we will be transformed. <sup>53</sup> For we will discard our mortal “clothes” and slip into a body that is imperishable. What is mortal now will be exchanged for immortality. <sup>54</sup> And when that which is mortal puts on immortality, and what now decays is exchanged for what will never decay. 1 Corinthians 15:52-54 TPT*

## THE DIFFERENT HARVESTS

In my own search for the truth, I asked the Lord why there is so much confusion about the “**rapture**” of the church. God gave me the answer:

***“The mystery is revealed in the harvest!”***

Scriptures opened up to me to reveal the different harvests, as Paul said: “Christ has risen as the first fruit of a great resurrection harvest”. This clearly indicates a harvest to follow. “But each one in his proper order” indicates not all will be of the same harvest!

*<sup>20</sup> But the truth is, Christ is risen from the dead, **as the first fruit of a great resurrection harvest of those who have died.** <sup>21</sup> For since death came through a man, Adam, it is fitting that the resurrection of the dead has also come through a man, Christ. <sup>22</sup> Even as all who are in Adam die, so also all who are in Christ will be made alive. <sup>23</sup> But each one in his proper order: Christ, the first fruits,*



*then those who belong to Christ in his presence.  
1 Corinthians 15:20-23 TPT*

For more clarity, listen to the rest of Paul's explanation:

***38** But when it dies, God gives it a new form, a body to fulfill his purpose, and he sees to it that each **seed gets a new body** of its own and becomes the plant he designed it to be. 1 Corinthians 15:38 TPT*

Different seeds yield different harvests and that is exactly what John wrote in the Book of Revelation:

### **The Harvest of the Earth**

***14** I looked and behold—I saw a white cloud, and sitting upon it was one like the Son of Man, wearing a golden crown and holding a sharp sickle. **15** Another angel came out of the temple, shouting out to the one sitting upon the cloud, "Take your sickle and reap, for the time of reaping the harvest has come and the harvest of the earth is ripe!" **16** So the one sitting upon the white cloud gave his sickle a mighty swing over the earth and reaped its harvest. **17** Then another angel came out of the heavenly temple, and he too had a sharp sickle. **18** And another angel came out from the altar of incense—the angel with authority over fire. He shouted out with a loud voice to the one who had the sharp sickle, saying, "Take now your sharp sickle and harvest the clusters of the vine of the earth, for its grapes are ripe." **19** So the angel gave his sickle a mighty swing over the earth and gathered the grapes from the vine of the earth and threw them into the great winepress of the wrath of God. **20** And the winepress was trodden outside the city*



*until blood poured out of the winepress as high as the horse's bridle for a distance of one thousand six hundred stadia. Revelation 14:14-20 TPT*

We clearly identify three different harvests, by studying the ancient Jewish tradition of harvests.

The Barley Harvest.

The Wheat Harvest.

The Wine Harvest.

The **Barley Harvest** is those people who have come into spiritual maturity before others. Barley is harvested by winnowing, which symbolizes this group of people (the called-out ones, the Bride of Christ), being harvested under the correction of the Ruach HaKodesh.

**Wheat**, however, requires a more severe method of harvesting, predominantly because of the hardening of the chaff. Wheat in ancient Jewish tradition was harvested (after the Barley Harvest) with a tribunal, which is where the word tribulation comes from. The wheat is part of the body of Christ, but these people have not yet reached spiritual maturity. This group of people needs further correction, while going through the tribulation, in order to be ready to be harvested.

The final harvest is the **Wine Harvest**, which indicates the nation of Israel. A small remnant will survive the great Tribulation, although at first, they will be misled by the false messiah. Their eyes will be opened to receive their true Messiah, Yahshua HaMashiach. They are the elect, and the angels will gather together the elect from the four winds of the earth.

*And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.*

*Matthews 24:31 KJV*



## FOUNDATION

Consider the following foundational concepts:

When we embrace Yahshua HaMashiach, we will experience life-giving light and will never again walk in darkness – John 8:12

When we cherish His words and keep them in our hearts, we will never experience death – John 8:51

For those who embrace Him, cherish His words and keep it, Yahshua is preparing a place in His Father's house.

He promises that He will come back to fetch us and that we will forever be with Him to rest.

That day, when He comes back to fetch us, is the day when His voice will call both the dead in Christ and those who remain alive on earth, back to Him.

Yahshua promises that there will be two resurrections. Firstly, the resurrection of the dead in Christ, who will be resurrected unto eternal life. Secondly those who have done evil and who will be resurrected unto eternal damnation.

Christ has been resurrected from the dead as the first fruits of a resurrection harvest. Likewise, will we all one day be resurrected. **But each one in its appropriate order.**

The doctrine of resurrection points us to different seeds that will bring forth different harvests.

These harvests will be ready at different seasons and times.

--- o0o ---



## 6. ETERNAL JUDGMENT

According to Hebrews 6, the doctrine of Christ clearly indicates that eternal judgment will follow resurrection.

**This Biblical truth gives us further information to help us unveil the mystery of the second coming of Christ Jesus, our Messiah, Yahshua HaMashiach.**

### JUDGMENT FOLLOWS RESURRECTION

It is a Biblical principal that God never judges the righteous together with the unrighteous. Only to mention one example - the Angels could not destroy the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, before Lot and his family were removed.

*"Hurry and take refuge there, for I cannot do anything [to punish Sodom] until you arrive there." For this reason the town was named Zoar (few, small). Genesis 19:22 AMP*

We can be assured of this Biblical principal, because the Lord cannot and will never violate His word. He will never break His promise to come back for us and He will never judge us (the righteous) along with the unbelievers (the unrighteous).

*God can't break his word. And because **his word cannot change**, the promise is likewise unchangeable. Hebrews 6:18 KJV*

***My covenant will I not break, nor alter the thing that is gone out of my lips. Psalms 89:34 KJV***



Hebrews explains that if God should violate His word, the whole universe would be destructed. This is powerful, as Yehôvâh Elohim upholds the universe by the word of His power!

*..... upholding all things by the word of his power,  
Hebrews 1:3 KJV*

Studying and understanding the different resurrections and judgments will help us to better understand the "snatching away" of the called-out ones.

### **The Likeness of His Resurrection**

Paul explains:

*<sup>5</sup>For since we are permanently grafted into him to experience a death like his, then we are permanently grafted into him to **experience a resurrection like his and the new life that it imparts.** Romans 6:5 TPT*

Paul wrote to the Philippians that "**I may know him and the power of his resurrection**" (Philippians 3:10 KJV).

**Christ's resurrection is the resurrection of the called-out ones!**

Colossians 3:1 TPT

### **BLESSING OR PUNISHMENT**

Since the beginning God has rewarded the righteous, those who obey Him. On the other hand, there has always been judgment or punishment for disobedience.

*Thou shalt have no other gods before me. <sup>4</sup> Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth: <sup>5</sup> Thou*





*shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, **visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;** <sup>6</sup> And shewing mercy unto thousands of them that love me, and keep my commandments. Exodus 20:3-6 KJV*

Throughout the Old Testament we see Israel's disobedience. They constantly rebelled against Adonai and went astray into idolatry. Punishment of disobedience are repaid to the fourth generation, but for those who obey, the reward stretches unto thousand generations.

*You, the great God, the mighty one, show gracious love to thousands and repay the parents' iniquity to their children after them. The LORD of the Heavenly Armies is his name. Jeremiah 32:18 ISV*

*But Lord, your endless love stretches from one eternity to the other, unbroken and unrelenting toward those who fear you and those who bow face down in awe before you. Your faithfulness to keep every gracious promise you've made passes from parents, to children, to grandchildren, and beyond. <sup>18</sup> You are faithful to all those who follow your ways and keep your word. Psalm 103:17-18 TPT*

**We are directly responsible for either the success or the punishment of our generations.**

## **ETERNAL JUDGMENT**

In the Book of Ezekiel, we see that souls belong to the Lord, but they are suffering, because of the sin of their fathers.

*The word of the LORD came unto me again, saying, <sup>2</sup> What mean ye, that ye use this proverb concerning the land of*



*Israel, saying, The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the children's teeth are set on edge? <sup>3</sup> As I live, saith the Lord GOD, ye shall not have occasion any more to use this proverb in Israel. <sup>4</sup> Behold, all souls are mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: the soul that sinneth, it shall die. Ezekiel 18:1-4 KJV*

“If the clouds be full of rain, they empty *themselves* upon the earth: and if the tree fall toward the south, or toward the north, in the place where the tree falleth, there it shall be.” Ecclesiastes 11:3 KJV

***Where the tree falls, there it will remain. This indicates that the condition you are in when you die, will determine your eternal condition.***

## **PRINCIPLES**

In the Book of Romans, we find five principles of God’s judgment:

### **Judgment according to the truth.**

***God is always right, because He has the facts!***

*<sup>2</sup> We know that God’s judgment falls upon those who practice these things. **God is always right, because he has all the facts.** Romans 2:2 TPT*

It has been recorded, in the case of Sodom and Gomorrah, that God came down to see for Himself if the people were as bad as He had heard.

*I am going down to see if their actions are as wicked as I have heard. If not, I want to know.” Genesis 18:21 NLT*

### **Judgment according to our Deeds.**

Romans 2:6 states that Adonai will judge each one according to his own deeds.



*<sup>6</sup> For: He will give to each one in return for what he has done.*

In the Book of Revelation, John recorded that “books” will be opened on judgment day. Each and every one of our actions and thoughts have been noticed and recorded.

*And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which I the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. Revelation 20:12*

### **Judgment will be fair**

There will be no partial judgment, but everything, even our thoughts, will be fully and fairly exposed. Adonai’s judgment will neither be unfair, nor will it be based on any favoritism, as Romans 2:11 indicates:

*<sup>11</sup> for God sees us all without partiality.*

### **Judgment will be according to the amount of Light available to us**

In Romans 2:12 Paul explains that judgment will be according to the amount of light available to each individual. Those who want to be teachers, will be subjected to a much more severe judgment!

“Not many of you should become teachers, my fellow believers, because you know that we who teach will be judged more strictly.” James 3:1 NIV

*<sup>12</sup> When people who have never been exposed to the laws of Moses commit sin, they will still perish for what they do. And those who are under the law of Moses and fail to obey it are condemned by the law. Romans 2:12*



In the Gospel of Matthew, Yahshua pointed out that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah will be better off during judgment day than the religious leaders!

*<sup>21</sup> He said, "How tragic it will be for the city of Korazin! And how horrible for the city of Bethsaida! For if the powerful miracles that I performed in Korazin and Bethsaida had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have humbled themselves and repented, and turned from their sins.*

*<sup>22</sup> Tyre and Sidon will be better off on judgment day than you! Matthew 11:21-22 TPT*

***The more light available, the stricter the judgment!***

### **Judgment according to our Secrets**

*Adonai's two-edged sword penetrates even to dividing soul and spirit, joints and marrow; it judges the thoughts and attitudes of the heart. Hebrews 4:12 NIV*

Romans 2:16:

*<sup>16</sup> So this judgment will be revealed on the day when God, through Jesus the Messiah, judges the hidden secrets of people's hearts. And their response to my gospel will be the standard of judgment used in that day.*

### **THE RIGHTEOUS JUDGE**

One of Adonai's attributes is His righteousness. He is indeed the Righteous Judge.

*His work is perfect, For all His ways are just; A God of faithfulness and without injustice, Righteous and upright is He." (Deuteronomy 32:4).*



What does “just” mean?

It means more than simply being fair. It means that God always does what is right and good toward all men. Likewise, although hard for many to accept, His sentencing of evil, unrepentant sinners to hell, is also right and good. A natural question that arises from this is, how then can a just God justify the unjust (as each of us are without Christ!)?

*A.W. Tozer answers this relevant question by reminding us that we find the answer through the Christian doctrine of justification and redemption. "Through the work of Christ in atonement, justice is not violated but satisfied when God spares a sinner." His mercy does not forbid Him to exercise His justice, nor does His justice forbid Him to exercise His mercy. He is both fully merciful and fully just."*

In light of God’s other attributes of goodness, mercy, love and grace, there are some who might, by error, say that God is too kind to punish the ungodly. But to believe this means we deny the reality of his infinite, unchanging justice. God will have justice for sin, either from Christ’s atoning death or, for those who will not accept it, eternal wrath in hell. *"Let’s assume that all men are guilty of sin in the sight of God. From the mass of humanity, God sovereignly decides to give mercy to some of them. What do the rest get? They get justice. The saved gets mercy and the unsaved gets justice.*

***Nobody gets injustice!"***

**We can rest assured! His judgment will be fair and there will be no favoritism!**



## Patterns of Judgments

In the Gospels of Matthew and Luke we find two patterns of judgment.

### THE PARABLE OF THE MINA'S

In this parable Jesus told of a Master who gave each of his servants a certain amount of mina's, which was a small amount of money.

#### ***The Parable of a Prince and His Servants***

*<sup>11</sup> At this time Jesus was getting close to entering Jerusalem. The crowds that followed him were convinced that God's kingdom would fully manifest when Jesus established it in Jerusalem. <sup>12</sup> So he told them this story to change their perspective: "Once a wealthy prince left his province to travel to a distant land, where he would be crowned king and then return. <sup>13</sup> Before he departed he summoned his ten servants together and charged them, 'I am entrusting each of you with fifty thousand dollars to invest while I am away. Trade with it and put the money to work until I return.' <sup>14</sup> "Some of his countrymen despised the prince and sent a delegation after him to declare before the royals, 'We refuse to let this man rule over us! He will not be our king!' <sup>15</sup> "Nevertheless, he was crowned king and returned to his land. Then he summoned his ten servants to see how much each one had earned and what their profits came to. <sup>16</sup> "The first one came forward and said, 'Master, I took what you gave me and invested it, and it multiplied ten times.' <sup>17</sup> 'Splendid! You have done well, my excellent servant. Because you have shown that I can trust you in this small matter, I now grant you authority to rule over ten cities.' <sup>18</sup> "The second came and said, 'Master, what you left with me has multiplied five*



times.' <sup>19</sup> "His master said, 'I also grant you authority in my kingdom over five cities.' <sup>20</sup> "Another came before the king and said, 'Master, here is the money you entrusted to me. I hid it for safekeeping. <sup>21</sup> You see, I live in fear of you, for everyone knows you are a strict master and impossible to please. You push us for a high return on all that you own, and you always want to gain from someone else's efforts.' <sup>22</sup> "The king said, 'You wicked servant! I will judge you using your own words. If what you said about me is true, that I am a harsh man, pushing you for a high return and wanting gain from others' efforts,<sup>23</sup> why didn't you at least put my money in the bank to earn some interest on it?' <sup>24</sup> "The king said to his other servants, 'Take the money he has and give it to the faithful servant who multiplied my money ten times over.' <sup>25</sup> " 'But master,' the other servants objected, 'why give it to him? He already has so much!' <sup>26</sup> " 'Yes,' replied the king. 'But to all who have been faithful, I will give even more to them. And for the ones who have nothing, even the little they seem to have I will take from them. <sup>27</sup> Now, bring all those rebellious enemies of mine who rejected me as their king—bring them here before me and execute them!' " Luke 19:11-27 TPT

The faithful servants received even more and the wicked lost everything. Our faithfulness, during our service on earth and while waiting for Messiah to return, will determine our position in eternity.

**We have to use what we have received from God, or we might lose it all!**

When the Lord pointed to the wicked, asking why he did not put his money in the bank to receive interest, he was indicating that each person needs to invest in a ministry:



**FIND A MINISTRY, CHECK IT OUT AND INVEST IN IT, AND YOU WILL  
RECEIVE INTEREST WHEN HE RETURNS**

## **THE PARABLE ABOUT STEWARDSHIP**

Believers often desire to own a lot, but they do not steward what the Lord put in their hands. An important kingdom principle is to be good stewards of everything on earth.

In this parable, the Master left and trusted his servants to manage all his finances. Talents were distributed according to their ability to multiply it. Later, when the Master returned, he called them to settle accounts. This means to execute judgment.

*<sup>14</sup> Again, heaven's kingdom is like a wealthy man who went on a long journey and summoned all his trusted servants and assigned his financial management over to them. <sup>15</sup> Before he left on his journey, he entrusted a bag of five thousand gold coins to one of his servants, to another a bag of two thousand gold coins, and to the third a bag of one thousand gold coins, each according to his ability to manage. <sup>16</sup> The one entrusted with five thousand gold coins immediately went out and traded with the money, and he doubled his investment. <sup>17</sup> In the same way, the one who was entrusted with two thousand gold coins traded with the sum and likewise doubled his investment. <sup>18</sup> But the one who had been entrusted with one thousand gold coins dug a hole in the ground and buried his master's money.*

*<sup>19</sup> "After much time had passed, **the master returned to settle accounts with his servants.** <sup>20</sup> The one who was entrusted with five thousand gold coins came and brought ten thousand, saying, 'See, I have doubled your money.'*





<sup>21</sup> Commending his servant, the master replied, 'You have done well, and proven yourself to be my loyal and trustworthy servant. Because you have been a faithful steward to manage a small sum, now I will put you in charge of much, much more. You will experience the delight of your master, who will say to you, "Enter into the joy of your Lord!" ' <sup>22</sup> Then the one who had been entrusted with two thousand gold coins came in and said, 'See, my master, I have doubled what you have entrusted to me. <sup>23</sup> Commending his servant, the master replied, 'You have done well, and proven yourself to be my loyal and trustworthy servant. Because you were faithful to manage a small sum, now I will put you in charge of much, much more. You will experience the delight of your master, who will say to you, "Enter into the joy of your Lord!"

<sup>24</sup> Then the one who had been entrusted with one thousand gold coins came to his master and said, 'Look, sir. I know that you are a hard man to please and you're a shrewd and ruthless businessman who grows rich on the backs of others.

<sup>25</sup> **I was afraid of you, so I went and hid your money and buried it in the ground. But here it is—take it, it's yours.** <sup>26</sup> **"But his master said to him, 'You're an untrustworthy and lazy servant! If you knew I was a shrewd and ruthless business man who always makes a profit, why didn't you deposit my money in the bank?'** <sup>27</sup> **Then I would have received it all back with interest when I returned.**

<sup>28</sup> But because you were unfaithful, I will take the one thousand gold coins and give them to the one who has ten



*thousand. <sup>29</sup> For the one who has will be given more, until he overflows with abundance. And the one with hardly anything, even what little he has will be taken from him.*

*<sup>30</sup> Then the master said to his other servants, 'Now, throw that good-for-nothing servant far away from me into the outer darkness, where there will be great misery and anguish!' " Matthew 25:14-30 TPT*

Notice that the reward was not according to the amount received, but according to the percentage of the profit made. The return on investment for all of them were the same, but, one of them did absolutely nothing to multiply what he had received. In this case we see that the Master dealt with his laziness much more severely than He deals with drunkenness. What a pity that our churches tolerate laziness! If you do not have the ability to multiply what the Lord has given in your hands for His Kingdom, then at least put it into a Ministry, for there you will receive interest on your investment.

The reward for laziness is severe! In this case the servant was thrown into the outer darkness, where there will be great misery and anguish – weeping and gnashing of teeth!

## **SUMMARY**

We can summarize these principles as follows:

**The service we offer during this life on earth, determines our position in the next life.**

If we do not use our talent, we will lose it.

If we do not do good, whenever there is an opportunity to do so, we commit sin (James 4:17).



**In Matthew 5 there are three groups of people who were not acceptable to God:**

The five foolish virgins, who did not have sufficient oil.

The servant, who did not multiply his one talent.

The goat nations, who did not offer help to the needy.

**What do these groups have in common?**

They were lazy! They did NOTHING!

## Judgments

For the purpose of this discussion, we will distinguish between **seven** different judgments, namely:

**Judgment of the believer.** This is the Bema Seat Judgment.

**Judgment of the world.** This will happen when Christ returns to earth with His Bride to execute judgment.

Judgment of the earth will involve the following judgments:

Judgment of **Israel**.

Judgment of **Satan** and his demons.

Judgment of the **False Prophet and the Antichrist**.

Judgment of the **Nations** of the Earth.

**The White Throne Judgment.** This will take place at the end of the Millennium Reign.

Let us discuss each of these judgments.

## The Bema Seat

Paul condemned judgment of each other, for all will have to appear before the judgment seat of Christ.

*But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at nought thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. <sup>11</sup> For it is written, As I live, saith*



*the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God. <sup>12</sup> So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God. Romans 14:10-12 TPT*

*I said to myself, "God will bring into judgment both the righteous and the wicked, for there will be a time for every activity, a time to judge every deed" (Ecclesiastes 3:17 NIV).*

All means all – every single person! But Scriptures are clear that righteousness and unrighteousness will never be judged simultaneously.

*Far be it from you to do such a thing--to kill the righteous with the wicked, treating the righteous and the wicked alike. Far be it from you! Will not the Judge of all the earth do right?" Genesis 18:25 NIV*

We clearly see now that the righteous will be resurrected first and then later the unrighteous. We also know now that judgment will follow each resurrection. The righteous will indeed one day appear before the judgment seat of Christ. This judgment seat that Paul refers to in 2 Corinthians, is the "**Bema Seat**" in Greek.

*For we must all appear before the **judgment seat** {G968 - Bema} of Christ; that everyone **may receive the things done in his body**, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad. 2 Corinthians 5:10 KJV*

### **G968 (Strong)**

βῆμα

bema

bay'-ma

From the base of G939; a *step*, that is, *foot breadth*; by implication *rostrum*, that is, *tribunal*: judgment-seat, set [foot] on, throne.

The Bema Seat is a platform of reward and not of judgment or punishment. Jesus said those who died in Christ **{per implication also**



***those who are still alive in Christ, those permanently grafted into Him*** } will be resurrected first unto eternal life. Immediately after this first resurrection, judgment will follow. This judgment is the Bema Seat Judgment, which is when all the righteous will receive their rewards. 2 Corinthians 5:10 is very clear that we will be recompensed for our actions done, whether it be good or bad. This is not a platform to give account of our sins. Paul wrote: *"There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit"* (Romans 8:1 KJV). There will be no condemnation for those walking after the Spirit, which implies that those who are walking after the flesh will be condemned. This refers to the unrighteous. As we shall see later, they will appear before the White Throne Judgment Seat, after the 1000 years Millennium Reign. Therefore, "bema" refers to a platform on which a judge or governor gives judgment or rewards, a place of evaluation and designation. In ancient times, after athletes had competed, they were judged according to obedience to the rules of the specific game they had competed in. The victors were led to the platform, to the bema, the place where the judge rewarded them. In his epistles, Paul pictures believers as competitors before the bema to receive the victor's crown.

*"A true athlete will be disciplined in every respect, practicing constant self-control in order to win a laurel wreath that quickly withers. But we run our race to win a victor's crown that will last forever". 1 Corinthians 9:25*

TPT

The Bema Seat is not where losers will be condemned, but where the victors will be rewarded and recompensed! We do not stand hunched over to be whipped, but upright to receive our rewards, whether good or bad.



*"For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each of us may receive what is due us for the things done while in the body, whether good or bad."* 2 Corinthians 5:10

**The word "recompense" means the following:**

To indemnify, repay, reimburse, pay money to, make reparation to, make restitution to, make amends to.

E.g. *"She wanted to recompense him in some way."* Meaning to reward, pay, pay back; *archaic* guerdon.

*"She still hasn't received much to recompense her loss."*

Meaning to make up for, compensate for, make amends for, make restitution for, make reparation for, redress, make good, satisfy.

Also, when looking at the meaning of "**bema**", we clearly see that this judgment will take place in front of the throne, as the Passion Translation reveals:

***<sup>10</sup>For one day we will all be openly revealed before Christ on his throne so that each of us will be duly recompensed for our actions done in life, whether good or worthless. 2 Corinthians 5:10 TPT***

When we came unto salvation, we came under the blood of the lamb, who paid the debt for our sin. Messiah will never deal with our sins again, provided that true repentance took place.

**WE WILL ALL STAND**

When we appear before the bema, we will all stand. The word **stand** in Greek is "**apistemi**" and it means stand, not crawl or grove. There will be no shame here! We belong to Christ and are washed by His blood. In Greek, the word "judgment" does not even appear in this context. It clearly refers to the "bema", the platform of our reward.



## EVALUATION

The bema is a place of evaluation. Christ designates what we did in obedience according to His plan. Each person will give his own account.

*<sup>12</sup> Therefore, each one must answer for himself and give a personal account of his own life before God. Romans 14:12  
TPT*

Did we compete according to the rules? The Bema Seat will evaluate what kind of reward each will receive.

“For one day we will all be openly revealed before Christ on his throne so that each of us will be duly recompensed for our actions done in life, whether good or worthless.” 2 Corinthians 5:10 TPT.

## REVEALED BY FIRE

*God has given me unique gifts as a skilled master builder who lays a good foundation. Afterward another craftsman comes and builds on it. So, builders beware! Let every builder do his work carefully, according to God’s standards.  
<sup>11</sup> For no one is empowered to lay an alternative foundation other than the good foundation that exists, which is Jesus Christ! <sup>12-13</sup> The quality of materials used by anyone building on this foundation will soon be made apparent, whether it has been built with gold, silver, and costly stones, or wood, hay, and straw. Their work will soon become evident, for the day will make it clear, because it will be revealed by blazing fire! And the fire will test and prove the workmanship of each builder (1 Corinthians 3:10-13 TPT).*



2 Corinthians 5:10 specifically mentions that we will be recompensed for our works, whether "**good or bad**"? How can someone be rewarded for something bad?

---

*I think that I have found the answer! When we appear before the bema, it means that we have made it unto heaven and we do not stand to give account, but we wait to receive. According to this scripture, Paul tells the believer that our works will be evaluated by fire. Our works will go through the furnace of fire to be tested and to prove our workmanship.*

**<sup>14</sup> "If his work stands the test of fire, he will be rewarded.**

**<sup>15</sup> If his work is consumed by the fire, he will suffer great loss. Yet he himself will barely escape destruction, like one being rescued out of a burning house. 1 Corinthians 3:14-15 TPT**

---

I strongly believe these verses give us the answer. When you have done nothing good, your works will go up in flames, but you will be saved, as if rescued out of this burning fire.

## **WE HAVE TO GIVE ACCOUNT**

In the Gospel of Matthew, the Master gave his servants talents. When he came back, he called them to give account. The Greek word for **reckon** is "**logidzomai**" and it refers to a bookkeeping term that means to compare accounts. It pictures an accountant, who put together a profit and loss statement; a thorough examination of books. To determine the real financial status of the corporation. This tells us how He will deal with us, when we stand before Him at the Bema Seat.





## PASS THE TEST

Before we can participate in this first resurrection, we must pass the test.

I am in sorrow over the body of Christ, because many believe that we need a born-again experience only. But our born-again experience is only the starting point of a new life in Christ Jesus. Jesus explained to Nicodemus that a born-again experience is for us to **see** the kingdom of God. Then, after this, we need to be baptized into Christ. When we come out of the water, we **enter** the kingdom of God. Then we have to move through cleansing and purification to become whole and holy in order to **inherit** the kingdom of God.

How many Christians sitting in church are still captive in sexual immorality or in drunkenness or hatred for a brother or sister in Christ? John explains: **"Anyone who hates a brother or sister is a murderer, and you know that no murderer has eternal life residing in him"** (1 John 3:15 NIV). Scriptures are clear that such a person will **not** inherit the kingdom of God.

*Know ye not that the **unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God?** Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind: <sup>10</sup> Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God. 1 Corinthians 6:9-10*

*For you may be sure of this, that everyone who is **sexually immoral** or impure, or who is covetous (that is, an idolater), has no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God. Galatians 5:19-21*



***But outside are the dogs and the sorcerers and the fornicators and the murderers and the idolaters and whosoever loves and makes a lie. Revelation 22:15***  
JUB

Now that we are completely convinced that it is the righteous who will inherit the kingdom, our next question is: "How does the righteous qualify to inherit the kingdom?"

Paul explains:

*<sup>3</sup> We feel a personal responsibility to continually be thanking God for you, our spiritual family, every time we pray. And we have every reason to do so because **your faith is growing** marvelously beyond measure. **The unselfish love each of you share for one another is increasing and overflowing!***

*<sup>4</sup> We point to you as an example **of unwavering faith** for all the churches of God. We boast about how you continue to **demonstrate unflinching endurance through all the persecutions and painful trials you are experiencing.** 2 Thessalonians 1:3-4 TPT*

**Are you part of a spiritual family, a "misphoca", which means an "entire family network of relatives by blood or marriage and sometimes close friends"?** Or do you isolate yourself and constantly criticize the Body of Christ?

**Is your faith growing beyond measure, the unselfish love you share for one another?** Or are you daily walking in conflict with everybody around you?



**Do you demonstrate unflinching endurance, meaning that you do not show fear or hesitation in the face of dangers or difficulty, when going through persecutions and painful trials?** Or are you constantly moaning and complaining while going through experiences? If you truly can say “**Yes**” to the positive side of all the questions above, it will make you worthy to inherit the kingdom of God!

Paul encourages us to learn from Israel’s failures.

*<sup>1</sup> My dear fellow believers, you need to understand that all of our Jewish ancestors who walked through a wilderness long ago were under the glory cloud and passed through the waters of the sea on both sides.*

*<sup>2</sup> They were all baptized into the cloud of glory, into the fellowship of Moses, and into the sea.*

*<sup>3</sup> They all ate the same heavenly manna <sup>4</sup> and drank water from the same spiritual rock that traveled with them—and that Rock was Christ himself.*

*<sup>5</sup> Yet God was not pleased with most of them, and their dead bodies were scattered around the wilderness.*

*<sup>6</sup> Now, all these things serve as types and pictures for us—lessons that teach us not to fail in the same way by callously craving worthless things <sup>7</sup> and practicing idolatry, as some of them did. For it is written: The people settled into their unrestrained revelry, with feasting and drinking, then they rose up and became wildly out of control!*

*<sup>8</sup> Neither should we commit sexual immorality, as some of them did, which caused the death of twenty-three thousand on a single day: <sup>9</sup> Nor should we ever provoke the Lord, as some of them did by putting him to outrageous*



tests that resulted in their death from snakebites day after day.

<sup>10</sup> *And we must not embrace their ways by complaining—grumbling with discontent, as many of them did, and were killed by the destroyer!*

<sup>11</sup> ***All the tests they endured on their way through the wilderness are a symbolic picture, an example that provides us with a warning so that we can learn through what they experienced. For we live in a time when the purpose of all the ages past is now completing its goal within us.***

<sup>12</sup> *So beware if you think it could never happen to you, lest your pride becomes your downfall. 1 Corinthians 10:1-12*

#### **The Book of Jude also warns us:**

<sup>5</sup> *I need to remind you, even though you are familiar with it all, that the Lord Jesus saved his people out of Egypt but subsequently destroyed those who were guilty of unbelief.*

<sup>6</sup> *In the same way, there were heavenly messengers in rebellion who went outside their rightful domain of authority and abandoned their appointed realms. God bound them in everlasting chains and is keeping them in the dark abyss of the netherworld until the judgment of the great day.*

<sup>7</sup> *In a similar way, the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah and nearby towns gave themselves to sexual immorality and the unnatural desire of different flesh. Now they all serve as examples of those who experience the punishment of eternal fire.*



*<sup>10</sup> These people insult anything they don't understand. They behave like irrational beasts by doing whatever they feel like doing. Because they live by their animal instincts, they corrupt themselves and bring about their own destruction. <sup>11</sup> How terrible it is for them! For they have followed in the steps of Cain. They have abandoned themselves to Balaam's error because of their greedy pursuit of financial gain. And since they have rebelled like Korah rebelled, they will experience the same fate of Korah and likewise perish. Jude:5-11*

**We learn from the story of Korah, in the Book of Numbers.**

Numbers 16:1–40 indicates that Korah rebelled against Moses, along with 249 co-conspirators and they were punished for their rebellion, when God sent fire from heaven to consume all 250 of them. Korah's Reubenite accomplices, Dathan and Abiram, were also punished, when God caused the ground to split open beneath their feet, swallowing them, their families, anyone associated with Korah, and all their possessions. Furthermore, the Israelites who did not like what had happened to Korah, Dathan and Abiram (and their families) objected to Moses, and God then commanded Moses to depart from the multitude. God then smote 14,700 men with a plague, as punishment for objecting to Korah's destruction (Numbers 16:41)

Please read Hebrews 3 and 4, in which the Israelites serve as an example for us. They did not enter their promised land, because of the hardening of their hearts, unbelief and rebellion.



## COUNTED WORTHY

The Lord commanded us to pray that we will be counted worthy. Part of the test is to wait patiently for the soon return of our Lord, Jesus Christ, the Messiah, Yahshua HaMashiach.

*<sup>7</sup> Meanwhile, brothers and sisters, we must be patient and filled with expectation as we wait for the appearing of the Lord. Think about the farmer who has to patiently wait for the earth's harvest as it ripens because of the early and latter rains. <sup>8</sup> So you also keep your hopes high and be patient, for the presence of the Lord is drawing closer. James 5:7-8 TPT*

The Sadducees was a religious group that denied the resurrection of the dead. In the Gospel of Luke, Chapter 20, they came to Jesus, asking Him about a wife who had 7 husbands, whom all had died. They wanted to know to whom she would be married in heaven. Jesus explained to them that those who are worthy of the resurrection from the dead into glory will become immortal, just like the angels in the heaven.

*<sup>34</sup> Jesus replied, "Marriage is for the sons of this world only.*

*<sup>35-36</sup> But those who are worthy of the resurrection from the dead into glory become immortal, like the angels, who never die nor marry. When the dead come to life again, they will be sons of God's life—the sons of the resurrection. <sup>37</sup> In fact, it was Moses who taught the resurrection of the dead when he wrote of the Lord God who was at the burning bush and described him as 'the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.' <sup>38</sup> Don't you agree that God is not the God of the dead, but the God of the living? For in his eyes, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob are alive*



*forevermore. He must be the God who raises the dead."*

*Luke 20:34-38 KJV*

According to Paul (2 Thessalonians 1) we are worthy to inherit the kingdom of God, when we persevere and endure to the very end. Combining the words of Jesus with this principle of Paul, we can indeed believe and expect that there remains for us a rest and a victorious crown! This heavenly crown awaits those whose faith grows marvelously beyond measure, those who share an unselfish love for one another, those who stand with an unwavering faith and demonstrate unflinching endurance throughout all persecutions and painful trials. We should realize that our faith is being tested and we should choose to remain strong, even while surrounded by life's difficulties. Decide to believe and expect that there remains indeed a rest for us and that we will receive the victor's crown! Run the race to win! Run the race to be victorious, in order to win a victor's crown that will last forever!

**Those who never give in, who's hearts never grow cold and who never reject the love of the truth, will be worthy of the resurrection of the dead!**

The Lord commands us:

*<sup>36</sup> Watch ye therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man (at the Bema Seat Judgment) Luke 21:36 KJV*

Luke also warns us:

*<sup>34</sup> "Be careful that you never allow your hearts to grow cold. Remain passionate and free from anxiety and the worries of this life. Then you will not be caught off guard*



*by what happens. Don't let me come and find you drunk or careless in living like everyone else.*

*<sup>35</sup> For that day will come as a shocking surprise to all, like a downpour that drenches everyone, catching many unaware and unprepared. <sup>36</sup> **Keep a constant watch over your soul**, and pray for the courage and grace to prevail over these things that are destined to occur and that you will stand before the presence of the Son of Man with a clear conscience." Luke 21:34-36 TPT*

## **PURIFICATION**

Scriptures indicate that the resurrection is about our transformation. We will be changed from mortal to immortal, when we slip out of these earthly bodies to receive our new glorified bodies. John shares the following with us:

*"Dear friends, we are now God's children, **but what we will be like has not been revealed yet**. We know that when the Messiah is revealed, **we will be like him**, because we will see him as he is." 1 John 3:2 ISV*

Paul says that not all of us will die, **but we will all be transformed**, changed (1 Corinthians 15:51). John says it is not yet revealed what we will be like when we change, but one thing is clear – we will be like the Messiah! (1 John 3:2). This is an amazing realization!

*<sup>52</sup> It will happen in an instant—in the twinkling of his eye. For when the last trumpet is sounded, the dead will come back to life. We will be indestructible and we will be transformed. <sup>53</sup> For we will discard our mortal "clothes" and slip into a body that is imperishable. What is mortal now will be exchanged for immortality. <sup>54</sup> And when that which is mortal puts on immortality, and what now decays is*





*exchanged for what will never decay, then the scripture will be fulfilled that says:*

*Death is swallowed up by a triumphant victory!*

*<sup>55</sup> So death, tell me, where is your victory?*

*Tell me death, where is your sting?*

*1 Corinthians 15:52-55*

We will overcome the last enemy, which is death! We will be like Jesus in an instant – in the twinkling of the eye! We will also have our glorified bodies when we meet Him in the air.

John continues:

*<sup>3</sup> And all who focus their hope on him will always be **purifying themselves**, just as Jesus is pure. 1 John 3:3*

*TPT*

Throughout the Bible we find God's commandment that we need to be **pure**, for He is pure. "Let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God." (2 Corinthians 7:1). My dear friend, Jesus gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from all iniquity, and **purify** unto Himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works (Titus 2:14).

From all the above-mentioned scriptures it is clear that the righteous will appear before the throne in heaven for the Bema Seat Judgment.

It will be a platform of reward and not of condemnation.

The righteous will receive their reward, whether it is good or bad.

### **The remaining question here is WHEN this will happen?**

Let us look at the four other judgments in the Bible. After studying these judgments to discover when they will happen, we will also find the answer to when the Bema Seat Judgment will take place. But before we



do so, let us rejoice in the knowledge of the rewards for the believer, to be received at the Bema Seat!

## Rewards

It may be worthwhile to mention the different rewards the believer will receive, when we stand at the Bema Seat. According to Scriptures there are five crowns of rewards.

### THE INCORRUPTIBLE CROWN

*And everyone who strives for the mastery is temperate in all things. Then those truly that they may receive a corruptible crown, but we an incorruptible. 1 Corinthians 9:25 MKJV*

### THE CROWN OF REJOICING

*For what is our hope or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are you not even to be in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at His coming? 1 Thessalonians 2:19 KJV*

### THE CROWN OF RIGHTEOUSNESS

*Now there is laid up for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous Judge, shall give me at that Day; and not to me only, but also to all those who love His appearing. 2 Timothy 4:8 KJV*

### THE CROWN OF GLORY

*Feed the flock of God among you, taking the oversight, not by compulsion, but willingly; <sup>3</sup> nor for base gain, but readily; nor as lording it over those allotted to you by God, but becoming examples to the flock. <sup>4</sup> And when the Chief Shepherd shall appear, you shall receive a never-fading crown of glory. 1 Peter 5:2-4 KJV*



## THE CROWN OF LIFE

*Blessed is the man who endures temptation, because having been approved, he will receive the crown of life which the Lord has promised to those who love Him. James 1:12 KJV*

*Do not at all fear what you are about to suffer. Behold, the devil will cast some of you into prison, so that you may be tried. And you will have tribulation ten days. Be faithful to death, and I will give you the crown of life. Revelation 2:10 KJV*

## Judgment of the Earth

Enoch, the seventh descendant from Adam, already saw the judgment of the unrighteous. His vision further confirms that the righteous will be in heaven, before the throne, in front of the Bema Seat Judgment, receiving their rewards.

***Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints,<sup>15</sup> To execute judgment upon all and to convict each one of them for their ungodly deeds and for all the terrible words that ungodly sinners have spoken against him.*** Jude:14-15

Jude:15 clearly indicates judgment of the ungodly deeds. This is the judgment of the earth.

**The following will bring more clarity to the reader:**

John saw thrones and those who sat on them were given judgment (Revelation 20:4).

This is the **Barley Harvest**, which will be part of the “**snatching away**”. They, who will be alive during the resurrection of the dead, will



be caught up in the clouds to meet the Messiah for the marriage ceremony.

John also saw the souls of them who were beheaded, because they witnessed of Jesus. They are part of the **wheat harvest**. They had not worshiped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.

Both groups will be part of the thousands of saints descending with Christ to rule and to reign during the Millennium Reign.

Listen to what Jude says about the people on the earth, who will be judged:

***These people are always complaining and never satisfied—finding fault with everyone. They follow their own evil desires and their mouths speak scandalous things. They enjoy using seductive flattery to manipulate others. Jude:16***

## **JUDGMENT OF ISRAEL**

Sometimes we forget that we, as Gentiles, have the privilege to make it unto salvation, because of the temporary blindness of Israel. Paul fully discussed this in his epistle to the Romans:

*So, am I saying that Israel stumbled so badly that they will never get back up? **Certainly not! Rather, it was because of their stumble that salvation now extends to all the non-Jewish people, in order to make Israel jealous and desire the very things that God has freely given them.*** <sup>12</sup> *So if all the world is being greatly enriched through their failure, and through their fall great spiritual wealth is given to the non-Jewish people, imagine how much more will Israel's awakening bring to us all!*



*<sup>13</sup> Now, I speak to you who are not Jewish, since I am an apostle to reach the non-Jewish people. And I draw attention to this ministry as much as I can when I am among the Jews, <sup>14</sup> hoping to make them jealous of what God has given to those who are not Jews, winning some of my people to salvation. <sup>15</sup> For if their temporary rejection released the reconciling power of grace into the world, what will happen when Israel is reinstated and reconciled to God? It will unleash resurrection power throughout the whole earth! Romans 11:11-15 TPT*

This is a major revelation! The temporary rejection of Israel released reconciling power of grace into the world. This reconciling power is a Gentile harvest. Billions of souls have come in, since the death of Christ. Paul reveals to us that when Israel will be reinstated into the original olive tree, their reconciliation with Christ will unleash resurrection power all over the earth.

*<sup>25</sup> My beloved brothers and sisters, I want to share with you a mystery concerning Israel's future. For understanding this mystery will keep you from thinking you already know everything. **A partial and temporary hardening to the gospel has come over Israel, which will last until the full number of non-Jews has come into God's family.** <sup>26</sup> And then God will bring all of Israel to salvation! The prophecy will be fulfilled that says: "Coming from Zion will be the Savior, and he will turn Jacob away from evil. <sup>27</sup> For this is my covenant promise with them when I forgive their sins." <sup>28</sup> Now, many of the Jews are opposed to the gospel, but their opposition has opened the door of the gospel to you who are not Jewish.*



*Yet they are still greatly loved by God because their ancestors were divinely chosen to be his. <sup>29</sup> And when God chooses someone and graciously imparts gifts to him, they are never rescinded. Romans 11:25-29 TPT*

Saints, this is the purpose of the Tribulation. In the fullness of time, when the full number of non-Jews has made it into God's family, then Adonai will again turn to Israel. The 7-year Tribulation is Jacob's trouble and Adonai will then give His full attention to them and bring them home. For those who are against Israel as a nation, let this be a warning: God will deal severely with those who turn against Israel.

The prophet Isaiah wrote that Israel is refined for God's glory and that God is saving Israel for His sake, because He made a covenant with Abraham.

***For mine own sake, even for mine own sake, will I do it. Isaiah 48:11 KJV***

Take cognizance that there are two entities involved in God's promise to Abraham, namely Israel (*sand*) and Gentiles (*stars*), with two different purposes. Adonai has a plan for the Gentiles to make it unto salvation and He will deal in a special way with Israel to bring them in.

## **BLESSING AND JUDGMENT**

Yehôvâh Elohim blessed Israel directly so that they could be a blessing to the Gentiles.

*"Ye worship ye know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews. John 4:22 KJV*

But when judgment comes, Adonai will judge the Gentiles directly and He will judge Israel through the Gentiles. Notice that Jude quoted Enoch, saying that the Lord will come with ten thousand of His saints, to execute judgment upon all and to convict each one of them for their ungodly



deeds and for all the terrible words that ungodly sinners have spoken against him (Jude:14-15).

*Indeed, the time will come,' declares the LORD, 'when I'll restore the security of my people Israel and Judah,' says the LORD. 'I'll bring them back to the land that I gave to their ancestors, and they'll possess it.'"* <sup>4</sup> *These are the words that the LORD spoke about Israel and Judah:* <sup>5</sup> *"Indeed, this is what the LORD says: 'We have heard a sound of terror and of fear, and there is no peace. "* <sup>6</sup> *Ask about this and think about it—Can a man give birth to a child? Why then do I see every strong man with his hands on his thighs like a woman giving birth, and all their faces have turned pale? "* <sup>7</sup> *Oh how terrible! That time will be worse than any like it. It will be a time of trouble for Jacob, but he will be rescued from it. Jeremiah 30:3-7 ISV*

Jeremiah foresaw the Tribulation and prophesied that Adonai will rescue them from it. We see here that judgment will take place against Israel at the end of the 7-year Tribulation, as Jesus explained to four of His disciples on the Mount of Olives in a private meeting: "At the end of the Tribulation the Son of Man will appear" (Matthew 24:29).

## **SATAN BOUND FOR A THOUSAND YEARS**

Revelation 20 gives us information about the judgment of the earth. Remember, at this stage, Satan would have been thrown down unto the earth.

"And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman which brought forth the man child." Revelation 12:13

John saw "an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the



dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years." (Revelation 20:1-2)

John is clear that "the rest of the dead, (referring to the unrighteous), lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection. Blessed and holy is he that had part in the FIRST resurrection; on such the second death had no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years." (Revelation 20:5-6).

Satan will be released after the thousand years, to deceive the nations again. That will be the final Gog and Magog battle and he will finally be destroyed, after which he will be thrown into the lake of fire for eternity.

## **ANTICHRIST AND THE FALSE PROPHET**

The antichrist and the false prophet will also be taken directly into the lake of fire, after the seven-year tribulation. Revelation 20:10

## **SHEEP AND GOATS**

The Gospel of Matthew, Chapter 24, clearly mentions that, immediately after the Tribulation, the Son of man will appear in the heavens. During a private meeting on the Mount of Olives, Jesus explained to four of his disciples, John, Peter, James and Andrew (Mark 13) what the sign for this coming of the Son of Man will be.

*Immediately after the Tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken: <sup>30</sup> And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.*





***<sup>31</sup>And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other. Matthew 24:29-31 KJV***

Jesus explained that his angels would gather together his elect, which is Israel, from the four winds and He shall separate the nations just as a shepherd would divide sheep from the goats. The goats (the unrighteous) will go directly into the lake of fire.

*And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats: <sup>33</sup> And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. <sup>34</sup> Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world. Matthew 25:32-34*

## **SERVING EACH OTHER**

Serving our brothers and sisters is a very serious matter. It greatly determines whether we will be sheep or goats:

***<sup>41</sup> Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels:***

*<sup>42</sup> For I was an hungred, and ye gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink: <sup>43</sup> I was a stranger, and ye took me not in: naked, and ye clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and ye visited me not. <sup>44</sup> Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungred, or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto thee? <sup>45</sup> Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye did it not to*



*one of the least of these, ye did it not to me.<sup>46</sup> And these shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal. Matthew 25:41-46 KJV*

***But unto the sheep on his right, Jesus said:***

*"Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, **inherit the kingdom** prepared for you from the foundation of the world"*  
*Matthew 25:34 KJV*

## **THE LORD WILL JUDGE THE NATIONS**

Joel announced that the Lord will judge the nations:

*"Look, now! In those very days and at that time, when I restore prosperity to Judah and Jerusalem<sup>2</sup> I will gather all nations, bringing them down to the Valley of Jehoshaphat. I will set out my case against them there, on behalf of my people, my heritage Israel, whom they scattered among the nations, apportioning my land among themselves. Joel 3:1-2 ISV*

There will come a final day, when the Lord will deal with the nations of the world. May the Lord have mercy on those who divided the land of Israel or oppressed the Jewish people. There will be weeping and a gnashing of teeth!

## **Great White Throne**

There remains another resurrection and final judgment at the end of the thousand-year reign. This is what Revelation refers to as the Great White Throne Judgment.



"And I saw a **great white throne**, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. <sup>12</sup> And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which **is the book of life**: and the **dead were judged** out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works: <sup>13</sup> And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. <sup>14</sup> **And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.** <sup>15</sup> And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire".

*Revelation 20:11-15 KJV*

It is clear that the purpose of the White Throne Judgment is to judge the dead. These are the unrighteous. Those who never received the Messiah as their Savior. It also refers to the second death, which implies that this is a second resurrection. It confirms what John wrote in the same chapter:

**"But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished.** *This is the first resurrection: <sup>6</sup> Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years".* Revelation 20:5-6 KJV

This judgment clearly takes place at the end of the Millennium Reign. The White Throne Judgment is for the unrighteous. The fact that Revelation 20:14 mentions this as the second death, means that this

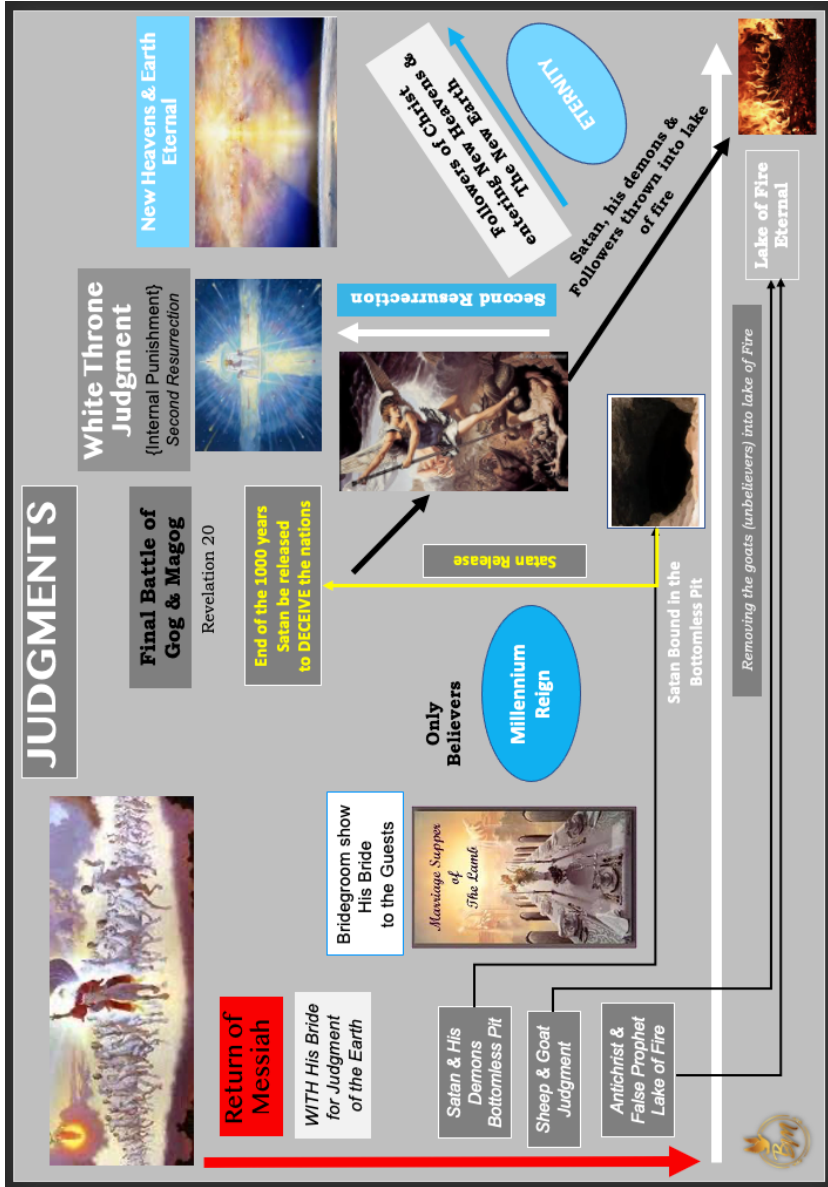


judgment is the final judgment for the wicked and they are all destined for the lake of fire.

**Blessed and holy are those who participate in the first resurrection!**

Those who are worthy of the first resurrection will not be influenced by the second death. The second death will have no power over them. They have already overcome the last enemy! "Death, where is your sting?"





## **PAUSE**

Let us pause for a moment to recap and remind ourselves of the following:

### **A new Race**

The good news, which the apostles preached and recorded in the New Testament for us, is the message of the Messiah, who was crucified, buried and resurrected. These actions paid in full the price for the human race, which was born in sin, because of Adam and Eve's disobedience in the Garden of Eden.

Because of their disobedience, all of humanity was born from the dust in a sin nature. Hence, the first Adam is the father of a race just like him.

Christ, the second Adam, was born from an incorruptible seed, from a virgin, and He never saw decay. He was the first to be born from above. This explains why we need to be born again, if we want to share in His likeness. If we are not born again, this time from an incorruptible seed, we will stay in our old nature, which is in the likeness of Adam's sinful nature.

Just as the first Adam has a race like him, likewise, does the second Adam, Yahshua HaMashiach. This race is born from above and is permanently grafted into Christ. Scriptures are clear that you are born from above only after you have come out of water and have been baptized in the Holy Spirit.

**This is very important to understand, because we need to distinguish between the different groups of people the Bible talks about.**



Many scriptures are meant for the wicked and unsaved. Should the righteous interpret these scriptures as if they were written for the righteous, they may walk in condemnation. Similarly, if scriptures that are exclusively written for Israel are being interpreted as if they are meant for the called-out ones, we may end up being deceived and confused.

### **Raised from the Dead**

Our true Messiah, Yahshua HaMashiach, was raised from the dead. Paul is very clear that if you are permanently grafted into Christ, then you will share in His resurrection. Christ's resurrection is your resurrection too! (Colossians 3:1)

Paul continues to explain that Christ is the first fruits of a great resurrection harvest. We therefore need to understand the harvest pattern, which the ancient Jewish people followed in the Old Testament. The principle of the first fruits is that the rest of the harvest is redeemed. This is profound and we must understand this concept in order to fully embrace the "snatching away" of the called-out ones. Christ is the first fruits of the resurrection harvest. This means that those who are permanently grafted into Him, will also be resurrected, but each according to its own order (1 Corinthians 15:23). This confirms that there is indeed more than one harvest. John mentioned these different harvests in Revelation 14, namely:

The Barley Harvest, by winnowing.

The Wheat Harvest, by Tribunal.

The Wine Harvest, by the wine press.

Scriptures on the harvests are meant for the righteous, those who will eventually be harvested, each according to its own order. The **Barley Harvest** are those who reached spiritual maturity sooner than others, those who will be snatched away before the Tribulation. The **Wheat**



**Harvest** is those who still need further correction and they will go through the Tribulation for at least three and a half years. These are the saints who did not worship the beast, nor took the mark of the beast. They are the beheaded saints John saw before the throne in heaven (Revelation 20:4). Clearly, we find two main groups of people in the heavens, those sitting on the throne (Barley Harvest saints) and the beheaded saints standing before the throne (wheat harvest).

No flesh and blood can inherit the kingdom of God, therefor we will all be transformed (changed). The purpose of the resurrection therefore is *inter alia*, to be transformed, to receive our glorified bodies and to stand on the platform of reward, the Bema Seat, to receive rewards for our deeds, whether it is good or bad.

It is only in the middle of the Tribulation that Satan will be cast down onto the earth to persecute the women (Revelation 12:13). The woman is the nation of Israel, who will be deceived by the antichrist, pretending to be the Messiah. They will go through the wine press and at the end of the seven-year tribulation they will accept the Messiah.

Romans 11 will then come into fulfillment, when Christ grafts back the original branches into the olive tree. Then there will be only one nation with one King. Gentiles and Jews will be one.

### **Judgment**

Judgment follows resurrection. The first resurrected saints, following the first fruits, will appear in front of the Bema Seat Judgment to receive their rewards. Both the barley and the wheat harvest will appear before the Bema Seat.

After the seven-year Tribulation, the Messiah will return with His Bride to judge the earth and to rule and to reign for a thousand years. Satan





and his demons will be bound in the bottomless pit. The false prophet and the antichrist will go directly into the lake of fire. Then, the nations will be separated. The goats will be on the left of the Messiah. They are the unrighteous and will also go into the lake of fire.

The sheep will stand on His right. They are the righteous, who will inherit the kingdom of God. Predominantly they will be the nation of Israel, a small remnant which will still marry, have children and die during the Millennium Reign.

## **WHEN Will This Happen?**

The answer to this question has thoroughly been dealt with in my booklet "The Snatching Away". Please download this booklet from our website.

On the Mount Olives, Yahshua had a private meeting with four of His disciples. He answered all their questions about when this age would end, when Israel would be restored and when He would establish His everlasting kingdom on earth.

*And as he sat upon the Mount of Olives over against the temple, Peter and James and John and Andrew asked him privately, <sup>4</sup> Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign when all these things shall be fulfilled?*

*Mark 13:3-4 KJV*

In Matthew 24 Yahshua explains to His disciples the signs of the end, namely:



### **Deception**

*Take heed that no man deceive you. (Matthew 24:4).*

### **Wars**

*And ye shall hear of wars and rumors of wars. (Matthew 24:5).*

### **Famine, Pestilences & Earthquakes**

*For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in divers places. (Matthew 24:7).*

### **Worldwide Persecution**

*Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted, and shall kill you: and ye shall be hated of all nations for my name's sake. (Matthew 24:9).*

### **Love shall wax cold**

*And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another. 11 And many false prophets shall rise, and shall deceive many. 12 And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. (Matthew 24:10-12).*

### **Preaching the Gospel**

*And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come. (Matthew 24:14).*

When all the nations will have received the message, when we will have witnessed to all the nations of Yahshua's death, burial and resurrection,



this age will end, and God will deal with Israel during the seven-year Tribulation period. Immediately after the Tribulation, Yahshua said, the Son of Man will return with His Bride to judge the earth (Matthew 24:29).

### **A Word of Encouragement**

The doctrine of Christ has now been discussed in full. May the Holy Spirit ignite each heart to earnestly and diligently lay the foundation and build the house. Each of us individually is responsible for our own foundation. You now have received all the necessary information! Apply it to your blood-bought life!

Do not be side-tracked by the ignorant and irresponsible. Prepare yourself to be completely ready, worthy to be raptured and prepared to appear before the Bema Seat of Christ!

**Persevere through all trials and hardships! Your reward will be great!**

**“The Spirit and the Bride say, COME!!! Let the one who hears say, Come!”**

--- o0o ---





*Berashith*  
MINISTRY

[www.berashithministry.co.za](http://www.berashithministry.co.za)

[berashithministry@gmail.com](mailto:berashithministry@gmail.com)

The Apostle Paul writes that he has much to say, although it is difficult to explain, because we have become too dull and sluggish to understand. For by now we should already have been “**professors instructing**” others. We are supposed to be Rabbi’s ourselves, but instead, we need to be taught the basics of God’s prophetic oracles! We are like children still needing milk and not yet ready to digest solid food (Hebrews 5:11-14).

On the 13th of April 2021 a Word of God came to me: “My **servant**, I will make you **My signet ring**; for I have **chosen** you (Haggai 2:23) to **lay the foundation of this house**; your hands shall also complete it” (Zechariah 4:6-7). The message was clear, we have to lay down the foundation to restore His temple. The next Chapter of the Book of Hebrews continues that the foundation to be laid down, is the Doctrine of Christ and it consists of the following:

“Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of **repentance** from dead works, and of **faith** toward God, 2 Of the doctrine of **baptisms**, and of **laying on of hands**, and of **resurrection** of the dead, and of eternal **judgment**. 3 And this will we do, if God **permit** (Hebrews 6:1-3 KJV).

Any foundation must first be inspected and approved, before the structure of the building can be erected. If the Building Inspector is satisfied, he approves of it using a stamp of authority. Similarly, Adonai first needs to **permit** (to approve) the restoration of the foundation by using this signet ring as His stamp of approval!

Paul gave Timothy the reason why we need a solid foundation:

**Then you will be God's servant - fully mature and perfectly prepared to fulfill any assignment. 2 Timothy 3:17 TPT**

We have confidence that this “**temple**” will stand and last when the storm comes, because of Jesus’ promise that: “He who comes to me and hears my words and do it (acts on them) is like a person building a house, who dug a deep hole to lay the foundation on rock. When the storm comes, and pushed against that house but couldn’t shake it, because it had been founded on the rock (Luke 6:46-48). The opposite is therefore also true. He who does not **HEAR** and does not **DO** and does not **dig deep**, when the storm comes, his house will surely collapse.

El-Azar



[www.berashithministry.co.za](http://www.berashithministry.co.za)